AGENDA ITEM 10 – POINT 10 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 10 DEL PROGRAMA

GAZETTEER PRODUCTION AND NAMES PROCESSING AT THE FEDERAL LEVEL IN CANADA

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Depuis 1972, de nouvelles nomenclatures ont été établies pour les provinces et territoires suivants: Nouveau-Brunswick, île du Prince Edward, Alberta, Ontario et Territoire du Yukon. Un nouveau volume concernant la Nouvelle-Ecosse sera publié vers la fin de 1977 et un autre, portant sur les territoires du Nord-Ouest, en 1978. Depuis 1973, les décisions relatives à chaque province ou territoire sont publiées sous forme de suppléments cumulatifs annuels. Ainsi, pour le volume sur la Colombie britannique, dont la dernière publication remonte à 1966, un supplément cumulatif a paru en 1976 qui comprend toutes les décisions prises au cours des 10 dernières années. La nomenclature du Canada est établie par traitement automatique des textes.

On étudie la possibilité de mettre sur pied un système de restitution automatique de l'information, qui rationaliserait la manipulation des données toponymiques et qui pourrait être particulièrement utile pour le choix des noms sur les cartes.

Resumen

Desde 1972, se han producido nuevos nomenclátores para las siguientes jurisdicciones en el Canadá: Nueva Brunswick, Isla Príncipe Eduardo, Alberta, Ontario y el Territorio del Yukón. A fines de 1977, se publicará un nuevo volumen para Nueva Escocia y otro nuevo para los territorios del noroeste en 1978. Desde 1973, se han publicado las decisiones para cada una de las jurisdicciones en el Canadá en suplementos anuales acumulativos; por ejemplo, para el volumen que abarca Columbia Británica, que fue el último publicado en 1966, existe un suplemento acumulativo de 1976 con todas las decisiones adoptadas a lo largo del período de 10 años. Para realizar el Nomenclátor del Canadá, se utiliza la tecnología de elaboración del texto a base de computadoras.

Actualmente se está realizando una investigación para establecer un sistema automatizado de recuperación de la información que simplificará el manejo de datos toponímicos, y que puede constituir una fuente posible para la selección de nombres por los confeccionadores de mapas.

*

* *

The Gazetteer Production and Toponymic Investigation Section of the Toponymy Division, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, integrates some of the functions shared by that Division with the Secretariat of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (CPCGN), particularly the close co-operative arrangement of the federal and provincial members of the Committee. Its responsibilities include the review of geographical nomenclature for new and revision mapping by the federal Surveys and Mapping Branch, the processing of name submissions from mapping agencies and the public (including their referral to the appropriate federal or provincial CPCGN member for investigation and ruling), the maintenance of extensive card and map section files on Canadian geographical names, the answering of enquiries on location and spelling information and the compilation of the *Gazetteer of Canada* series.

Gazetteer of Canada

The Surveys and Mapping Branch produces the *Gazetteer of Canada* for the CPCGN. There is a volume for each province and territory with the exception of Québec. These publications, produced under federal imprint, are distributed by two federal Government agencies: the Canada Map Office, which is part of the Surveys and Mapping Branch, and the Department of Supply and Services (Canada), which holds the copyright on all federal Government publications. (Information Canada, a federal agency mentioned as the distributor in the 1972 United Nations Conference Proceedings, was disbanded in 1976).

Since the second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in 1972, the following volumes of the Gazetteer of Canada series have been published:

New Brunswick	1972
Prince Edward Island	1973
Alberta	1974
Ontario.	1974
Yukon Territory	1976

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mary LaHam, Head of the Gazetteer Production and Toponymic Investigation Section, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 12

A volume for Nova Scotia will go to press before the year's end, and one for the Northwest Territories is scheduled for printing late in 1978.

In 1973 the semi-annual *Gazetteer* supplements were replaced by annual cumulative supplements. Some of these supplements are as large as the smaller volumes of the *Gazetteer*. They are costly to produce, particularly because they are distributed free of charge to purchasers of the original *Gazetteers*. Their size is largely a function of the time lag between editions for any province or territory. This lag, usually of not less than 10 years, is the inevitable result of having only a small staff devoted to gazetteer production, of using procedures (to prepare material for input) that have not changed significantly since the inception of the present gazetteer series (in 1952) and of the volume of material being generated by federal and provincial field studies.

In the process of *Gazetteer* production, every name formerly approved is verified for accurate spelling and application, all ambiguous cases being referred to the appropriate federal or provincial member of the CPCGN for investigation and ruling. Only upon completion of this long and painstaking process is the material ready for a text-processing agency to begin photocomposition for publication.

The introduction of computer-based text-processing in 1974 has streamlined *Gazetteer* production and greatly simplified the cumulative process of producing *Gazetteer* supplements. All material is now keyboarded, edited, sorted, photocomposed and published, with each year's supplement material being merged with that of earlier years in a computer environment.

Automation of toponymic information

The Section is attempting to take advantage of advances in information-handling technology to increase the effectiveness with which it carries out its various functions. Making use of computer-based text-processing facilities was the first step.

Early in 1977 the Toponymy Division contracted with a systems analyst to prepare a feasibility study for the automation of the names data base. His preliminary report suggests a system that should make more efficient the production of gazetteers, the maintenance of files and the response to queries, while offering the additional capability of producing special lists in response to specific needs. It opens up the possibility of automated information exchange between the Toponymy Division (CPCGN Secretariat) and other federal and provincial agencies. A system with interactive capability would also be potentially useful to the map production units of the federal Government, particularly those involved in automated cartography, for the placement of names on maps.

It is estimated that data entry into either an in-house mini-computer system or to a computer service bureau system will require between three and five years. The present CPCGN card files contain approximately 300,000 decisions on names, arranged alphabetically within each province or territory. (This number is expected to increase to 1,000,000 by the end of the century.) When input of these records into a computer system is completed, the machine-readable file will supersede the card files. This will mean a considerable reduction in the amount of manual labour currently required for the creation, maintenance and manipulation of card records. Search time will be reduced, as the system should accommodate several terminals with simultaneous access. There will be no need for part of the file to leave the office, and hence be temporarily inaccessible, as is the case at present when cards are sent to a computer service bureau for keyboarding for *Gazetteer* production. Given the currency of such a data base, *Gazetteer* production will consist of running a computer programme to select, format and produce a phototypesetting file, which will be sent to a phototypesetter and thence to a publisher. Alternatively, in view of the rapidity with which *Gazetteer* material can be prepared with such a system, more frequent, less costly microfiche copies might be a viable means of providing current information, thus eliminating the need for cumulative supplements.

The magnitude of the task of preparing the name records for input precludes full use of a computer file for some years to come. It is anticipated that only one province or territory will be entered at a time, so that we may expect partial use within two years, and perhaps full use in the mid-1980s.

NOTES ON THE CONTENT AND FORM OF GAZETTEERS

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The gazetteers published by official agencies of a country serve a double purpose. Being reference publications, they are the most effective means of introducing geographical names, standardized in the language (or languages) of the country concerned, into everyday usage, both domestically and abroad. For this reason, the publication of gazetteers is a pledge of successful work on the standardization of geographical names, at the national, and subsequently at the international, level.

Work on the compilation of gazetteers has considerably broadened in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in recent years. In the search for the most convenient variant for practical application, several types of gazetteers were elaborated, each designed for a specific circle of consumers.

First of all it is necessary to distinguish between two main kinds of gazetteers: those containing domestic

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, USSR, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.20.

geographical names and those containing geographical names of other countries. The gazetteers of the first type, presenting the code of domestic geographical names, are approved by the corresponding State bodies and become official documents, to be used not only within this country but also abroad. The gazetteers of the second type, presenting geographical names from other countries, standardized in the language of the given country, may have official status only within the country of publication.

Modern gazetteers differ in their territorial coverage, number of entries, content and form.

Coverage

The national gazetteers published in the USSR cover both the whole territory of the country and, because of the great size of the country, individual political-administrative units: Republics, territories or regions. Gazetteers presenting names of other countries are compiled for the whole world, for groups of countries (united by common character of language or by their geographical position) and for separate countries.

Number of entries

In terms of size there is a wide range of gazetteers, ranging from comparatively small publications incorporating only the names of large and important entities to extremely comprehensive volumes. Gazetteers of the latter kind are usually compiled on the basis of census data (for selection of populated places) and of data derived from a base map (for selection of topographic features).

Content

For any Soviet gazetteer, the compulsory content includes the geographical name (in the normalized Russian form and, in the case of non-Russian names, in the official national form); a designation of the kind of feature the name relates to; and its connexion to a political-administrative unit of the first order. In addition, both national gazetteers and gazetteers for foreign countries may supply some additional information on geographical names, such as: existing unofficial forms of names or their local variants; alteration of names or change in spelling; stress points; more detailed administrative division or geographical co-ordinates of a feature; and certain strictly linguistic information on names as lexical units of a language (gender, case forms etc.).

Form

The publications may be of the traditional kind (with free information statement) or they may be produced by means of modern computer techniques (i.e. in reshaped form). A certain scantiness of the latter in respect of volume and presentation of information are compensated for by rapidness of compilation and by a noticeably decreased number of mistakes.

Sample pages from three Soviet gazetteers, showing a variety of both content and form, are represented in annexes I, II and III.

Annex I is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of the Georgian SSR*. Except for the normalized Russian and Georgian forms of names (in original script) and the designation of the kind of feature (abbreviation after the Russian-rendered name), there is no indication of administrative division. Geographical characteristics are given for topographic features where necessary. Stress points are indicated in the Russian-rendered forms.

Annex II is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of the Byelorussian SSR*. Each entry supplies the following information: the normalized Russian-rendered form of each name, with indication of the stress point; the normalized Byelorussian form of the name (in national spelling), with indication of the stress point; gender or number of the name (abbreviation in brackets), which indicates the grammatical forms the name assumes in a running text; kind of the feature (in abbreviated form) and its administrative division to the level of second-order units; names of topographic features are accompanied by short indication of geographical characteristics; and finally, local forms are given (after the words "местн. ф.") if these differ from the normalized one. The figures in brackets indicate order numbers of regions (according to the list attached to the *Dictionary*) where they are registered.

Annex III is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of Arabic Countries*, which supplies the following information for each name: the normalized Russian form; type of feature; country; geographical co-ordinates of the entity; romanized form of the name, with appropriate geographic term and the original (Arabic) lettering. In some cases, where the compilers could not establish the Arabic lettering, it is not indicated.

Джавахе́тский (Кочу́тский) хребе́т, Грузинская и Армянская ССР	ჯავახეთის ქედი
Джавахо́тское наго́рье, Ахалкалакский, Богдановский, Дманисский и др.р-ны	ჯავახეთის მთიანეთი
Джа́вский райо́н, Юго-Осетинская АО	ჯავის რაიონი
Джалау́рта, с.,Сачхерский р-н	ჯარაურთა
Джампа́л, р.,левый приток р.Амткел; Гульрипшский р-н Абх.АССР	ჯამპალი
Джангита́у, г.,на границе с Кабардино-Балкарской АССР	ჯანგითაუ
Джандаргёль, оз.,см.Джанда́ри	
Джанда́ри, оз.(на территории Азербайджанской ССР - Джандаргёль), Грузинская и Азербайджанская ССР	ჯანდარი
Джанда́ри, с.,Гардабанский р-н	ჯანდარი
Джанпал, р.,см.Джампа́л	
Джапари́дзе, с.,Цителцкаройский р-н	ჯაფარიძე
Джахунде́ри, с.,Лентехский р-н	ჯახუნდერი
Джва́ри, пер.,Сачхерский р-н	ჯვარი
Джва́ри, пгт, Цаленджихский р-н	ჯვარი
Джвари́са, с.,Ткибульский горсовет	ჯვარისა
Джга́ли, с.,Цаленджихский р-н	ჯგალი
Джге́рда, с.,Очамчирский р-н Абх.АССР	ჯგერდა
Джеджо́ра, р.,левый приток р.Риони; Джавский Юго-Осет.АО и Онский р-ны	ჯეჯორა
Джиграше́ни, с.,Богдановский р-н	ჯიგრაშენი

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д. и ж.-д.ст., Волк. Гр.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Гродн. Гр.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Клецк. Мн.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Осип. Мг.

Голы́нь – Галы́нь (ж., м.), д., Нвгруд. Гр.; местн. ф. Галы́нё (ср.) – Голы́не

Го́льни – Го́льні (мн.), д., Берест. Гр.

Гольци́ – Гальцы́ (мн.), д., Стол. Бр.; местн. ф. Гі́льца, Гу́льца (мн.) – Го́льцы

Го́льчицы – Го́льчыцы (мн.), д., Слуцк. Мн.; местн. ф. Го́льчычы (мн.) – Го́льчичи

Гольша́нка – Гальша́нка (ж.), р., прав. приток р. Березина, басс. р. Неман; Ошм. Гр., Вол. Мн. и Ивьев. Гр.; местн. ф. в средн. и нижн. течении Альша́нка (ж.) – Ольша́нка

Гольша́ны – Гальша́ны (мн.), д., Ошм. Гр.; местн. ф. Альша́ны (мн.) – Ольша́ны

Го́ля – Го́ля (ж.), ж.-д.ст. в д. Пограничная, Кам. Бр.

Ж Го́ля – Го́ля (ж.), д., см. Пограничная, д.

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), гор. и ж.-д.ст., центр Гм. и Гом.; местн. ф. Го́мля, Го́мяй, Го́мей (Гом., 39, 40, 42, 49, 54), Го́мій (39, 40, 42) – Го́мля, Го́мей, Го́мий (м.)

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), д., Плцк. Вт.; местн. ф. Го́мля (м.) – Го́мля

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), оз., басс. р. Туровлянка; северо-западнее д. Гомель, Плцк. Вт.; местн. ф. Го́мля (м.) – Го́мля

Го́мельский райо́н – Го́мельскі раён (м.), на востоке Гм.

Го́мельское Поле́сье – Го́мельскае Пале́ссе (ср.), низина, восточная часть Белорусского Полесья; юго-восток БССР

Даккак, Судан, 12 56 сш 26 58 вд
Daqqaq, دقّاق
Дакук(Таук), Ирак, 35 08 сш 44 27 вд
Daquq(Tauq), داقوق
Дакуф, АРЕ, 28 24 сш 30 38 вд
Daquf, داقوف
Дала, НДРЙ, см. Эл-Дали, 13 42 сш 44 43 вд
Dala
Далави-Кара, Сирия, ٣٧ 08 сш 41 54 вд
Dalawi Kara, دلوى كرة
Дали-Фар, Сирия, 36 34 сш 37 48 вд
Dali Fa'r, دالى فأر
Далла, ист., АРЕ, 27 19 сш 27 20 вд
Dalla, 'A., عين دالّة
Дальбуз, Сирия, 34 44 сш 36 34 вд
Dalbuz, دلبوز
Дальга, АРЕ, 27 39 сш 30 42 вд
Dalga', دلجاء
Далькан, к., Саудовская Аравия, 24 16 сш 45 37 вд
Dalqan, well, دلقان
Далькут, Оман, 16 40 сш 53 12 вд
Dalkut, ضلكوت
Дальма, о., Персидский зал.: ОАЭ,
24 30 сш 52 20 вд
Dalma, Jaz., جزيرة دلما
Дальмадж, оз., Ирак, 32 20 сш 45 28 вд
Dalmaj, H., هور دلمج
Дальфа, г., АРЕ, вис. 418 м, 30 45 сш 34 12 вд
Dalfa, G., جبل ضلفة
Дальхаму, АРЕ, 30 20 сш 30 51 вд
Dalhamu, دلهمو
Дам, Саудовская Аравия, см.Эль-Лидам, 20 29 сш 44 50 вд
Dam
Дама, вади, Саудовская Аравия, 27 10 сш 35 45 вд
Dama, W., وادى دما
Даманхур, АРЕ, адм.центр мухафазн Бухейра,
31 02 сш 30 28 вд
Damanhur, دمنهور

UNITED NATIONS GAZETTEERS
Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Le Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques a créé un Groupe de travail des nomenclatures à sa cinquième session, en 1973. A cette même session, des recommandations ont été adoptées tendant à ce que l'on adapte les nomenclatures du Board on Geographic Names (BGN) des Etats-Unis pour les rendre conformes aux spécifications des Nations Unies.

Bien que nous pensions, comme il est indiqué dans le rapport du Groupe de travail sur sa sixième session, que ces nomenclatures doivent "faciliter l'élaboration d'une série de nomenclatures mondiales en l'absence de nomenclatures de ce genre établies par les autorités nationales intéressées", nous soulignons que nous ne souhaitons pas adapter la nomenclature du BGN portant sur notre pays.

Nous approuvons l'idée de la nomenclature sommaire, également mentionnée dans le rapport du Groupe de travail sur sa sixième session. Il conviendrait de spécifier qu'en l'absence d'une nomenclature quelconque la nomenclature sommaire pourrait être établie grâce à une coopération directe avec les services nationaux s'occupant des noms géographiques.

Resumen

El Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas sobre Nombres Geográficos estableció un Grupo de Trabajo sobre Nomenclátores en su quinto período de sesiones en 1973. También en este período de sesiones, se adoptaron recomendaciones para adaptar los nomenclátores de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos a fin de cumplir con las especificaciones de las Naciones Unidas.

Si bien estamos de acuerdo con la declaración que figura en el informe del Grupo de Trabajo sobre su sexto período de sesiones al efecto de que estos nomenclátores son "para ayudar en la preparación de una serie de nomenclátores mundiales en ausencia de nomenclátores así preparados por las autoridades nacionales interesadas", hemos de poner de relieve que no deseamos adaptar el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos que abarca nuestro país.

Convenimos en el concepto del nomenclátor conciso también especificando en el informe sobre el sexto período de sesiones. Es preciso añadir a estas especificaciones que, a falta de cualquier clase de nomenclátores existentes, el nomenclátor conciso podría basarse también en la cooperación directa con la respectiva autoridad del país en materia de nombres.

*

* *

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names established a Working Group on Gazetteers at its fifth session in 1973. Also at this session, recommendations were adopted to adapt United States Board on Geographical Names (BGN) gazetteers to comply with United Nations specifications.

While we agree with the statement (in the report of the Working Group on its sixth session) to the effect that these gazetteers are "to help in the preparation of a series of world gazetteers in the absence of such gazetteers prepared by the national authorities concerned", we must emphasize that we do not wish to adapt the BGN gazetteer covering our country.

We agree to the concept of the *Concise Gazetteer*, also specified in the report on the sixth session. It is necessary to add to these specifications that in the absence of any kind of existing gazetteer, the *Concise Gazetteer* could also be based on direct co-operation with the respective country's name authority.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 27

AUTOMATIC TYPE SELECTION AND TYPESETTING FOR MAPS IN THE DIVISION OF NATIONAL MAPPING
Report presented by Australia*

A system has been developed by the Division of National Mapping that automates the extraction, selection and typesetting of feature names for mapping purposes.

A master names file has been created based on the names contained in the *Australia 1:250,000 Map Series Gazetteer*. Within each feature code every named feature has been assigned an order of importance.

Feature groups and the number of heirarchies established for each are:

Division	*Group*	*Hierarchies*
Cultural	Populated places	11
	Homesteads etc	3
	Roads	3
Topographic	Relief features	6
	Inland area features	12
	Islands	14
	Headlands	5
Hydrographic	Offshore areal water features	18
	Inland areal water features	14
	Drainage network	8

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Division of National Mapping, Canberra, Australia, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 39

Computer programmes have been written to:

(*a*) Extract feature names, for specified maps, and allocate type font, point size and case to each;

(*b*) Convert the selected feature names and associated type variables to code readable by the automatic typesetting machine;

(*c*) Provide listings for manual typesetting;

(*d*) Maintain the Master Names File through corrections, deletions and additions; and

(*e*) Provide listings or magnetic tape copies of feature names for specified maps or states on request.

At the map compilation stage the cartographer requests a listing of the feature names according to the hierarchy of importance determined for the map series. For one-off projects, the cartographer nominates the hierarchies to be used. This listing is checked for accuracy and completeness and any corrections and additions listed. The Master Names File is then updated.

The extraction and allocation programme is then run on the updated version, after which stripping film is contacted from the negative film output of the automatic typesetting machine, and the map name overlay prepared in the normal manner.

Anyone interested in further details of the system should write to:

Director of National Mapping
P.O. Box 548
Queanbeyan 2620
Australia

GAZETTEER OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY: INTRODUCTION

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

Résumé

La nomenclature géographique de la République fédérale d'Allemagne a été élaborée à l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie en collaboration avec le Comité permanent pour les noms géographiques et a été coordonnée avec le Ministre fédéral de l'intérieur. La première Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Genève en 1967, a fait des recommandations pour l'établissement par les pays membres de nomenclatures nationales. Ces recommandations ont servi de règles pour la préparation de cette nomenclature.

Les noms indiqués dans la nomenclature géographique de la République fédérale d'Allemagne comprennent tous les lieux habités et tous les objets physiques et géographiques figurant sur la carte générale au 1 : 500 000, série mondiale 1404. De plus, on a incorporé toutes les communes qui, faute de place, ne paraissent pas sur la carte.

Tous les noms s'écrivent suivant l'orthographie officielle; la situation géographique et la région administrative et géographique sont indiquées et des indications éventuelles d'ordre qualitatif ou quantitatif sont données qui serviront de critères de généralisation.

La prononciation et l'accentuation ne sont indiquées que dans le cas où elles diffèrent des règles générales de la grammaire allemande. Pour garantir une mise à jour constante de la nomenclature géographique, on se sert du traitement électronique des données.

Resumen

El nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania ha sido elaborado por el Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada (Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie) en colaboración con el Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos, y ha sido coordinada con el Ministerio del Interior de la República Federal. La primera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Ginebra en 1967, recomendó que los países miembros prepararan nomenclátores nacionales. Esas recomendaciones han servido de normas para la preparación del nomenclátor.

Los nombres del nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania abarcan todos los lugares habitados y todos los objetos físicos y geográficos que figuran en la carta general en escala 1 : 500 000, de la serie mundial 1404. Además, se han incorporado todos los municipios que, por falta de lugar, no aparecen en la carta.

Todos los nombres se escriben de acuerdo con la ortografía oficial; se indican la situación geográfica y la región administrativa, y se dan ocasionalmente indicaciones de tipo cualitativo o cuantitativo para que sirvan de criterios de generalización.

No se indican la pronunciación y la acentuación salvo cuando difieren de las que tendrían si se aplicasen las reglas generales de gramática alemana. Para garantizar la actualización permanente del nomenclátor geográfico, se utilizan métodos de elaboración electrónica de datos.

*

* *

In 1967, the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names passed the recommendation that the member countries elaborate gazetteers for their territories according to uniform specifications.

After the foundation of the Federal Republic of Germany, the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (Institute for Applied Geodesy) had taken over part of the functions of the former Reichsamt für Landesaufnahme (Reich Survey Office) and, as the competent service, undertook, in co-operation with the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names and the Federal Minister of the Interior, to compile such a gazetteer. Assisted by numerous institutions of the Federal

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 42

Republic and of the *Länder*, the present *Geographisches Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany) has been prepared.[1]

The geographical names used in this book refer in particular to the following groups of topographical features: populated places, mountains, mountainous regions, rivers, lakes, oceans, bays, islands and landscapes.

The selection of names has been based on the *Übersichtskarte* 1:500,000 (1:500,000 General Map) of World Series 1404.

For all names, the following information is given: official spelling; geographical and geodetic co-ordinates; and, for independent populated places or communities, the number of inhabitants and height above mean sea level. Also indicated for all populated places is information on their administrative area or function and such cultural and geographical characteristics as traffic systems and spa function.

Information is also given as to altitudes and dimensions of physical-geographical features, as well as on their affiliation with larger-scale natural units or water systems.

This additional information exceeds the minimum requirement of the United Nations. However, in the present *Gazetteer* we have included data of such encyclopaedic character, since they are indispensable as an important means of generalization in practical mapping.

We have not indicated the pronunciation (international phonetics) of each individual name. But reference is made in the introduction to the pronunciation rules in general and to regional and local particularities.

For populated places, especially, much of this additional information (e.g. number of inhabitants, administrative affiliation and cultural and geographical characteristics) is subject to continuous or occasional modification. The *Gazetteer* thus requires continuous revision.

Such continuous updating is made possible only by electronic data processing. Current modifications can be stored in the data file and retrieved and printed at any time. Moreover, electronic data processing offers the additional advantage that certain individual features or groups of features can be called separately with their respective data as required.

History of the *Gazetteer*

At the First International Congress for Geographers, held in Antwerp in 1871, the problematic nature of the spelling of geographical names in national as well as in international use had already been discussed. At that time, the demand was made that each country should compile for its territory a list of populated places in Roman lettering, which the participants noted was officially approved and should be acknowledged by other countries. This demand was extended in 1909 to all kinds of geographical names by the First Conference on the Preparation of an International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale.

But only in 1962, after the last United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale in Bonn, could the different initiatives of certain nations be extended to an international level under the protection of the United Nations. In 1967, the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in Geneva, followed by the Second Conference in London in 1972, promoted considerably the new development, initiating a fruitful co-operation between the member countries. In Geneva also a United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has been established, comprising 16 linguistic/geographical divisions, including a Dutch-speaking and a German-speaking group. These latter two hold meetings in the intervals between the United Nations Conferences in order to prepare for the next one.

The first Conference in Geneva in 1967 passed the following recommendation for the presentation of national gazetteers:[2]

"Recommendation E. National Gazetteers

"It is recommended that each names authority produce, and continually revise, appropriate gazetteers of all its standardized geographical names.

"It is further recommended that, in addition to the standardized names, each gazetteer include, as a minimum, such information as is necessary for the proper location and identification of the named features.

"In particular, it is recommended that the following be included:

"(*a*) The kind of feature to which the name applies;

"(*b*) Precise description of the location and the extent, including a point position reference if possible, of each named feature;

"(*c*) Provision for the parts of natural features to be additionally defined by reference to the whole and for the names of extended features to be defined as necessary by reference to their constituent parts;

"(*d*) Such information on administrative or regional areas as is considered necessary and, if possible, reference to a map or chart within which the features lie;

"(*e*) All officially standardized names for a feature, if there are more than one; and provision for cross-references to be made to names previously used for the same feature.

"When national authorities determine it possible, both technically and economically, they may include such information on geographical names as gender, number, definite and indefinite forms, position of stress, tone and pronunciation in the system of the International Phonetic Association and such other

[1] The preliminary edition of the *Gazetteer* appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.42/Add.1 and is available on request from Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt äm Main. the Federal Republic of Germany.

[2] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III, resolution 4, recommendation E.

linguistic information as may lead to the better understanding and use of names both nationally and internationally."

At the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in London in 1972 the additional resolution has been passed to include also an alphabetical glossary of the most customary designatory terms used, with a brief explanation of their meanings in English.

In addition, the Conference has recommended to those countries that, for the moment, do not have at their disposal a complete list of all geographical names of their territories, that they publish, in the interim, concise lists of the names of their geographical entities, including administrative division,[3] which could already be incorporated into the *Geographisches Namenbuch der Erde* (*Concise United Nations Gazetteer of the World*), as proposed by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names at its fifth session.

In the Federal Republic of Germany, the national effort towards the standardization of geographical names began in 1952 with the founding of a Working Committee on *Namengebung und Namenschreibung* (Nomenclature and Spelling of Names) within the scope of the Deutsche Gesellschaft für Kartographie (German Society for Cartography). Following the example of its British counterpart, the Permanent Committee on Geographic Names for British Official Use, this Committee has developed into the Ständiger Ausschuß *für die Rechtschreibung geographischer Namen* (Permanent Committee on the Spelling of Geographical Names). After consultations with the responsible Governmental authorities in the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria and Switzerland, this Committee was established at Bad Godesberg on 16 January 1959. In the presence of members of the three States, the Director of the Institut für Landeskunde (Institute for Applied Geography), Professor Dr. E. Meynen, presided at this meeting. At a later date the name was shortened to Ständiger Ausschuß für geographische Namen, or StAGN (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names).

The most important task of StAGN is to standardize for the German-speaking countries the spelling of geographical names of all parts of the world for official and private use and to publish appropriate lists of geographical names. The first result of this work was the publication in 1966 of the *Duden-Wörterbuch geographischer Namen, Band I Europa ohne Sowjetunion* (*Duden Dictionary of Geographical Names, volume I Europe without the Soviet Union*) co-operation with the Bibliographic Institute at Mannheim. At the end of 1973, the secretariat of StAgN moved from the Institut für Landeskunde to the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie in Frankfurt am Main. There, the work on the *Geographisches Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (*Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany*) has been resumed. The first task has been to test the use of electronic data processing for the production and updating of gazetteers.

[3] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III, resolutions 16 and 35.

Selection and sources used

Selection of geographical features

The present *Gazetteer* comprises the names of all geographical features of the Federal Republic of Germany shown on the official *Übersichtskarte* (general map) at scale 1:500,000, World Series 1404. In addition, the *Gazetteer* contains those names of independent communes which, due to lack of space, do not appear on the map. Thus, the *Gazetteer* also constitutes a complete list of all communes of the Federal Republic of Germany. It is possible to complete the *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* in such a way that all of the geographical names shown on the country's official topographic map at scale 1:25,000 can be incorporated at a later date.

Sources used

These were as follows:

(*a*) The sources used for the capture of geographical names were the General Map at scale 1:500,000 (both single sheets and assemblages of sheets) and the *Amtliche Gemeindeverzeichnisse* (official lists of communes) of the *Länder*;

(*b*) The document for the digitizing of geographical and geodetic co-ordinates of the central points of populated places and mountains and of the geographical centres of landscapes, islands and lakes was the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000;

(*c*) Sources for the affiliation of geographical-topographical features to the official map series and their sheet numbers were the sheet indexes of the official map series of the Federal Republic of Germany at scales from 1:25,000 to 1:1,000,000;

(*d*) Two sources used for the determination of the administrative affiliation and function of populated places were maps of the *Länder*, showing the boundaries of communes, and lists showing modifications of boundaries of administrative units caused by regional reforms in the *Länder*;

(*e*) The sources for the number of inhabitants of populated places were official lists published by the *Länder*, containing the communes of each *Land* with their extrapolated populations;

(*f*) Several sources were used for the determination of cultural, geographical and other characteristics, serving as most important criteria for generalization:

(i) The official map, at scale 1:750,000, showing the nets of federal *autobahns* (dual highways) and federal highways in the Federal Republic of Germany;

(ii) The handbook of the Bundesanstalt für Flugsicherung (Federal Office for Air Traffic Control), annexed maps;

(iii) The official list of the communes of the Federal Republic of Germany, giving the area and popu-

lation of each according to natural regional units;[4]

(iv) The official list showing the altitude above mean sea level of the centre of each commune;

(v) The official lists of seaports and inland ports in the Federal Republic of Germany;

(vi) The list of spas and health resorts in the Federal Republic of Germany; and

(vii) The official list of hydrographic codes.

(*g*) The different lists of geographical names were presented for final inspection to the competent ministry and State Survey Office of the *Land* concerned, where corrections and supplements have been made. Thus it is guaranteed that all information is of official character.

Arrangement of the *Gazetteer*

Headwords

The geographical names are listed as main entries or as cross-references in alphabetical order in the *Gazetteer*. Both are stressed by boldface type.

The main entries are the present official geographical names, with statistical, cultural and geographical information added for each.

Cross references are given as alternative names (e.g. "**Malchen** see **Melibocus**") and as broken entries (e.g. **Venn, Hohes** see **Hohes Venn**).

Alphabetical arrangement of entries

The alphabetical arrangement is made according to the specifications given by the Fachnormenausschuß des Deutschen Instituts für Normung e. V. (Committee for Technical Standards of the German Institute for Standardization) (FNBü-GA 5007 30-75).

The basic letters of the Roman alphabet are arranged as follows:

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z;

The umlaut letters ä, ö, and ü are alphabetized in the same way as a, o and u;

The diphthongs ae, oe and ue are alphabetized, regardless of their pronunciation, as a + e, o + e and u + e;

The letter ß is alphabetized as ss;

Hyphens and spaces have been disregarded for the purpose of alphabetical arrangement (thus, Groß-Gerau, Groß Ippener, Großrosseln).

Pronunciation

The general rule is that geographical names are pronounced according to the standard (colloquial) pronunciation, with individual letters being given their Roman pronunciation. The pronunciation is indicated after the headword only when it differs from the general rules for reading German or when doubt may arise, e.g. Soest (*so*st), Duisburg (d*ü*sburg), Troisdorf (tr*o*sdorf), Kues (k*u*s), Cham (*k*am), Charlottenburg (*sch*arlottenburg), Celle (*z*elle), Lüchow (lüch*o*), Sylt (s*ü*lt), Eltville (elt*ville*), Saarlouis (sarl*ui*). As the stress in German pronunciation is generally on the first syllable, stress is indicated only in exceptional cases (e.g. Osnabrück, Bonam*e*s, Salzgitter, Kaiserslaut*e*rn). In these cases an italicized vowel indicates a long vowel; a point under a vowel indicates that the vowel in question is short in pronunciation.

In general, diphthongs are pronounced like umlauts (ae = ä, oe = ö and ue = ü).

Descriptions of features

For each feature, the following information is given:

(*a*) Indication of the kind of feature (e.g. municipality or commune, part of a commune, mountain, group of mountains, river, canal, lake, ocean, bay, island, landscape);

(*b*) Location by means of geographical and geodetic co-ordinates:

(i) For point features such as populated places and mountains, the co-ordinates of the central points are indicated;

(ii) For linear features such as rivers and canals, the co-ordinates of the mouths or those of the line where they definitely leave the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany are indicated;

(iii) For areal features such as lakes, islands and landscapes, the co-ordinates of the approximate geographical central point are indicated;

(*c*) Code numbers indicating statistical or geographical units (for populated places, their relation to the superior administrative unit is indicated; for other geographical features, the geographical and hydrographic code numbers are indicated);

(*d*) Quantitative information provided includes number of inhabitants for communes, altitude above mean sea level for populated places (as far as obtainable), altitudes of mountains and groups of mountains (with their highest elevations) and areas of natural regions in square kilometres;

(*e*) For populated places, qualitative information is provided, as applicable, on important cultural and geographical factors (e.g. traffic system, or function as a spa or health resort);

(*f*) Also indicated are the sheet numbers of the official map series of the Federal Republic of Germany at scales from 1:25,000 to 1:1,000,000.

Grammatical information

Names of physical-geographical features are followed, in brackets, by the grammatical gender (m = male, f = female, n = neuter) (e.g. Feldberg [m], Elbe [f], Hohes Venn [n]). The plural form is indicated by adding the notation [pl].

[4] Usage followed that of the *Handbuch der naturräumlichen Gliederung Deutschlands* (*Handbook of the Structure of Germany by Natural Regions*), vol. 2, *Bundesanstalt für Landeskunde und Raumordnung* (Bad Godesberg, 1953–1962).

General documents for the spelling of geographical names in the Federal Republic of Germany

Legal authority for spelling of geographical names

Often the different spelling of equal or homophonic geographical names raises the question of the legal foundations.

The *Länder* are competent to authorize the official spellings of geographical names. As to independent communes, the official list of communes of the statistical office of the *Land* in question is authoritative. The spellings of all other geographical names are official as they are shown on an official map.

Official sources

The following list indicates the source material used for the capture of geographical names of the *Land* of Lower Saxony only:

(*a*) *Übersichtskarte* 1:500,000 World Series 1404, published by the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt a. M.;

(*b*) *Topographische Übersichtskarte* (*General Topographic Map*) 1:200,000, published by the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt a. M.;

(*c*) Sheet indexes of the official topographical and general map series of the Federal Republic of Germany and of the Joint Operations Graphic (Ground) 1:250,000 Series 1501;

(*d*) *General Map of Lower Saxony* 1:500,000, Administrative Edition, published by the Wiedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung (Land Survey Office, Lower Saxony Administration Department), Hanover, 1976;

(*e*) Map at scale 1:200,000 showing the boundaries of communes, published by the Niedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung, Hanover, 1974;

(*f*) Population of the communes as of 1 January 1977, in *Statistische Berichte* (*Statistical Reports*) published by Niedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Statistik (Statistics), Hanover, 1977;

(*g*) Map at 1:750,000 showing the net of federal autobahns and federal highways as of 1 January 1977, published by the Bundesminister für Verkehr, Abteilung Straßenbau (Federal Ministry of Transport, Road Construction Department), Bonn, 1977;

(*h*) Map of the federal waterways at scale 1:1,000,000, published by the Bundesminister für Verkehr, Abteilung Wasserstraßen (Department of Waterways), Bonn, 1970;

(*i*) Nautical charts Nos. 98 and 101, *Die Ostsee* (*The Baltic Sea*) and *Die Nordsee* (*The North Sea*), published at scale 1:500,000 by the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (German Hydrographic Institute), Hamburg, 1964 and 1970;

(*j*) Map of the federal waterways in the coastal region at scale 1:500,000, published by the Federal Minister of Transport, Bonn, 1964;

(*k*) *Flugnavigationskarte* (*Air Navigation Chart*) at scale 1:1,000,000, in *Luftfahrthandbuch* (*Handbook for Air Navigation*), vol. III, published by the Bundesanstalt für Flugsicherung (Federal Office for Air Traffic Control) and the Amt für Flugsicherung der Bundeswehr (Office for Air Traffic Control of the German Federal Armed Forces), Frankfurt a. M., 1977;

(*l*) *Amtliches Gemeindeverzeichnis der Bundesrepublik Deutschland. Fläche und Wohnbevölkerung der naturräumlichen Einheiten* (*Area and Resident Population of Natural Regional Units*), published by the Federal Statistical Office, Wiesbaden, 1957, pages 60 ff.;

(*m*) List of the code numbers for Lower Saxony, published by the Lower Saxon Ministry for Food, Agriculture and Forestry, Hanover, 1975;

(*n*) *Amtliches Verzeichnis der Mittelpunkuskoordinaten und Höhen über NN für die Gemeinden Niedersachsens* (*Official list of the Co-ordinates of the Central Points and Heights Above Mean Sea Level for the Communes in Lower Saxony*), published by the Niedersächsisches Verwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung, Hanover, 1976; and

(*o*) The list of health resorts and spas in the *Bundeskommentar* (*Federal Commentary*), vol. II, in annex IA of the grant-in-aid rules of annex No. 7 of the grant-in-aid rules in the version of 15 February 1975 (GMBl., page 109, MinBlFin page 134), 16th edition, Stuttgart, 1976.

Other sources

Other sources of spellings were:

(*a*) The map at scale 1:1,000,000 of the waterways in West and Central Germany and the Benelux countries published by Golben und Landkarten, Frankfurt a. M.; and

(*b*) *Westdeutscher Schiffahrts- und Hafenkalender 76* (*The West German Shipping and Port Calendar*, 1976) published by Binnenschiffahrtsverlag, Duisburg, 1976.

General rules for the German spelling of geographical names

In 1966 the general rules for the German spelling of geographical names were elaborated by StAgN and published in the *Duden*-Wörterbuch geographischer Namen (*Duden Dictionary of Geographical Names*). These rules are quoted below, with minor omissions. Since many examples given in the Dictionary refer to geographical names of foreign countries, these examples have been replaced by names relating to the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany.

"Geographical names are normally not subject to the general spelling rules. Rather, they are spelled in the officially approved or customary form.

"However, in the items mentioned below the German geographical names comply with the general spelling rules, except for individual cases where another officially approved version exists.

"1 Capitalization and spelling with small letters.

"(*a*) Adjectives and participles forming parts of geographical names are capitalized. This applies also to the *-isch* derivatives.

"*Examples*: Altes Land; Großer Arber; Deutsche Bucht; Hessisch Lichtenau.

"(*b*) Word forms with final letters *-er* which are derived from geographical names are capitalized.

"*Examples*: Lüneburger Heide; Allgäuer Alpen; Lübecker Bucht; Starnberger See.

"2. Use of one word, two words or hyphen.

"(*a*) Geographical and other names as determinative element.

"(i) In general, compounds consisting of a single or compound geographical name or a personal name plus a primary word are written as one word.

Examples: Frankenwald; Chiemsee; Albstadt; Wilhelmshaven.

"(ii) The hyphen (-) is often used either to improve intelligibility or to emphasize the name when the geographical name is followed by a compound primary word which forms the determinative element.

Example: Elbe-Seitenkanal.

Where intelligibility is not impaired, writing as one word is preferable.

Example: Weserbergland.

"(iii) Hyphens are used when the determinative element consists of several geographical names.

Example: Dortmund-Ems-Kanal.

"(iv) Hyphens are also used when the determinative element consists of several words (abbreviations included).

Example: Friedrich-Wilhelm-Lübke-Koog.

"(*b*) Derivatives with final letters *-er*.

"(i) Two words are used when the derivatives with final *-er* of geographical names designate the location.

Examples: Oberpfälzer Wald; Starnberger See; Dammer Berge; Wahner Heide.

Exceptions: Böhmerwald; Siegerland.

"(ii) There are geographical names with final *-er* which are not derivatives in the above sense. These names are written as one word in accordance with rule 2(*a*)(i) above.

Examples: Sauerland; Wuppertal.

Where the derivatives with final *-er* of geographical names designate persons, writing as one word is preferred.

"(*c*) Adjectives as determinative elements.

"(i) Spelling as one word is generally used for compounds consisting of non-inflected adjectives such as groß, klein, alt, neu etc. or direction of compass plus a geographical name.

Examples: Oberpfalz; Großalmerode; Neustadt; Ostfildern.

On the other hand, official usage prescribes: Groß-Gerau; Neu-Anspach; Klein Nordende.

"(ii) The hyphen is used with compounds consisting of non-inflected adjectives with final letters *-isch* which are derived from the names of places, countries and nations plus geographical names.

Example: Hessisch-Oldendorf.

On the other hand, official usage prescribes: Bayerisch Eisenstein.

"(*d*) Compounds consisting of geographical names.

"The hyphen is used when a geographical name is composed of two geographical names.

Examples: Schleswig-Holstein; Idar-Oberstein; Villingen-Schwenningen."

NOTES ON THE CONTENT OF THE NATIONAL LISTS OF NAMES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

The national lists of the geographical names of all countries are an important basis for the international standardization of geographical names. In recommendation E of resolution 4 of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[1] the Conference had expressed the view that such lists would be desirable and should be published. The national lists of geographical names available so far differ very much in their character.

The following are some ideas on how to prepare national lists of geographical names as exemplified by the German Democratic Republic on the basis of the above resolution.

A national list of geographical names is intended to contribute to a correct spelling and pronunciation of geographical names in all spheres of the social life of a country. Geographical names cover the names of all natural and man-made objects situated in the territory of the country concerned. They include the names of the territorial administrative units (counties, districts, towns, municipal districts, communities and associations of communities); of settlements (towns, communities, subdistricts, residential areas); of places of production in industry, agriculture, food-stuffs economy and forestry; of railways; of routes for motor traffic, inland and sea navigation and air traffic; and of cultural, educational and health institutions, sport and recreational facilities and the like, provided these occupy a given territory and have been given a name. The number of physical-geographical names is also quite large (e.g. names for landscapes, relief, hydrography and ground vegetation). In this rather broad meaning the concept of geographical names also includes microtoponyms, the so-called "field names" and names of village holdings, which are usually entered on real-estate maps and other large-scale maps.

* The original text of this paper, prepared by H. Zikmund. German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 48

[1] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. Geneva, 4–22 September 1967*, vol I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No E 68 I 9), chap III

An important aspect of the treatment of geographical names is to be seen in the process of systematically changing the natural environment, which also has an influence on geographical names. The German Democratic Republic has witnessed revolutionary changes in the field of agriculture. The year 1960 meant the end of a development which led to the full introduction of the co-operative system in agriculture. At present the production of plant and animal products is gradually being changed on the principle of industrialized production, and a systematic transition to industrialized production methods is going on, with the greatest benefit for the whole of society. Studies indicate that property-oriented thinking no longer plays any important role in field names and names of village holdings and that, in connexion with large agricultural areas, new names are being coined on the basis of practical work under production relations that are undergoing steady development. This is why a national book of names should be drawn up in such a way that it will be a guideline not only for the correct use of existing geographical names but also for the correct and purposeful coining of new names.

In the introduction to the actual list of names the treasury of geographical names should be characterized in a brief but concise way before, providing a short background description of the size and history of the country, past and present. The results already obtained in philological research work on this treasury of names should also be mentioned.

After the presentation of the existing regulations concerning the use of the previous geographical names and the coining of new geographical names, the rules for the spelling of geographical names are to be elucidated in detail. Furthermore, information should be included on the number of names listed, the main headings and reference headings, the system of alphabetization, the phonetic transcription, the grammatical characterization of the names, the descriptions of the objects and the abbreviations used.

The number of geographical names to be listed depends on the scale of the map. Given a scale of 1:200,000, the number of names entered should amount to about 25,000 in the case of the German Democratic Republic, i.e. 18,000 settlement names and 7,000 other geographical names. It is recommended, on the basis of resolution 35 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[2] that a concise or interim list of names should first be published. First of all, such a list can be compiled in less time; and second, it will provide valuable experience for the preparation of a complete list of names.

Problems regarding the spelling of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic lie in the fact that those names reflect marked traces of long-standing spelling habits, orthographic peculiarities of former times, which contradict today's orthographic rules and which differ markedly from the spelling of the other words of the current language concerned. The valid German orthography of today, for instance, which was established in the beginning of this century, is by no means fully homogeneous, but the spelling of the geographical names of the German Democratic Republic is even more heterogeneous in terms of orthography. Besides, half of all the geographical names in the German Democratic Republic are of non-German origin, and trace back to Slavic forms that were subject to various changes in the individual German dialects. Typical endings of place names in the German Democratic Republic are *-in*, *-ow*, *-itz*. A national list of names has to face such problems and must ensure that the names, wherever they are used, will be entered, printed, written and pronounced uniformly. The national list of names must indicate how to apply in practice the rules for the spelling of the geographical names of the country concerned. This requirement does not rule out the inclusion (for instance in brackets) of standardized forms of names that are still widely used; in such cases a special point should be made of noting that they are to be avoided for the reasons given.

[2] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London, 10-31 May 1972*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

GAZETTEERS IN JAPAN
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Les principales nomenclatures établies au Japon se répartissent comme suit :

a) Collections établies par des organismes publics : 5 volumes;

b) Collections établies par des organismes non publics : 5 volumes;

c) Autres publications : 2 volumes.

Resumen

Los principales nomenclátores preparados en el Japón son los siguientes:

a) Colecciones preparadas por organismos gubernamentales: 5 libros;

b) Colecciones preparadas por organismos no gubernamentales: 5 libros;

c) Otros: 2 libros.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.56.

*

* *

The main gazetteers prepared for use in Japan are of two types: those prepared by Government agencies and those prepared by non-Governmental agencies.

Collections prepared by Government agencies

(*a*) Geographic Bureau, Ministry of Home Affairs, *Gunku Tyōson Itiran* (*List of Counties, Wards, Towns and Villages*), 1881.

Geographic Bureau, Ministry of Home Affairs, *Timei Sakuin* (*Geographical Name Index*), 1885.

The above are the collections of administrative names of places (down to the village level).

(*b*) Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, *Hyōzyun Timei-syū* (*Collection of Standard Geographical Names*), 1971.

This book is a collection of about 5,000 natural place names determined by the Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names. The names are not written in Roman letters, nor are their locations indicated by latitude and longitude.

(*c*) Hydrographic Department, Maritime Safety Agency, *Nihon Engan Timei-syū* (*Collection of Geographical Names Along Japanese Seacoasts*), 1948.

About 10,000 geographical names used in nautical charts are arranged in alphabetical order. The names are expressed in Roman letters and the locations are indicated by latitude and longitude.

(*d*) Hydrographic Department, Maritime Safety Agency, *Suirosi* (*Sailing Directions*), 1966–1975.

The book gives descriptions on the conditions of the major points written on nautical charts. The index at the back of the book may be used as a gazetteer. The geographical names are written in Roman letters.

(*e*) Ministry of Education, *Timei no Yobikata to Kakikata* (*How to Read and Write Geographical Names*), 1958.

This book provides the guidelines for reading and writing geographical names necessary for elementary and secondary education. It is a collection of the names of principal natural regions in Japan and foreign geographical names.

Collections prepared by non-governmental agencies

These are:

(*a*) Togo Yosida, *Dai-nippon Timei Zisyo* (*Greater Japan Geographical Names Dictionary*), 1900–1909.

This book is a collection of geographical names which had appeared in a wide variety of literature from ancient times. It contains historical annotations.

(*b*) Japan Broadcasting Corporation (NHK), *Nihon Timei Hatuon Ziten* (*Dictionary of Pronunciation of Japanese Geographical Names*), 1959–1962.

This book is a collection of the names of *mati* and *ōaza* (determined by *si*, *mati* and *mura*) and of the names of natural regions (shown by district). The volume on Central Japan has been published but the volumes on the Hokkaidō, Tōhoku and Kyūsyū regions have not yet been completed.

(*c*) Akira Watanabe and others, *Nihon Timei Daiziten* (*Greater Japanese Geographical Gazetteer*), 1968.

(*d*) Akira Watanabe and others, *Sekai Timei Daiziten* (*Greater World Geographical Gazetteer*), 1973–1974.

(*e*) Sansei-dō, *Konsaisu Timei Daiziten* (*Concise Geographical Names Dictionary*) (volume for Japan), 1975.

Other gazetteers

The following ancient books on geographical names are still used:

(*a*) *Hudoki* (*A Topography*)

This book carries the results of a survey conducted in 713 on the origins of geographical names, local products, legends and the like. Those portions of the book that concern the east half of Simane Ken and parts of Ibaraki-Ken, Hyōgo-Ken and Oita-Ken are still preserved.

(*b*) Minamto-no Sitagō, *Wamyō Ruizyu-syō* (*Abridged Collection of Japanese Names*), 931–937.

Being an encyclopaedia, this book contains 128 categories of collection. Descriptions are given of how to read the names of about 4,000 *gō*, corresponding to the smallest administrative unit (50 households) in that period.

AUSTRIAN NATIONAL GAZETTEERS

Report presented by Austria*

The Gazetteer of Austria

In 1975 the Austrian Academy of Sciences published a *Gazetteer of Austria*, which follows to a large extent the recommendations given by the First and Second United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names on this subject:

(1) First United Nations Conference, Report, E/CONF.53/3, III, 4, Recommendation E, and III, 19, Recommendation B;

(2) Second United Nations Conference, Report E/CONF.61/4, III, 35.

This *Gazetteer* is selective in the sense of resolution 25 of the Second United Nations Conference on Geographical Names. It contains all categories of geographical names. Its title page, preface, table of contents, introduction and glossary of geographical appellatives all are in both German and English. The alphabetical part of

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.73

the *Gazetteer* is printed in German only, but its arrangement is such that the English-speaking reader is able to use it.

Annex I consists of copies of some pages of the *Gazetteer*, which will show its aims, composition and contents.

The *Ortsverzeichnis* 1971 (Gazetteer of Inhabited Places, 1971)

Whereas the *Gazetteer of Austria* comprises a selection of all categories of geographical names, the *Ortsverzeichnis 1971* contains the names of inhabited places only, but these to a very high degree of completeness (about 75,000 place names). It is the official publication of the Austrian Central Statistical Office. In 1974–1977 eight volumes were published, comprising a total of altogether 1,214 pages. Each volume covered one province, with the exception that Lower Austria and Vienna were comprised in one volume. A register volume, comprising the place names of the whole country in one alphabetical sequence, will be published later.

Annex II consists of copies of some pages showing the composition of the *Ortsverzeichnis 1971*.

Annex I

SAMPLE PAGES FROM THE *GAZETTEER OF AUSTRIA*

AUSTRIAN ACADEMY OF SCIENCES
PUBLICATIONS OF THE INSTITUTE OF CARTOGRAPHY

STUDIES IN THEORETICAL CARTOGRAPHY, VOLUME 3

GAZETTEER OF AUSTRIA

edited in accordance with the recommendations of the
UNITED NATIONS

by

JOSEF BREU

with the cooperation of the
Department of Cartographic Toponymy
of the Austrian Cartographic Commission
of the Austrian Geographical Society

VIENNA 1975

CONTENTS

PREFACE

When in 1967 the United Nations recommended to its members the compilation of standardized gazetteers and these recommendations were subsequently supported by the Austrian Academy of Sciences, the representatives of cartographic toponymy in Austria regarded it as their task and duty to prepare such a gazetteer.

Since the present study is fundamental to a systematic coverage of Austrian geographical names and since it is furthermore of general importance for cartographic toponymy owing to its theoretical foundation, it has been taken up into the series *Forschungen zur Theoretischen Kartographie* of the Austrian Academy of Sciences.

The work was carried out by individual and corporate members of the Department of Cartographic Toponymy of the Austrian Cartographic Commission of the Austrian Cartographic Society as follows:

1. At the *Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen, Gruppe Landesaufnahme*, Mr. ALOIS GRUBINGER of the *Abteilung Kartographie*, headed by Mr. KARL MÜLLER, drafted the card index for the gazetteer and incorporated any pertinent corrections.

2. The toponymic committees of the *Länder*, i.e., the *Burgenländische Nomenklaturkommission beim Amte der Burgenländischen Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. AUGUST ERNST, the *Steirische Ortsnamenkommission* under the chairmanship of Professor FRITZ POSCH, the *Tiroler Nomenklaturkommission beim Amt der Tiroler Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. EDUARD WIDMOSER and the *Nomenklaturkommission im Amte der Vorarlberger Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. RAIMUND MEYER, reviewed, annotated and supplemented the draft for their respective areas.

3. Dr. OTTO BACK was in charge of the phonetic notation and contributed the chapter on pronunciation in the introduction.

4. At the *Österreichisches Statistisches Zentralamt* Mr. KARL ISAMBERTH verified and brought up to date information on the administrative classification of parts of populated places, populated places and communes.

5. The chief editor had the task to elaborate a basic plan; to determine the stock of names to be included; to decide on the make-up of the gazetteer; to determine the general layout of the entries; to select the proper sources; to check the index cards of the manuscript both as regards the individual entry and the description of the feature concerned and to write the introduction with the exception of Chapter C II.

These operations were partly carried out under the auspices of the *Ortsnamenstelle* of the *Österreichisches Ost- und Südosteuropa-Institut*.

The Gazetteer of Austria is a dictionary of the names of the more important geographical features of the country. It covers rivers, lakes, glaciers, mountains, passes, mountain ranges, populated places, roads, railways, waterways, etc.; in short, all categories of named geographical features with the exception of the lowest stratum (fields, urban traffic areas, etc.).

The following data are given with each name: correct spelling, pronunciation, indication of the respective topographic category, location, geographical co-ordinates, elevation above sea level, name of the administrative unit in which the named feature is situated, variant forms, if any, and grammatical references. Data which would go beyond the individualization and location of a geographical feature such as information on the physical and human geography of a feature have not been taken up. Thus the book is a dictionary of geographical proper names and as such distinct from encyclopaedic gazetteers.

In accordance with the recommendations of the United Nations its main purpose is to provide national and international cartography with authoritative material permitting a correct lettering of maps; moreover, it will be a useful work of reference for a more general public.

Apart from the above-mentioned experts and agencies many other specialists and authorities have co-operated in the preparation of the gazetteer by furnishing valuable information. Thanks are due to them all. The editor's special gratitude must be expressed to Professor Erik Arnberger, head of the Institute of Cartography of the Austrian Academy of Sciences, who has made possible the publication of this work, and to the *Fonds zur Förderung der wissenschaftlichen Forschung* for its participation in the printing-expenses.

Vienna, October 1974 Josef Breu

Amtliche Bezeichnung Official designation	Deutsche Definition Definition in German	Englische Definition Definition in English
Markt*	Ortschaft mit Marktrecht	*Ortschaft* with market right
Marktgemeinde	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Marktgemeinde	commune with the title *Marktgemeinde*
Ortschaft	Gesamtheit von Häusern, die durch eine gemeinsame Konskriptionsnumerierung zusammengefaßt ist	total of houses (populated place) with common "conscription" numbering
Ortschaftsanteil	Ortschaftsanteile sind Teile von Ortschaften, die in verschiedenen Gemeinden (Ortsgemeinden) liegen	*Ortschaftsanteile* are parts of *Ortschaften* situated in different communes
Ortschaftsbestandteil	im Sinne der staatlichen Statistik ein Teil einer Ortschaft, der durch seine abgetrennte Lage und besondere lokale Bedeutung bemerkenswert ist	in terms of official statistics a part of an *Ortschaft* remarkable for its separate location and special local importance
Ortsgemeinde	→ Gemeinde	→ *Gemeinde*
Ortsverwaltungsteil	bei größeren burgenländischen Gemeinden vorkommende Unterteilung des Verwaltungssprengels des Gemeindegebietes zur Erleichterung der Verwaltung	subdivision of the administrative district of the commune for administrative purposes, in larger communes in Burgenland
Politischer Bezirk (Verwaltungsbezirk)	politische Verwaltungseinheit zwischen Land und Gemeinde	administrative unit between *Land* and commune (administrative district)
Rotte	2 und mehr Häuser in getrennter Lage	2 or more non-contiguous houses
Stadt*	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Stadt (nur in Vorarlberg)	commune with the title *Stadt* (town), only in Vorarlberg
Stadtgemeinde	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Stadtgemeinde	commune with the title *Stadtgemeinde* (urban commune)

* Im Namenbuch selbst sind die Bezeichnungen Markt und Stadt gemäß der Handhabung des Ortsverzeichnisses von Österreich vom Jahre 1965 und der Österreichischen Karte 1 : 50 000 zur Kennzeichnung jener Ortschaftsbestandteile verwendet worden, in welchen sich in der Regel der Sitz der entsprechenden Gemeindeverwaltung befindet.

Following the practice of the *Ortsverzeichnis von Österreich* of 1965 and the *Österreichische Karte 1 : 50 000* the designations *Markt* and *Stadt* are used in the gazetteer to indicate those *Ortschaftsbestandteile* in which the communal authorities have their seat.

Gattungswort Appellative	Deutsche Definition Definition in German	Englische Definition Definition in English
der Espan	Viehweide	livestock pasture
die Etz	Weidefläche	pasture land
das Feichtach, Feichta	Fichtenwald	spruce forest
der Ferner	Gletscher	glacier
der Filz	Moor, Sumpf	bog, swamp
der First	Berggrat	mountain crest
die Fluh	jäher Felsabhang	precipitous rocky slope
die Flur	Nutzland außer Wald; Dorfgemarkung	productive land excepting woodland; land and fields belonging to one village
das Forchach, Forchet	Föhrenwald	pine forest
der Fronwald	Wald im Besitz der ehemaligen Grundherrschaft	forest owned by former lord of the manor
die Gallo	Stelle, wo Grundwasser austritt	place where groundwater emerges
die Galtalm, Galtalpe	Alpenweide für das Galtvieh (keine Milch gebenden Rinder)	alpine pasture for non-dairy cattle
die Gando	Schuttfeld, Geröllhalde	talus, scree
der Gang	Flußlauf oder -arm, Wassergraben	river course or branch, gully
das Gebirge, Gebirg, Birg	durch Täler gegliederte Gesamtheit von Bergen und Hochflächen; Gruppe von Weinbergen	series of mountains and plateaux broken by valleys; group of vineyards
das Gehau	Waldabteilung der Forstwirtschaft	section of wood in forestry
der Gern, Geren	spitz zulaufende Feldstücke oder Geländeteile	tapered field or land plots
das Gestade	Ufer an größeren Gewässern	bank of a larger body of water
das Gewand, Gewann	Unterabteilung der Feldflur mit einem Streifen für jedes Gehöft	a division of the communal lands of a village with a strip of land for each farm
der Gießbach	rasch fließender Bach	fast-running brook
der Graben	enges Gebirgstal ohne Talsohle; reguliertor Bachlauf	narrow mountain valley without valley floor; bed of controlled brook

Leibnitzer Feld ['laɪbnɪtsər 'fɛlt]; *Ebene* am r. Murufer oberhalb der Sulmmündung; *Ld.* Stm.; φ 46°46′—51′, λ 15°30′—35′; *ÖK* 190

Leisach ['laɪzax]; *Df.* im Pustertal, sw. von Lienz; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leisach, *PB* Lienz, *Ld.* Tirol; φ 46°49′, λ 12°45′, *h* 710; *ÖK* 179

Leiser Berge ['laɪzər 'bɛrgə]; *Berggruppe* im mittleren Weinviertel, n. von Ernstbrunn; *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°32′—35′, λ 16°20′—30′, *h* 492; *ÖK* 24

Leising ['laɪzɪŋ]; *Df.* in der Obersteiermark, sw. von Kraubath an der Mur; *Ortsch.* Leising, *Gd.* Kraubath an der Mur, *PB* Leoben, *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°18′, λ 14°56′, *h* 605; *ÖK* 132

Leiten ['laɪtən]; *Ortsch.* im Gailtal, ö. des Kartitscher Sattels; *Gd.* Obertilliach, *PB* Lienz, *Ld.* Tirol; φ 46°43′, λ 12°34′, *h* 1427; *ÖK* 195

Leiterfall ['laɪtərfal]; *Wasserfall* des Leiterbaches [r. Zufluß der Möll], w. von Heiligenblut; *Ld.* Ktn.; φ 47°03′, λ 12°47′; *ÖK* 153

Leitha ['laɪta], *die*, r. *Nebenfluß* der Donau [Kleine Donau], *Quellflüsse* Schwarza u. Pitten, Austritt aus Österreich: ö. von Nickelsdorf, im Nordburgenland; *Staaten (Ld.)*: Österr. (NÖ, Bgl.), Ung.; *(Austritt aus Österr.:)* φ 47°57′, λ 17°06′, *h* 130; *ÖK* 59—61, 76, 77, 79, 80, 106

Leithaberg → Leithagebirge

Leithagebirge ['laɪtagəbɪrgə], *örtlich:* Leithaberg ['laɪtabɛrk]; *Mittelgebirge* zwischen der Leitha und dem Neusiedler See; *Ld.* Bgl., NÖ; φ 47°50′—48°00′, λ 16°27′—47′; *ÖK* 77, 78

Leithaprodersdorf [laɪta'proːdərsdorf]; *Df.* im Nordburgenland, an der Leitha sö. von Ebreichsdorf; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leithaprodersdorf, *PB* Eisenstadt-Umgebung, *Ld.* Bgl.; φ 47°56′, λ 16°29′, *h* 196; *ÖK* 77

Leithastraße ['laɪtaʃtraːsə]; *Bundesstraße* von Wiener Neustadt über Ebenfurth, Unterwaltersdorf, Riesenberg und Götzendorf an der Leitha nach Fischamend Markt; *Ld.* NÖ; φ 47°49′—48°07′, λ 16°15′—37′; *ÖK* 59, 60, 76, 77

Leitzersdorf ['laɪtsərsdorf]; *Df.* im s. Weinviertel, nö. von Stockerau; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leitzersdorf, *PB* Korneuburg, *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°25′, λ 16°15′, *h* 220; *ÖK* 40

Lembach im Mühlkreis ['lɛmbax ɪm 'myːlkraɪs]; *Markt* im w. Mühlviertel, w. von Neufelden; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Lembach im Mühlkreis [*KG* Lembach], *PB* Rohrbach, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 48°30′, λ 13°54′, *h* 554; *ÖK* 31

Lemsitzbach ['lɛmzɪtsbax]; l. *Zufluß* des Stainzbaches, mündet ö. von Stainz; *Ld.* Stm.; *(Mdg.:)* φ 46°54′, λ 15°16′, *h* 325; *ÖK* 189

Lend [lɛnt]; *Ortsch.* an der Salzach, am Ausgang des Gasteiner Tales; *Gd.* Lend, *PB* Zell am See, *Ld.* Sbg.; φ 47°18′, λ 13°03′, *h* 639; *ÖK* 124

Lend → Graz

Lendorf ['lɛndorf, 'leːndorf]; *Df.* nw. von Klagenfurt; *Ortsch.* Lendorf, *Statutarstadt* Klagenfurt, *Ld.* Ktn.; φ 46°40′, λ 14°17′, *h* 452; *ÖK* 202

Lengau ['lɛŋgau]; *Df.* im s. Innviertel, nw. von Straßwalchen; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Lengau, *PB* Braunau am Inn, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 48°00′, λ 13°13′, *h* 508; *ÖK* 46

Lengenfeld ['lɛŋənfɛlt]; *Hauptort* der gleichnamigen *Marktgd.*, im sö. Waldviertel, w. von Langenlois; *PB* Krems an der Donau, *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°28′, λ 15°36′, *h* 305; *ÖK* 38

Lenkstein ['lɛŋkʃtaɪn]; *Berg* in der nö. Riesserfernergruppe; *Staaten (Ld.)*: Österr. (Tirol), It. [Südtirol]; φ 46°56′, λ 12°10′, *h* 3236; *ÖK* 177

Lenzing ['lɛntsɪŋ]; *Gd.* an der Ager, sw. von Vöcklabruck; *PB* Vöcklabruck, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 47°58′, λ 13°37′, *h* 490; *ÖK* 66

Leoben [le'oːbən]; *Stadt* an der Mur, in der Obersteiermark; *Stadtgd.* u. *PB* Leoben, *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°23′, λ 15°06′, *h* 510; *ÖK* 133

Leobener Straße [le'oːbənər ˌʃtraːsə]; *Bundesstraße* von Sankt Marein im Mürztal über Kapfenberg und Bruck an der Mur nach Leoben [Göß]; *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°22′—28′, λ 15°06′—22′; *ÖK* 133, 134

Leobersdorf [le'oːbərsdorf]; *Hauptort* der gleichnamigen *Marktgd.*, an der Triesting, am N-Rand des Wiener Beckens, s. von

Annex II

SAMPLE PAGES FROM *ORTSVERZEICHNIS 1971*

ORTS-VERZEICHNIS 1971

Bearbeitet auf Grund der Ergebnisse der Volkszählung vom 12. Mai 1971

Herausgegeben vom
Österreichischen Statistischen Zentralamt
Wien 1974–1977

3 Kirchberg am Walde (0) 179/4—703
Abdecker H 1/0— 5
Froschau R 3/0— 12
Haspelhäuser R 4/0— 14
Kirchberg am Walde 575 m [48°43', 15°5'] [Schloß Kirchberg] 167/4—660
Tiergartenhäuser ZH 4/0— 12

4 Ullrichs (1) D 552 m 65/1—253

5 Weißenalbern (4) D 652 m 46/3—215

Zählsprengelübersicht:

—000 Kirchberg am Walde 179/4—703
—001 Ullrichs 65/1—253
—002 Fromberg 31/1—133
—003 Hollenstein 70/1—262
—004 Weißenalbern 46/3—215

22 Langegg ◊ 119/3—346
309 22

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 1.113,92 ha
Postleitzahl: 3872
Österr.Karte: 5
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Kiensass 633.94 ha. Langegg 479,98 ha

1 Kiensaß 23/1— 50
Kiensaß R 548 m 23/0— 50
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen:
Jh

2 Langegg 71/2—241
Langegg D 534 m [48°50', 15°2'] 68/2—234
Winkel R 3/0— 7

3 Neulangegg 25/0— 55
Mexiko R 4/0— 9
Neulangegg D (550 m) 21/0— 46

23 Langschwarza ◊ 108/0—486
309 23

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 939.81 ha
Postleitzahl: 3944
Österr.Karte: 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Kurzschwarza 335.52 ha. Langschwarza 604.29 ha

1 Kurzschwarza D (540 m) 31/0—161

2 Langschwarza 77/0—325
Langschwarza D 553 m [48°47', 15°7'] 73/0—305
Neuhöf W 4/0— 20

24 Lauterbach ◊ 54/1—191
309 24

Gerichtsbezirk: Weitra
Fläche: 823,49 ha
Postleitzahl: 3970
Österr.Karte: 17
Höhenklasse: VII
Katastralgemeinde:
Lauterbach 823.49 ha

1 Lauterbach 54/1—191
Holzmühle Gh 1/0— 7
Lauterbach D 703 m [48°42', 14°47'] 33/0—119
ZH 20/1— 65

25 Litschau St ◊ 741/22—2.449
309 25 (Z)

Gerichtsbezirk: Litschau
Fläche: 4 676,93 ha
Postleitzahl: 3874
Österr.Karten: 5, 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Gopprechts 519.68 ha. Litschau 1.630,27 ha. Loimanns 544.94 ha. Reichenbach 268.60 ha. Schönau 1.713.44 ha

1 Gopprechts (3) 79/ 2— 252
Gopprechts D (510 m) 69/ 1— 227
Gopprechtshäuser ZH 8/ 0— 21
Thaureshaus Hf 1/ 0— 3
Wielingshaus Hf 1/ 0— 1
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen:
(Jh) 1

2 Litschau-Seilerndorf (0) 45/ 1— 158
Langauhäuser Jh 2/ 0— 0
Litschau-Seilerndorf Stt (540 m) [Schloß Seilern] 41/ 0— 154
Sandgrubenhäuser R 2/ 0— 4
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen:
(Jh) 1

3 Litschau-Stadt (0) 109/ 4— 339
Litschau-Stadt Stt 531 m [48°57', 15°3'] 104/ 4— 328
ZH 5/ 0— 11

4 Litschau-Vorstadt (0) 356/ 9—1.191
Hudderin R 5/ 0— 16
Kainraths R 5/ 0— 20
Litschau-Vorstadt Stt (550 m) 333/ 9—1.114
Schandacherhäuser E 2/ 0— 8
Schlägerhäuser Hf 1/ 0— 5
ZH 10/ 0— 28

5 Loimanns (1) 70/ 2— 238
Kibitzhäuser R 11/ 0— 24
Loimanns D (590 m) 52/ 2— 197
ZH 7/ 0— 17

6 Reichenbach (2) D 17/ 1— 56

7 Schönau bei Litschau (4) 65/ 3— 215
Gallhof W 3/ 0— 3
Langau Jh 1/ 0— 0
Schönau bei Litschau D (520 m) 53/ 3— 198
Schönauhäuser R 5/ 0— 7
Windmannhäuser R 3/ 0— 7

Zählsprengelübersicht:

—000 Litschau 510/14—1.688
—001 Loimanns 70/ 2— 238
—002 Reichenbach 17/ 1— 56
—003 Gopprechts 79/ 2— 252
—004 Schönau bei Litschau 65/ 3— 215

26 Niederschrems M ◊ 348/6—1.361
309 26 (Z)

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 1.488,25 ha
Postleitzahl: 3943
Österr.Karten: 5, 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Ehrenhöbarten 172.27 ha. Kottinghörmanns 808.96 ha. Niederschrems 507.02 ha

1 Anderlfabrik (0) HGr 7/0— 46

2 Ehrenhöbarten (0) D (540 m) 24/0—104
(Brombühel)

3 Kleedorf (0) D (520 m) 70/0—225

4 Kottinghörmanns (1) 115/2—491
Bräuhäusl R 13/0— 52
Kottinghörmanns D 538 m 102/2—439

5 Neuniederschrems (0) D (520 m) 23/2— 73

6 Niederschrems (0) (520 m) [48°47', 15°3'] 109/2—422
(Hammer, Hammermühle, Heu-Mühle)

Zählsprengelübersicht:

—000 Niederschrems 233/4—870
—001 Kottinghörmanns 115/2—491

27 Pürbach ◊ 81/4—273
309 27

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 361.40 ha
Postleitzahl: 3944
Österr.Karten: 5, 6, 19
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinde:
Pürbach 361.40 ha

1 Pürbach 81/4—273
Pürbach D 532 m [48°46', 15°5'] 79/4—254
H 1/0— 14
Jh 1/0— 5

28 Reinberg—Litschau ◊ 70/3—237
309 28

Gerichtsbezirk: Litschau

S

ORONYMES ET HYDRONYMES

Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

Des efforts en vue de la normalisation des noms des éléments physico-géographiques du territoire de la Roumanie (montagnes, sommets, unités naturelles, rivières, lacs, forêts, etc.) ont commencé dès la fin du XIX^e siècle, après la création de la Société roumaine de géographie et à l'occasion de l'élaboration de dictionnaires géographiques des départements.

L'élaboration au cours des années 70–78 de l'*Atlas de la République socialiste de Roumanie* (76 planches avec environ 360 cartes, dont 41 planches ont déjà été publiées dans les premiers trois fascicules), par l'Institut de géographie de Bucarest, sous l'égide de l'Académie roumaine, a rendu nécessaire, dès la phase de préparation de l'ouvrage, la détermination de normes unitaires de rédaction de tous les noms géographiques (oronymes, hydronymes) aussi bien sur le territoire du pays qu'à l'extérieur. A cet effet a été créée, dès 1970, une Commission de nomenclature géographique faisant partie du Collège de rédaction de l'atlas, qui — après avoir consulté des spécialistes en géographie et cartographie, des linguistes, des historiens, des ethnologues — a élaboré en 1972 des *Normes pour la rédaction des noms géographiques*, normes qui ont été confirmées par la Commission de la langue roumaine de l'Académie roumaine et par les autorités cartographiques compétentes. Celles-ci sont devenues des normatifs utilisés dans les ouvrages cartographiques et d'usage scientifique. Toute la nomenclature géographique roumaine utilisée sur les cartes de l'*Atlas géographique national*, comprenant environ 7500 termes, est conforme aux principes établis par les *Normes*.

En application des résolutions des deux premières Conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, la Roumanie présente une nomenclature préliminaire d'oronymes et d'hydronymes normalisés inscrits sur la carte du pays aux échelles de 1:500 000 et 1:750 000, de 600 et 330 termes respectivement.

Afin de retenir les principes établis par la normalisation des dénominations géographiques roumaines, nous mentionnons ci-dessous les principales dispositions:

1. Les noms géographiques s'écrivent avec des majuscules à tous les mots qui les composent (sauf ceux qui servent de liaison), même en ce qui concerne les termes génériques (lac, golfe, promontoire, défilé, île, montagne, etc.) si ceux-ci font partie de la dénomination géographique. Exemples: Satu Mare, Baia de Aramă, Pasul Giuvala, Capul Midia, Lacul Snagov, Delta Dunării, Marea Neagră, Măgura Codlei, La Om, Muntele Mic, Táu fără Fund, Valea Albă, Rîu Mare, Județul Olt.

On recommande en général la renonciation aux abréviations en ce qui concerne l'indication des noms proprement dits, spécialement ceux des localités (Tg. Ocna, Tr. Măgurele). On peut utiliser des abréviations pour certains termes génériques (avec l'indication dans la légende) comme: L. (lac), P. (défilé, col), G. (golfe), I. (île), M. (montagne), Pod. (plateau).

On utilise le trait d'union seulement pour les noms géographiques composés comprenant des substantifs à la forme nominative, qui désignent une unité administrative assimilée à une unité physico-géographique marquée par ses limites. Exemples: Popesti-Leordeni, Caras-Severin, Bucegi-Leaota, Culoarul Bran-Rucăr, Culoarul Timiș-Cerns. Dans tous les autres cas on n'utilise pas de trait d'union.

2. Les toponymes seront indiqués sous leur forme authentique, sans y ajouter des génériques, qui n'appartiennent pas à la dénomination ou qui doublent un générique populaire inclus dans la dénomination, comme étang, marécage, bief, marais, tertre, mamelon, colline, entonnoir, îlot alluvial.

Font exception certaines toponymies dont le qualificatif fait partie de la dénomination. Exemples: Rîu Negru, Rîu Tîrgului, Pîrîu Norilor, Vîrfu lui Pătra, Orașu Nou.

3. Les noms géographiques du genre masculin neutre au singulier, simples et composés, qui s'expriment articulés, seront écrits avec l'article *u*, conformément à la pratique traditionnelle dans la prononciation et la rédaction des noms propres roumains. Exemples: Pietrosu, Omu, Moldoveanu, Godeanu, Sadu, Bragadiru, Prundu, Parîngu Mare, Crișu Repede, Rîu Doamnei, Someșu Mare, Turnu Măgurele, Tîrgu Jiu, Rîmnicu Vîlcea, Șimleu Silvaniei, Sînnicolau Mare.

4. Il a été convenu que, dans la rédaction des noms composés, certaines formes du génitif soient remplacées par le nominatif, si la manière de s'exprimer le permet et là où il existe une certaine accoutumance. Cette indication est générale et se réfère particulièrement aux groupes de montagnes, aux dépressions, aux plateaux, quand ces noms dérivent d'un sommet, d'une cime, d'une localité ou concernent seulement l'unité respective. Quand la dénomination provient d'un cours d'eau ou d'une province, on utilise, en général, le génitif. Exemples: Tibles, M. Harghita, M. Persani, M. Barsolt, Cincas, Bucegi, Cozia, M. Făgăraș, M. Retezat, M. Semenic, Dep. Brașov, Dep. Maramures, Pod. Cîndesti, Pod. Babadag; mais on écrira M. Bistriței, M. Vrancei, M. Cernei, Cîmpia Siretului, Pod. Dobrogei, Cîmpia Benatului, M. Lotrului.

5. Les noms simples de rivières du genre neutre au singulier seront écrits sans articulation, quand ils ont cette forme et quand ils connaissent donc l'opposition non articulé-articulé (par exemple: Arges, Olt, Mures, Siret, Timiș); ils seront écrits articulés (avec *u*) quand cette opposition n'existe pas (par exemple: Geoagiu, Sadu, Garu).

* Seule, l'introduction du rapport est reproduite dans la présente publication. Le texte original complet du document a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L 84 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction topographique militaire de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

Dans ce contexte, il faut remarquer que les normes établies pour la rédaction des noms géographiques ont été appliquées aux matériaux cartographiques ainsi qu'aux textes, dans les principaux ouvrages publiés dans notre pays au cours des dernières années, parmi lesquels *l'Atlas géographique national*, la *Géographie de la vallée du Danube roumain*, la collection *Județele Patriei* (les départements du pays) et la collection *Munții Noștri* (nos montagnes), et également dans des cours universitaires de spécialité, des travaux de doctorat, des études et des articles scientifiques, etc.

Les formes normalisées des dénominations géographiques pour le territoire de la Roumanie sont utilisées aussi bien dans les publications en langue roumaine que dans celles en langues de circulation internationale, destinées à l'étranger, y compris les volumes élaborés pour des congrès internationaux de géographie et pour d'autres réunions de spécialité ayant un caractère international.

DICTIONNAIRE SOMMAIRE DES APPELLATIFS UTILISÉS DANS LA TOPONYMIE ROUMAINE

Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

La toponymie roumaine, riche du point de vue de son contenu et variée du point de vue de sa forme, a représenté et continue de représenter une source inépuisable d'enrichissement du patrimoine de la langue roumaine.

L'emploi des mots roumains traditionnels dans les publications diverses constitue l'une des préoccupations de base de l'Académie de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

Les spécialistes en topographie et en géographie considèrent la toponymie comme un élément terminologique de base, destiné à compléter, avec les autres moyens d'expression d'un travail cartographique (signes conventionnels), l'image du domaine que ceux-ci représentent.

Tous les toponymes roumains, sans exception, ont ou ont eu autrefois des sens précis, bien définis. Ils reflètent la liaison directe entre l'homme et la nature, entre la société et le milieu de vie, ainsi que certaines valeurs morales, de conception populaire, de différents raisonnements, d'hypothèses, de comparaisons les plus suggestives, de faits ayant une résonance historique, d'anciens rapports sociaux, d'aspects ou de considérations économiques, de légendes et de croyances populaires qui reflètent la sagesse du peuple roumain, le caractère sincère et sensible de l'âme populaire.

On a pris comme point de départ pour l'élaboration du travail le recueil et la vérification des noms de lieux conformément à un questionnaire comprenant la dénomination en prononciation orthographique, la catégorie du détail (localités, constructions isolées, formes de terrain, cours d'eau, détails planimétriques, etc.), le sens et la signification de la dénomination, le nom et l'adresse de la personne questionnée, la forme finale de la dénomination et diverses autres observations.

Le travail offre au lecteur, dans plus de 700 articles comprenant environ 1700 exemples, un microrecueil de toponymie du territoire de la Roumanie, et constitue une expérience préliminaire en vue de la rédaction d'un dictionnaire toponymique complet de notre pays.

* Seule, l'introduction du rapport est reproduite dans la présente publication. Le texte original complet du document a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L 85 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction topographique militaire de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

UNIFIED REFERENCE BOOK OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FROM THE VALLEY OF THE DANUBE RIVER

Report presented by Bulgaria*

The question of a Unified Reference Book of Geographical Names from the Valley of the Danube River has been discussed for several years. The motion for its compilation was made by the representatives of the People's Republic of Bulgaria at the International Conference of Representatives of the Sixth and Seventh Regional Groups for the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in Prague, Czechoslovakia, in 1971. This motion was in the spirit of resolution 8 entitled "Treatment of names of features beyond a single sovereignty"[1] of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Geneva in 1967, and expresses the incessant endeavour of our country for international co-operation in this sphere.

The discussions and the exchange of opinions between the Danubian countries that took part in the Sixth and Seventh Regional Group Conference show that the idea of compiling the Unified Reference Book was accepted. Our country has carried out investigations embracing both the technical and language problems in connexion with its compilation.

The report on this project at the present Conference is intended mainly to accomplish two things:

First, to demonstrate a model project for the compilation of a reference book of geographical names connected with a navigable river, the course of which passes through the territory of several countries. This experience could also be used in other similar cases;

* The original text of this paper, prepared by B. Cohen, Senior Research Associate Engineer, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 97.

[1] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, Vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E 68.I 9), chap. III.

Second, to reach an agreement for the implementation of this project on the basis of international co-operation among the Danubian States.

We think that both aims coincide with the spirit and the tasks of the present Conference.

We shall report on a highly specified draft of the proposed Reference Book, as well as on three basic problems in connexion with its compilation: the purpose of the book; its contents; and the method to be used in organizing the work of its compilation.

Purposes of the Unified Reference Book

The Unified Reference Book is intended to reflect and unify the geographical names in a limited strip of the valley of the Danube River. The book will thus be suitable for use as a primary source material and as a basis for unifying the geographical names and for ensuring their correct representation in making different types of maps for the region of the Danube River (e.g. maps for pilots or tourists, general geographical maps and so on).

We must point out that in the last 25 to 30 years a number of changes have taken place in the river zone. New settlements have made their appearance, as have engineering projects and many other industrial plants. The greater number of these have individual names. There are also a great many inhabited places, localities, tributaries and so on that have been renamed. In many cases these developments have not been reflected in the navigation and other maps.

We all know that the Danube River is a lively waterway, with whose help, through the ages, the peoples of Eastern and Central Europe have established economic and cultural contacts. The names of the inhabited places on the Danube River banks have always been more popular among the peoples inhabiting the Danubian countries than in those lying farther away. Nevertheless, there are many defects in the rendering of the geographical names from the valley of the Danube. Suffice it to mention the great number of toponymic synonyms.

The stepped-up relations among the peoples of the Danubian countries call for a more exact rendering of the geographical names in this region. The proposed Reference Book will be able to fulfil this task.

The Unified Reference Book could be used to answer a whole series of characteristic toponymic questions; these include not only linguistic and usage problems but also problems connected with the history of cultural relations between the Danubian countries.

Contents

We suggest that the Unified Reference Book should include the geographical names in the valley of the Danube River and, more particularly, those within two strips situated on each side of the fairway. The first strip extends on both sides of the fairway to a distance of 10 kilometres; the second includes the area situated between the tenth and fifteenth kilometre on both sides of the fairway. In this way, the total area to be included will come up to approximately 85,000 square kilometres.

We call the area within the first strips (i.e. within 10 km of the fairway on either bank) the "first zone"; the area in the second, more distant and narrower strips the "second zone". These two zones, combined with a transverse division along the fairway of the river, beginning from its estuary, will serve for designating the location of the toponyms contained in the Unified Reference Book.

It is desirable that all toponyms be included that are usually included in topographical maps of a scale of 1:25,000.

The structure of the Unified Reference Book, as projected, will be as follows:

(1) Title page, in the languages of the participating countries;

(2) Explanatory text describing the institutes, institutions and persons participating in the work of compiling the reference book;

(3) A preface, giving instructions for the use of the Unified Reference Book, in all languages of the participating countries (German, Hungarian, Slovakian, Serbo-Croatian, Bulgarian, Romanian and Russian);

(4) An alphabetical index of the geographical names in the Latin alphabet;

(5) An alphabetical index of the geographical names in the different languages;

(6) An alphabetical list of toponymic synonyms;

(7) A list of the geographical names organized according to the character of each feature named; and

(8) A location map for the location of the compilation strips and sectors.

The alphabetical index (section 4), which constitutes the main body of the Unified Reference Book, will contain the geographical names in their original form for the languages using the Latin alphabet. As to the names from the territory of Yugoslavia, Bulgaria and the Soviet Union, in which the Cyrillic alphabet is in use, the names will be given in the Latin alphabet, according to the official system for rendering the names in Latin characters, adopted by the respective countries.

Besides the names written in Latin characters, section 4 will also include the following information about each name: indication of the sector and zone; the State in which the toponym is situated (indicating the State in abbreviated form); an indication of the character of the feature named objective; the serial number of the toponym, which will be necessary for finding the corresponding entry in other languages in the alphabetical index by national languages in section 5).

The character of each feature named will be indicated by an appropriate abbreviation, expressing the most typical object to be encountered in the Danube Valley (e.g. towns, villages, ports, islands, rivers, river mouths, forests, localities, ponds, lakes, peaks, elevations, fortresses, monasteries, technical equipment etc.). The exact indication of the character of the objectives is to be the subject of a special Instruction for compiling the Unified Reference Book.

The alphabetical index in each national language will contain the names from the territory where the language is used, given in their national form and transcribed in the respective language. The arrangement of names in the national alphabetical order will be effected in the alphabetical order adopted in the respective language, with indication of the numbers of the toponyms in the basic list.

Section 6, the list of toponymic synonyms (traditional names), should be made up on the basis of generally accepted rules by the participating countries. The main tendency should be towards a gradual curtailing of these names and the adoption of the phonetically transcribed official names in the respective territories.

The lists of names made out according to the character of the features (section 7) will have the names arranged in alphabetical order and differentiated into groups according to the character of the objectives (inhabited places, rivers, islands etc.).

The location map (section 8) for the location of the basic sectors and strips (from which all names in the book will be taken) will be drawn up at a suitable scale and will contain the zones in which the toponyms are situated.

Preliminary calculations have shown that the Unified Reference Book will contain between 20,000 and 30,000 names, duly elaborated according to the above-indicated scheme. It is intended to publish the Unified Reference Book in one volume, containing 250–300 pages, format H-4.

Method of organizing the work

Work on the compilation of the Unified Reference Book can be started at the beginning of 1978 and be finished during the second half of 1979 or the first half of 1980.

The work on the compilation of the Unified Reference Book must be effected with the participation of the national bodies for the standardization of geographical names of the Federal Republic of Germany, the Republic of Austria, the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic, the Hungarian People's Republic, the Socialist Federative Republic of Yugoslavia, the Socialist Republic of Romania, the People's Republic of Bulgaria and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.

The fundamental questions affecting the principles of the compilation and publishing of the Unified Reference Book—its printing, legal rights etc.—are to be settled at work conferences of the representatives of the participating countries. The basic co-ordinating work, the organization of the compilation and the publication of the Unified Reference Book is to be assumed by the country co-ordinator which we suggest should be the People's Republic of Bulgaria.

It will be necessary to work out a special Instruction in connexion with the reference book. We think that the Instruction should spell out the following:

(*a*) Goals and contents of the Unified Reference Book;
(*b*) Initial materials;
(*c*) Linguistic approach to the establishment of the names;
(*d*) Method of discussing and adopting the names;
(*e*) Technical instructions for filling in the perfo-cards; and
(*f*) Methods and time limits for exchanging the materials with the co-ordinating country.

Let us give some very brief explanations of some of the sections of the Instruction proposed by us.

Section (*a*) should develop in detail the principles embodied in the present paper and explore the possibilities for the widest possible utilization of the Unified Reference Book for practical purposes. In this connexion, we hope that additional studies will lead to the further specification and enrichment of the contents originally mapped out.

Section (*b*), on initial materials, should give concrete recommendations for the finding, evaluation and utilization of the basic source materials (topographical maps, toponymic investigations etc.).

Section (*c*), on the linguistic approach to the establishment of names, is fundamental. This section should resolve, scientifically, the main problems of spelling the names and of their orthography.

Section (*d*) will determine the most suitable forms and the method of work of the International Commission on the publishing of the Unified Reference Book.

It is suggested that the preparatory work on the elaboration of fundamental information and the publishing of the Unified Reference Book should be carried out with the help of perfo-cards with a broader perforation, of size K-5 (207 × 147 mm). The co-ordinating country will make a model of the perfo-cards, diapositives of which will be sent to all participating countries. These diapositives should enable each participating country to print the necessary quantity of perfo-cards. The perfo-cards filled in by every country will be sent to the co-ordinating country for elaboration and preparation of the material for discussion and adoption. The further use of the material (systematized in the perfo-cards) will be in the hands of the co-ordinating country according to the technology that has been adopted.

The present paper has deliberately omitted discussion of a number of details that are contained in the Instruction and that have been discussed at work conferences of the Commission on the Preparation and Publishing of the Reference Book.

In pointing out in brief the main lines of the work on the proposed project, we are profoundly convinced that the practical work along this line will become one more model of fruitful international co-operation, to which our country has always been one of the warmest adherents.

AN INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF EXPRESSIONS USED ON STANDARD GEOGRAPHICAL MAPS

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Résumé

L'idée d'élaborer un Dictionnaire international des termes géographiques figurant sur des cartes géographiques chorographiques (à caractère commun) est née du besoin de satisfaire l'importance sociale toujours croissante du mode de représentation cartographique dont la cartographie interprète des conditions naturelles et sociales de vie sous forme d'une représentation cartographique relativement complète, au moyen des cartes chorographiques et du souhait de normaliser les moyens d'expression de cette représentation.

La deuxième Conférence des Etats socialistes des septième et huitième groupes linguistico-géographiques régionaux de l'ONU, tenue à Budapest en janvier 1975, a recommandé que le dictionnaire se limite aux termes utilisés sur des cartes géographiques chorographiques et que la matière soit répartie selon les groupes d'éléments contenus dans les cartes.

La proposition a été modifiée en tenant compte des points de vue suivants:

a) La gamme des possibilités d'utilisation, dans le contenu nouvellement conçu, de la carte géographique chorographique;

b) L'utilisation, lors de la normalisation, de notes explicatives ajoutées aux cartes géographiques chorographiques à petite échelle et de légendes des symboles sur les cartes aux échelles moyennes et grandes.

Les articles définis de façon univoque permettront de mettre au point de nouvelles légendes pour les cartes géographiques chorographiques ainsi que pour les cartes aux échelles différentes (plus petites); pour cette raison, le dictionnaire sera complété par une liste des abréviations.

L'ensemble de la matière contenue dans les huit parties thématiques du dictionnaire est conçu de façon à répondre *grosso modo* à la conception nouvelle de la carte chorographique à l'échelle de 1:10 000.

Le nombre des articles s'élève à environ 900. La liste annexée au mémoire permet de se faire une idée sur la conception et la façon dont les articles du dictionnaire sont organisés. Le dictionnaire paraîtra en 1979 en versions tchèque, slovaque, anglaise et russe. L'élaboration des versions française, espagnole et allemande est envisagée pour la prochaine édition.

Resumen

La idea de redactar un diccionario internacional de términos geográficos que aparecen en los mapas geográficos generales surgió a causa de la necesidad de poner en relieve el creciente significado social de la forma cartográfica de la interpretación de condiciones naturales y sociales de la vida, por medio de una imagen relativamente completa, a través de mapas de dicho tipo, así como a causa de la necesidad de normalizar sus medios expresivos.

La Segunda Conferencia de los Países Socialistas de los Séptimo y Octavo Grupos Regionales Lingüístico-Geográficos de las Naciones Unidas, que tuvo lugar en Budapest en enero de 1975, recomendó, en el punto 5, que el contenido del diccionario se limitase a abarcar términos que aparecen en mapas geográficos generales y que su contenido se dividiera conforme a grupos de elementos utilizados en los mapas. La propuesta ha sido revalorizada desde los puntos de vista siguientes:

a) Volumen de la posible utilización en los marcos de un contenido del mapa geográfico general, concebido a base de nuevos criterios;

b) Aprovechamiento para la normalización de notas explicativas en mapas geográficos generales en escalas menores y de claves de símbolos en mapas de escalas medias y grandes.

Voces definidas unívocamente harán posible que se establezcan nuevas claves de símbolos para mapas geográficos generales, así como para los de otras (menores) escalas; es por ello que el diccionario está complementado con una lista (registro) de abreviaturas.

El contenido total de ocho partes temáticas del diccionario queda concebido aproximadamente dentro de los marcos de un mapa geográfico general, según la nueva concepción, en escala 1:10 000.

El número de voces ha sufrido cambios representando casi 900 unidades. Del espécimen que va adjunto es posible hacerse una idea de la concepción y la manera de la elaboración de las voces del diccionario. Este se publicará en 1979 en checo, eslovaco, inglés y ruso. Para una edición posterior se supone que será complementado con textos en francés, español y alemán.

*

* *

The increasing social importance of the cartographic interpretation of natural and social conditions of life has brought about interest in the idea of compiling an international dictionary of geographical expressions occurring on standard geographical maps. This increasing social importance has brought about the need for a comprehensive map image of reality, executed as a series of standard geographical maps with standardized expressions.

This question was dealt with at the First Conference of the countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Regional Linguistic and Geographical Groups on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which took place at Prague in September 1971. In item 6 of the resolution the participants in the Conference adopted a recommendation supporting the idea of compiling such a

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.104.

dictionary and asking that the completed project and compiled list of expressions be sent to them for review. This has been done. Further, the Conference asked the Czechoslovak delegation to inform the participants of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in May 1972, about the projected Dictionary.

The Project of the international dictionary of geographical terms used on general geographical maps[1] was submitted to the Second Conference for discussion within the framework of agenda item 10, devoted to the question of compiling multilingual dictionaries of generic names and general names. The Conference adopted the appropriate recommendation in resolution 16,[2] basically summed up in the request that each dictionary of this kind should contain:

(*a*) A complete alphabetical list of the generic names used, with a concise definition of each;

(*b*) A complete alphabetical list of the generic names with their regional distributions, cross-referenced to the general names to which they are related;

(*c*) A complete list of abbreviations of general names and symbols used in designating them;

(*d*) A complete list of the abbreviations used in the maps on which the list was based.

In addition, the Second Conference of Socialist Countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Linguistic and Geographical Groups, which took place at Budapest in January 1975, recommended under item 5 that the contents of the Dictionary be limited only to expressions occurring in standard geographical maps. It also recommended the division of the contents of the Dictionary according to groups of elements occurring in the maps.

The draft was modified with respect to:

(*a*) The range of its possible use within the newly outlined contents of the standard geographical map;

(*b*) Its use in the standardization of explanatory notes in small-scale standard geographical maps and in symbol keys to medium- and large-scale maps.

Further stimuli emerged in relation to the Dictionary from the conclusions of the Third Conference of the Socialist Countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Regional Groups on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Budapest in June 1977.

In order to realize such an exacting task it was necessary to clarify the definition of the standard geographical map. Having examined the problem from various points of view, the Terminology Commission of the Czech Office of Geodesy and Cartography reached the conclusion that a standard geographical map is "a map containing all the important elements of the depicted reality to approximately the same degree of detailedness". This definition deals with the subject of the map and cannot be further modified by such other criteria as scale; it follows from this, in accordance with the concepts of the Russian geographer/cartographers Salishcheff and Garayevskaya, that medium-scale and large-scale maps are also standard geographical maps.

The basic material for the alphabetical lists was collected from the conventional signs of the 1:10,000-scale maps of several countries.

While the individual entries were being worked out, it became evident that

(*a*) The concepts and content embodied in standard geographical maps published to date are based upon social reality—and upon a state of science, technology and economy—that date roughly from the first three decades of the twentieth century;

(*b*) The roots of this concept of cartography reach back to the level of knowledge and role of the map at the end of the nineteenth century; and

(*c*) Maps generally tend to reflect specialized needs as to their subject matter.

In the socialist countries, a number of factors—including changes in the social system, the development of science (including geography) and the resultant development of the economy, social and cultural progress and a considerable increase in the standard of living have given rise to a number of new geographical phenomena, which are not reflected in the standard geographical maps published to date. The importance of these new phenomena has resulted in a substantial decline in the need to depict other phenomena, the occurrence of which on standard geographical maps was expedient under the economic technological and cultural conditions of the past (as remains the case to the present day in the capitalist countries).

These changes have caused the compilers of the proposed contents of the individual thematic sections in the Dictionary to consider which new elements, corresponding to the contemporary conditions, should be included in the standard geographical map. Similarly, the editing had to be all the more exacting under such circumstances, since it was essential to attain "approximately the same degree of detailedness" required by the definition of the standard geographical map, which was adopted as the starting point.

Unambiguously defined entries will make it possible to compile new keys to symbols on standard geographical maps at other (smaller) scales as well; the Dictionary will therefore have appended a list of abbreviations.

The section of the Dictionary devoted to relief is based upon the advanced state of the individual geographical sciences. It also includes the social and scientific explanation as to why a dictionary of the given range is needed. The section on hydrography includes both geographical aspects and those of water preservation, defined in accordance with accepted standards in this field.

The section on biogeography is considerably enlarged in view of the current campaign for the preservation of the environment, on the one hand, and the acceleration of building construction for new factories and residential

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 113.

[2] *Ibid.*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference*, chap. III.

areas, on the other, which have caused areas under vegetation, characteristic of the importance and value of soil for the life of man, to become more conspicuous.

The section on borders and enclosures has remained practically unchanged, having been only partially modified from the traditional concept.

The section on transport will, like all the other sections, be structured hierarchically as long as necessary, so that class names, which can occur on maps only rarely, are also listed.

The concept of the section on inhabited areas corresponds to contemporary social circumstances in the socialist countries.

The sections of the Dictionary on agriculture and industry, including the mining of natural resources, document two phenomena: the gradual overcoming of differences between town and village, especially in the socialist countries (in the section on agriculture); and the impact on the development of the society of who owns the means of production.

The above-mentioned hierarchical arrangement of entries in the individual sections, made complete by class names (the use of which in maps is practically out of the question) makes it possible in cartographical practice to compile the contents of smaller-scale standard geographical maps (or even thematic maps, as the need arises) and to standardize their keys.

The over-all content of the eight sections of the Dictionary is planned approximately to correspond to the 1:10,000 standard geographical map of the new concept.

The entries in the individual sections are complemented by a complete alphabetical index of the whole Dictionary, facilitating the search for the standardized name of any geographical entity or phenomenon, the definition pertaining to which will be found in thematically divided, alphabetically arranged groups.

The number of entries was brought up to around 900. The enclosed extract from the Dictionary (annex) gives an idea of the concept and manner of processing the entries in the Dictionary. The Dictionary will be published in 1979 in Czech, Slovak, English and Russian. In the next edition it is expected that French, Spanish and German versions will be published.

Annex

AN EXAMPLE OF THE PROCESSING OF ENTRIES IN THE INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES AS USED IN STANDARD GEOGRAPHICAL MAPS

atoll	A coral island made up of a circular coral barrier of cliff limestone, rising several metres above the sea level and enclosing an inner lagoon
canyon	A deep river valley with very steep slopes and a relatively narrow bottom, usually completely filled with a river bed
drained land	A piece of land with artificial drainage of underground water with the help of pipes, channels etc.
lake	A natural indentation in the earth's surface filled with water, which is not directly connected with an ocean. We distinguish impermanent lakes, salt lakes, evaporating lakes
nuclear power plant	Solid fuel fired power plant, using energy for the production of electricity obtained by fission of appropriate radioactive elements
permanent snow	Constant snow cover of the earth's surface above the snow line
tunnel	A man-made construction to facilitate the transfer of communications, under the ground, for example through a mountain range, under a river, under sea straits. According to the means of the transferred communication we distinguish road tunnel (surface communication) rail tunnel (rail communication) etc.

GAZETTEERS AND GLOSSARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES PUBLISHED BY MEMBER COUNTRIES OF THE UNITED NATIONS AND BY AGENCIES IN RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNITED NATIONS: BIBLIOGRAPHY, 1946–1976

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

The bibliography "Gazetteers and Glossaries of Geographical Names" comprises the gazetteers published after the Second World War, i.e. since 1945.

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has defined the term "gazetteer" as

> "a list of toponyms which presents relatively brief information regarding the items listed, and which serves as a guide to the source from which it has been compiled".[1]

For more complete information the present bibliography goes beyond this definition. It includes not only the gazetteers covered by the above definition, but also some place-name lists containing encyclopaedic data, and indexes of atlases and indexes of maps as well. Census publications have been added because census bureaus, as State agencies, are requested to use the official local names. Finally, gazetteers or lists of place names for special purposes (e.g. for mailing, in the computer and banking field and as guides to pronunciation) have also been added in some cases.

The bibliography distinguishes between official national gazetteers and publications issued by individuals and/or non-official publishers, and further distinguishes between gazetteers of the national agency of the country and those of governmental agencies of countries other

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Emil Meynen, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 124.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II. *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E 74 I 4), p. 50.

than the one concerned. Except for the classifications given below, the order in which a gazetteer or index appears in the listing does not imply any priority.

For quick reference, six sections have been marked by Roman ciphers as follows:

I Official publications of the country concerned;
II Publications issued by individuals and/or non-official publishers of the country concerned;
III Publications by international organizations and by governmental agencies of countries other than the one concerned;
IV Publications by individuals and non-official publishers of countries other than the one concerned;
V Indexes of atlases and maps of the country concerned;
VI Indexes of atlases and maps published by agencies of countries other than the one concerned.

An appendix contains a list of glossaries of generic terms given in the listed gazetteers and indexes.

Finally, there is an addition of various lists of designations of oceanographic terms and of undersea features that were issued in the course of recent discussions.

The material of the bibliography has been collected over the years 1969 to 1974. The author has attempted to make the bibliography as complete as possible. The author used the gazetteer collection of the Ständiger Ausschuß für geographische Namen (StAgN) of the Federal Republic of Germany, Frankfurt a. M. He also visited the Dag Hammarskjöld Library and Map Collection at United Nations Headquarters and the main libraries and official agencies at London, Moscow, New York, Paris and Washington, D. C. and the Library of the Statistisches Bundesamt, Wiesbaden. Gazetteers and glossaries published after 1974 are included only in so far as they have been sent to the author as chairman of StAgN or as a member of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Completeness is attempted, but, the work having been carried out by a single person, and embracing such widely dispersed materials, it will be appreciated that total completeness has not been possible.

The author wishes to thank all who have sent him their publications. Messrs. N. O. Abelson, New York, P. G. M. Geelan, London, A. M. Komkov, Moscow, H. A. G. Lewis OBE, London, R. R. Randall, Washington, D.C., and Miss Helen Wallis, London should be mentioned for their support to the author in his research.

The author dedicates the bibliography to the members of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names and especially to the participants in the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Athens, August–September 1977.

GEONOMENCLATURE, 1976–1977
Report presented by the Statistical Office of the European Communities*

Résumé

La nomenclature des pays pour les statistiques du commerce extérieur de la Communauté économique européenne (CEE) et du commerce entre ses Etats membres fait l'objet de dispositions particulières dans le règlement (CEE) n° 1736/75 du Conseil du 24 juin 1975 (*Journal officiel* n° L 183 du 14 juillet 1975), à savoir dans ses articles 6, 35, 36, 41 et 47. La version de cette nomenclature, valable à partir du 1er janvier 1977, a été publiée en annexe au règlement (CEE) n° 3163/76 de la Commission du 22 décembre 1976 (*Journal officiel* n° L 356 du 28 décembre 1976). Sous la dénomination nouvelle de *Géonomenclature*, GEONOM en abrégé, la présente édition d'usage reproduit cette version et l'accompagne d'un certain nombre d'instruments de travail destinés à faciliter le maniement de la nomenclature même ainsi que l'utilisation des statistiques du commerce extérieur.

Comme dans la nomenclature commune des pays, appliquée avant la publication du règlement précité du Conseil, le classement est organisé par continents et grandes régions et, à l'intérieur de chaque région selon la position géographique de chaque pays ou territoire, la progression se faisant, en principe, de l'ouest vers l'est le long des parallèles successifs depuis le nord vers le sud.

Les rubriques qui constituent la *Géonomenclature*, ni davantage les précisions et commentaires qui les délimitent, n'impliquent pas de prise de position quant au statut politique des pays ou territoires concernés.

Il est de règle que les nomenclatures des marchandises et des pays qui structurent les statistiques du commerce extérieur de la Communauté et de ses Etats membres ne subissent pas de changements en cours d'année. La *Géonomenclature, 1977*, s'appliquera donc telle quelle jusqu'au 31 décembre 1977. Elle ne peut d'ailleurs être modifiée par la Commission que sur l'avis favorable du Comité de la statistique du commerce extérieur, qui est consulté au cours du mois de septembre. Tous souhaits ou observations relatifs à la *Géonomenclature* ou à sa présentation dans cette brochure peuvent être portés par ses utilisateurs, publics ou privés, à la connaissance du Président du Comité de la statistique du commerce extérieur, à l'adresse de l'Office statistique des Communautés européennes, Boîte postale 1907, Luxembourg.

La *Géonomenclature* n'ayant pas été publiée en 1976 — hormis sa version officielle annexée au règlement (CEE) n° 54/76 de la Commission du 14 janvier 1976 (*Journal officiel* n° L 8 du 15 janvier 1976) —, les différences entre 1977 et l'année précédente sont signalées dans la présente

* The original full text of this paper, which appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.98, is available on request from the Statistical Office of the European Communities, whose address is given in the text.

édition, chaque fois qu'il a paru utile de les mettre en évidence en vue de l'interprétation correcte des statistiques du commerce extérieur.

Resumen

La nomenclatura de los países para las estadísticas del comercio exterior de la Comunidad Económica Europea (CEE) y del comercio entre sus Estados miembros es objeto de disposiciones particulares en el reglamento (CEE) No. 1736/75 del Consejo, de 24 de junio de 1975 (*Journal officiel* No. L.183, de 14 de julio de 1975), en sus artículos 6, 35, 36, 41 y 47. La versión de dicha nomenclatura, que está en vigor a partir del 1° de enero de 1977, fue publicada en un anexo de la ordenanza (CEE) No. 3163/76 de la Comisión, de fecha 22 de diciembre de 1976 (*Journal officiel* No. L.356, de 28 de diciembre de 1976). Bajo la nueva denominación de *Geonomenclator*, con la abreviatura GEONOM, la presente edición de uso corriente reproduce esa versión acompañada de cierto número de instrumentos de trabajo destinados a facilitar el manejo de la propia nomenclatura, así como la utilización de las estadísticas del comercio exterior.

Como en la nomenclatura común de los países, aplicada antes de la publicación del citado reglamento del Consejo, la clasificación está organizada por continentes y grandes regiones y, dentro de cada región, según la posición geográfica de cada país o territorio, progresando, en principio, de oeste a este a lo largo de paralelos sucesivos del norte al sur.

Ni los títulos que figuran en la *Geonomenclatura* ni las precisiones u observaciones que los delimitan entrañan la adopción de una posición respecto del estatuto político de los países o territorios de que se trate.

Por lo general, las nomenclaturas de mercaderías y de los países que estructuran sus estadísticas de comercio exterior de la Comunidad y de sus Estados miembros no sufren cambios durante el año. Por lo tanto, la *Geonomenclator, 1977*, se aplicará tal como existe hasta el 31 de diciembre de 1977. Por otra parte, la Comisión no la puede modificar sino con el parecer favorable del Comité de Estadística del Comercio Exterior, al cual se consulta durante el mes de septiembre. Los organismos públicos o privados usuarios de la *Geonomenclatura* podrán poner en conocimiento del Presidente del Comité de Estadística del Comercio Exterior, en la Oficina de Estadística de las Comunidades Europeas, apartado postal 1.907, Luxemburgo, todos sus deseos u observaciones relativos a la *Geonomenclatura* o a su presentación en este folleto.

Como *Geonomenclatura* no se publicó en 1976 —excepto su versión oficial anexa a la ordenanza (CEE) No. 54/76 de la Comisión, del 14 de enero de 1976 (*Journal officiel* No. L.8, de 15 de enero de 1976)—, las diferencias entre 1977 y el año anterior se señalan en la presente edición, cada vez que parezca útil destacarlas con miras a la interpretación correcta de las estadísticas de comercio exterior.

*

* *

The country nomenclature for the external trade statistics of the European Economic Community (EEC) and for statistics of trade between member States is subject to the special provisions laid down in Council Regulation (EEC) No. 1736/75 of 24 June 1975 (*Official Journal* L.183 of 14 July 1975), namely those in articles 6, 35, 36, 41 and 47. The version of this nomenclature that is valid as from 1 January 1977 has been published as an annex to Commission Regulation (EEC) No. 3163/76 of 22 December 1976 (*Official Journal* L.356 of 28 December). This current edition, published under the new name *Geonomenclature* (abbreviated to *GEONOM*) reproduces this version. Included in it are various documentary aids to assist in the use of the nomenclature itself and in the interpretation of the external trade statistics.

As was the case with the common country nomenclature that was in use before the above Council regulation was published, classification is by continents and major geographical regions and, within each region, by the geographical position of each country or territory, progressing as far as possible west to east along lines of latitude, starting in the north and working south.

Neither the headings that make up this geonomenclature nor the details and observations used with them are to be taken as any expression of opinion on the political status of the countries or territories concerned.

It is EEC practice that the product nomenclature and country nomenclature on which the external trade statistics of the Community and of the Member States are based are not altered during the course of the year. The 1977 geonomenclature will therefore apply in its present form until 31 December 1977. Moreover, it may only be amended by the Commission after the Committee on External Trade Statistics, which is consulted in September each year, has expressed an opinion in favour of the amendments. Any requests or remarks in connexion with *GEONOM* or with the manner of its presentation may be addressed to the chairman of the Committee on External Trade Statistics by any public bodies or private persons who use the nomenclature. The address is:

Statistical Office of the European Communities
PO Box 1907
Luxembourg

OBSERVATIONS ON THE 1977 EDITION

Apart from the official version published as an annex to Commission Regulation (EEC) No 54/76 of 14 January 1976 (*Official Journal* L.8 of 15 January 1976) no edition of *Geonomenclature* was produced in 1976. The differences between the 1977 edition and the version of the previous year are pin-pointed in the current edition whenever it appears that it is useful to do so in the interest of a correct interpretation of external trade statistics.

AGENDA ITEM 11 — POINT 11 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR — TEMA 11 DEL PROGRAMA

THE COMPUTERIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES: THE QUEBEC EXPERIMENT

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

En 1971, la Commission géographique du Québec a demandé à l'Université Laval d'entreprendre une étude sur ordinateur des noms géographiques de la province en vue de fournir un accès immédiat à l'information et de créer une banque de données toponymiques permanente. Une fois cette banque établie en 1973, il a été possible d'examiner les corrélations qui existent entre différents paramètres relatifs aux termes génériques, de déterminer les types de noms selon les régions et de résoudre d'autres problèmes. Le fichier contient actuellement 75 000 noms, qui seront publiés en 1978 dans la deuxième édition du *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. La banque sera continuellement mise à jour et de nouvelles données seront incorporées quand il y a lieu.

Resumen

En 1971 la Comisión Geográfica de Quebec (Quebec Geographical Commission) pidió a la Universidad Laval que realizara un estudio sobre la computadorización de los nombres geográficos de la provincia con objeto de lograr acceso instantáneo a la información y de crear un banco permanente de datos toponímicos. Una vez creado el banco, en 1973, fue posible investigar las correlaciones entre diversos parámetros en relación con nombres genéricos, determinar tipos de nombre de conformidad con la región y resolver otros problemas. El archivo corriente contiene 75.000 nombres que se van a publicar en 1978 en la segunda edición del *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. El banco se actualizará continuamente y se le irán agregando nuevos datos segun se requiera.

*

* *

At the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which was held in London in 1972, various countries underlined the ever-increasing role being played by computers in the field of toponymy. Storage requirements and problems of data accessibility, combined with the need for place-name standardization, prompted the search for a technique providing instant access to information.

In Quebec, a place-name computerization project has been under way since 1971. It is known as Projet Répertoire and consists in the recording and computer processing of official place names in Quebec. Two organizations have been taking part: the Geographical Commission of Quebec, which is responsible for official geographical nomenclature in Quebec, and the Gécet, which is a Laval University research group interested in questions of toponymy and geographical terminology.

The objective of the Project is to create a permanent bank of toponymic data and to establish an integrated system for utilization and updating of these data. Three steps are involved in the project:

(*a*) Establishment of a toponymic file;
(*b*) Computer analysis of data; and
(*c*) Verification and updating of data.

Establishment of a toponymic file

The years 1971 to 1973 were devoted to the establishment of a place-name file on computer media. The file includes more than 60,000 official place names, which appear in the *Répertoire géographique du Québec*, a 701-page volume published by the Geographical Commission, and in supplements, which have been published in the Quebec Official Gazette.

The computer file is set up in such a way that there are several units of information or "fields" for each toponym. The sample list printout shows the contents (see annex). The first field shows the date of the name's official publication. In the second column, the eight digits give a sequential code, which was determined mechanically and is used to add or correct toponymic information. The other eight digits appearing on the following line are a language code (English, French, Amerindian, Eskimo, other) and a semantic code (historical, dedicatory, descriptive, anthroponymic and other names) for the place name.

The "POSITION" field gives the geographical co-ordinates in degrees and minutes, thus locating the toponym. The following two columns, "NAME" and "ENTITY", give the geographical names, which are arranged in integral alphabetical order of the specific. They consist of two main divisions: administrative entities, that is, those that have been defined by man (counties, cities, towns, villages and so on), and natural

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mrs Grenon-Roy, Geographer with the Secretariat of the Quebec Geographical Commission, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.16. The French version of this paper appeared in a special issue of the bulletin *CANOMA* (vol. 3, No. 1), distributed at the Conference.

topographic entities, which comprise the range of features of the geographical landscape (coves, streams, bays, mountains and so on). The toponyms are located according to township, county and area, all of which represent types of cadastral and census divisions. This information appears in the "PLACE" field. The numbers and letters of the last column ("SHEET") refer to map numbers and are explained in greater detail later.

The bank is placed on a medium (a magnetic tape) by means of the APL system. The file is then converted from the initial APL code to the EBCDIC code, which makes it possible to use the French print chain. In addition to capitals, the chain includes accents and lower-case letters, all of which are necessary in writing French and which a conventional computer print chain does not have. This step thus solves the problem of transcribing geographical names with accents

Computer analysis of data

Between 1973 and 1975 the operation of the bank made it possible to develop solutions to the original methodological problems concerning the computerization of place names and especially to establish correlations between such different parameters as linguistic and semantic classifications in connexion with generics, the distribution of name types according to the various regions and so on. This analysis, in addition to showing the difficulties inherent in the definition and recording of geographical entities, points up the problems associated with place-name standardization (spelling, homonymy and so on).

Data verification and updating

Early in 1975 the Geographical Commission announced its intention to publish a second edition of the *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. This will include the updated and official geographical nomenclature of Quebec. Publication is slated for the spring of 1978.

At the moment the file comprises all the names of the first *Répertoire* and the supplements, that is, all names that have been made official since the time the Commission was first created (1912) up to the end of 1974. It is realized that place names must be reviewed systematically, since over the years changes occur (different spelling and usage, more specific location and so on).

The methodology that has been developed makes it possible for geographical names to be easily found on basic cartographic documents and for the data to be checked and corrected if necessary. The geographical coordinates that already appear opposite each place name in the file make it possible for the computer to determine map numbers. These correspond to the national mapping system (see the "SHEET" field in the sample list printout). Proper programming makes it possible to obtain list printouts of all place names grouped according to the numbers to which they belong. For example, sheet 22 D/09 gives all place names under that number that have been made official. The names are reviewed and corrected if necessary. Through coding, the corrections may be recorded on lists prepared for that purpose. These are then entered in the data file by means of an APL console, which is directly connected to the computer.

In conjunction with the name verification process, the file is updated continually. It currently contains more than 75,000 toponyms, which represent the sum of official geographical nomenclature to date in Quebec.

Mechanized operation of this permanent bank of geographical names has several advantages. In addition to reducing considerably the number of potential errors, it provides quick access to a large volume of information. The flexibility of this system also offers many possibilities for compiling names. Various lists have been selected to date, including one of such generic toponyms as, for example, "river" and "creek", another of inhabited places and a third of names appearing in the first *Répertoire*, arranged according to language and origin.

This technique has also made it possible to conduct research on problems of defining and recording generics. A list of 5,000 names was selected and compiled, the names being arranged in alphabetical order of the generic. The list was used to determine systematically the correspondence or non-correspondence of generics and geographical entities. For example, it was possible to verify the different meanings of the generic term "*coulée*", which in certain areas designates a "ravine", in others a "stream", and which is also sometimes used in the sense of a "small channel".

By verifying terms in their toponymic and geographical contexts, we are able to establish accurate terminology while taking into account the vocabulary currently in use to describe geographical phenomena.

Computer analysis of generics helps to improve the presentation and accuracy of Quebec nomenclature. In the next edition of *Répertoire des noms géographiques du Québec*, the toponym (generic and specific) and the geographical entity will be separated. This method of recording data meets one of the recommendations that emerged from the Second Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

By the end of 1977, the name verification, updating and analysis processes will be completed. The permanent bank of toponymic data will thus be used for the new edition of the *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. It will be updated continually and new information (historical data, variants and so on) will be added as required. Partial or complete lists of names may be produced upon request.

Quebec's experiment in the computerization of place names has had very positive results. In addition to solving data recording and storage problems, the Project has made it possible to develop a new, more effective methodology to overcome difficulties in the definition, spelling and selection of toponyms. In short, the Project has solved the problems inherent in the standardization of geographical names.

A PROGRAMME BY THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA FOR THE AUTOMATIC MANAGEMENT OF INFORMATION ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the United States of America*

Résumé

Le Service géologique des Etats-Unis a mis au point, en coopération avec le Board on Geographic Names (BGN), un programme de traitement automatique de l'information sur les noms géographiques de plusieurs Etats des Etats-Unis d'Amérique. Appelé le Geographic Names Information System (GNIS), ce programme permet d'imprimer des renseignements selon un certain nombre d'éléments d'information comprenant, entre autres, le nom, le "désignant", le lieu, les coordonnées, les variantes de noms, la feuille de carte et la cote d'altitude. Fondé sur la collection normalisée de cartes et contenant des noms conformes aux règles préconisées par le BGN, le GNIS incorpore des noms rencontrés dans les Etats du Massachusetts (12 000) et de l'Alaska (30 000) ainsi qu'environ 1 800 noms concernant Rhode Island. Les travaux portent actuellement sur des noms utilisés au Colorado, au Kansas et au Delaware.

Le système peut fournir sur imprimante des renseignements relatifs aux noms, selon plusieurs présentations —par exemple par ordre alphabétique, par détail topographique, par catégorie de détail, par subdivision administrative et par bassin hydrographique. Plusieurs exemples de sortie d'imprimante illustrent le genre d'informations que le GNIS peut traiter. Actuellement, les usagers peuvent obtenir, pour un prix symbolique, les sorties d'imprimante concernant les Etats étudiés. Le BGN lance un nouveau programme pour que les nomenclatures des Etats fassent partie des publications courantes de bibliothèque.

Resumen

La Dirección de Relevamientos Geológicos de los Estados Unidos, en cooperación con la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos, ha organizado un programa de elaboración automática de información sobre nombres geográficos para varios Estados de los Estados Unidos de América. El sistema, conocido como Sistema de Información sobre Nombres Geográficos (*Geographic Names Information System*) puede imprimir información según una serie de elementos de datos, inclusive nombre, denominador, ubicación, coordenadas, variantes de los nombres, hoja de mapa, elevación y otros elementos. El Sistema de Información, que se basa en la serie normalizada de mapas y contiene nombres que se ajustan a las políticas de la junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos, incorpora actualmente nombres de los Estados de Massachusetts (12.000) y Alaska (80.000), y alrededor de 1.800 nombres correspondientes a Rhode Island. Se están realizando trabajos sobre nombres en Colorado, Kansas y Delaware.

El Sistema de Información puede suministrar material impreso de información sobre nombres según varios formatos, por ejemplo, alfabéticamente por accidentes, por categoría de accidentes, por subdivisión administrativa y por cuenca de drenaje. Ejemplos de impresiones ilustran el tipo de información que el Sistema de Información puede elaborar. En la actualidad los usuarios pueden obtener, a un costo nominal, material impreso sobre los Estados abarcados. La Junta de Nombres Geográficos está promoviendo otro programa para suministrar nomenclaturas geográficas por Estados, en forma de publicaciones normales de biblioteca.

*

* *

The success of a national programme to standardize geographical names depends a great deal on effective management of name information. Large numbers of interrelated data involving choice of official names, their official written forms and their applications to specific features, places or areas must be collected, processed, stored, retrieved when needed and disseminated to a great variety of users. One method of managing this kind of information is by use of a system developed around automatic data processing. The importance of automatic data processing to national name standardization was recognized at previous United Nations Conferences. It may be useful at this time to give an outline of the computer-based Geographic Names Information System (GNIS) developed by the United States Geological Survey (USGS), in co-operation with the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN), for the management of domestic geographic names.

The Geographic Names Office in the Topographic Division of the United States Geological Survey, located at the USGS National Center in Reston, Virginia (near Washington, D.C.), is a research, co-ordinating and information centre. It provides a single location in the United States to which may be directed all problems and inquiries concerning domestic geographical names. The Office assists with the mapping and other publication programmes of the USGS, as well as with those of other federal and state agencies, by providing assistance and information on official standard names. It furnishes staff assistance to the BGN Executive Secretary for domestic names activities, manages a data repository, answers public inquiries, compiles name information, publishes books and lists on domestic names and co-ordinates standard name usage between the federal and state Governments.

The Geographic Names Information System is designed to be used by all levels of federal, state and local Governments; by industry; by educational institutions; and by the general public. When completed, the GNIS files will furnish basic and standard information about all

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Donald J. Orth, Jr., United States Geological Survey, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.35.

known geographic names used within the United States. It will

(*a*) Provide an up-to-date index of names found on federal, state and private maps;

(*b*) Assist in establishing uniform name usage throughout the federal Government, in co-operation with state and local Governments and the public;

(*c*) Eliminate duplication and the need for Government agencies, industry and institutions to spend large amounts of money and time to organize similar basic data files for special requirements;

(*d*) Provide for standardization of data elements and their coded representations for use in information interchange within the information-processing community; and

(*e*) Meet federal public information requirements prescribed by law.

GNIS provides information to two kinds of users: those that use the information as formatted for reference purposes, and those that use the file as a subset or information base for a specialized file. The user community for geographic names information is varied and large.

The GNIS lists primary or basic data for various kinds of features identified by a name. These include all known natural features (about 80 per cent of the file) and most major man-related features (about 20 per cent of the file). The man-related features include:

(*a*) Populated and non-populated places;
(*b*) Major and minor civil divisions;
(*c*) Dams and reservoirs;
(*d*) National and State Parks;
(*e*) Military installations;
(*f*) Airports; and
(*g*) Land reservations.

The kinds of man-related features can be further identified as incorporated, rural and seasonal.

The data elements and format associated with each name record include

(*a*) The feature name, including the choice of name, its spelling and its form, as officially recognized by the BGN;

(*b*) A feature class designator, that is, a standard term and code to identify the kind of feature to which the name applies;

(*c*) The date of the BGN's decision, if applicable;

(*d*) Location, including the state and county in which the named feature is located;

(*e*) Geographical co-ordinates indicating the accurate location and extent or limits of the named feature; and

(*f*) Variant names, i.e. other known names for a record-name feature.

While these are the minimum data associated with each record, many records will include additional information.

The collection, maintenance, and retrieval of information are now accomplished through use of an information-processing programme called GIPSY (General Information Processing System), developed by the University of Oklahoma and housed in the Geological Survey's IBM System 370/155 computers. GIPSY can assemble and process large data collections composed of numerical, codified or natural-language information. Variable-length records are accommodated, and data elements can be readily updated or new information added. The system does not establish preconceived relationships between the data collected and stored and it allows users with no programming experience easy access to the file through catalogued routines. Any data element or set of elements can be searched and retrieved individually.

The USGS has developed standard procedures for buiding a computer-based geographic-names file. Initial compilation consists of systematic collection of name data from maps and charts published by USGS and by the National Ocean Survey. These maps and charts, which follow BGN standards for names, offer the most uniform coverage available at scales large enough to permit symbolization and naming of relatively small features. These maps and charts are a valuable time-saving source of name information and, because they show natural and man-made features in accurate location, including their size, shape and extent, it is possible to relate a name visually to the feature it identifies. Reliable quantitative and qualitative information about the named features also can be compiled with a minimum of effort.

Development of the domestic names file is at an early stage and may not be completed for several years. At present all 12,000 names from the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, 30,000 names from the State of Alaska and 1,800 names from the State of Rhode Island have been collected, along with attendant data, and have been put in machine-readable form. The automation of about 50,000 names from the states of Colorado, Kansas and Delaware, along with that of about 50,000 BGN decisions on domestic names, probably will be completed before the end of 1977.

The authority and validity of the file as a National Standard is accomplished

(*a*) By following the decisions and procedures prescribed by the United States Board on Geographic Names for identifying official standard names; and

(*b*) By using organically established names verified as official by the organizations responsible for such features.

Information may be made available to users in three ways:

(*a*) By direct access to the computer file via "outside" terminal;

(*b*) As "open file" products, i.e. magnetic tape, punch cards, computer printout or microfiche; and

(*c*) In published book format, i.e. gazetteers, cumulative lists and topical lists.

Attachments 1 to 7 (see annex) show some of the different formats in which geographical names information can be presented. With the names data for several states now on file, there is a capability to publish state gazetteers containing information according to one or more formats. The United States Board on Geographic Names is looking into ways to promote the publication of state gazetteers on a regular basis. At present, geographical names information can be acquired by users, at nominal cost, on a case-by-case basis.

Annex

SAMPLE PAGES SHOWING VARIOUS FORMATS IN WHICH GNIS GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES INFORMATION CAN BE PRESENTED

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	MAP
Bay Point	point of land	25005	414220N0711235W	10 ft.		120
Bial Point	point of land	25005	413120N0710505W			132
Brayton Point	point of land	25005	414225N0711140W	40 ft.	0.5 mi. long	120
Clarks Point	point of land	25005	413535N0705405W	20 ft.		144
Cornell Point	point of land	25005	413515N0710410W	5 ft.		132
Deepwater Point	point of land	25005	413140N0705045W	4 ft.		144
Doctors Point	point of land	25005	413425N0710425W			132
Fedora Point	point of land	25005	413850N0710755W	10 ft.		120
Hemlock Point	point of land	25005	414705N0705635W	70 ft.		142
Horseneck Point	nt of land	25005	413040N0710520W			132
Huddlestone Point	of land	25005	413435N0710420W			132
Irish Island	land	25005	413235N0710720W	10 ft.	0.1 mi. long	132
Jessies Neck	nd	25005	413451N0710436W			132
Long Point		25005	414313N0711145W	15 ft.		120
Misnaum Point		25005	413125N0705725W	10 ft.	1.2 mi. long	144
Moshers Point		25005	413535N0705540W	5 ft.		144
North Point	po.	25	413623N0704954W	5 ft.		156
Nubble, The	point		413025N0710525W		40 ft.	132
Pelegs Point	point o		413532N0710405W	5 ft.		132
Peters Point	point of		414912N0710654W			130
Pierces Point	point of lan.		414736N0714707W			130
Pines Point	point of land		3055N0710405W	5 ft.		132
Potomska Point	point of land		50N0705825W	10 ft.		144
Ricketsons Point	point of land	25	0705620W	5 ft.		144
Rocky Point	point of land	2800	04920W	4 ft.		156
Round Hill Point	point of land	25005	545W	50 ft.		144
Salters Point	point of land	25005	W	5 ft.		144
Sandy Point	point of land	25005				130
Taber Point	point of land	25005	5W			132
Toms Point	point of land	25005	413 45W	20 ft.		132
Westport Point	point of land	25005	41301 121W	0.0 ft.		132
Westport Point	point of land	25005	413100N 0410W			132
Widows Point	point of land	25005	413600N0710359W	5 ft.		132
Wilbur Point	point of land	25005	413455N0705115W	5 ft.		156
Winslow Point	point of land	25005	414632N0710649W	47 ft.		130
Wood Point	point of land	25005	413105N0710410W	10 ft.		132
Allen Point	point of land	25007	422055N0704148W			167
Bluefish Point	point of land	25007	412103N0703007W	3 ft.		173
Bold Water Point	point of land	25007	412200N0703339W	10 ft.		173
Bran Point	point of land	25007	412421N0703224W	5 ft.		173
Brown Point	point of land	25007	412700N0703725W	20 ft.		166
Butler Neck Point	point of land	25007	412118N0703248W	8 ft.		173
Cedar Neck	point of land	25007	412700N0703536W	30 ft.	0.5 mi. long	166
Chappaquiddick Point	point of land	25007	412315N0703024W			173
Cobbs Point	point of land	25007	412050N0704022W	5 ft.		167
Dividend Point	point of land	25007	412443N0703322W	5 ft.		173
East Chop	point of land	25007	412815N0703410W	42 ft.		173
Flat Point	point of land	25007	412145N0703945W	5 ft.		167
Flat Point	point of land	25007	412757N0703730W	5 ft.		166
Fox Point	point of land	25007	412600N0705057W			145
Gay Head	point of land	25007	412100N0705015W			173
Haystack Point	point of land	25007	412427N0703251W	5 ft.		173

Attachment 1: Massachusetts File, listing according to kind of feature

/...

Attachment 2: Massachusetts File; alphabetical listing according to county

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	DGN	ELEVATION	SOURCE	MAP
Artichoke River	stream	25009	424915N0705620W			424755N0705715	134
Asbury Grove	ppl	25009	423720N0705305W		63 ft.		135;136
Ash Swamp	swamp	25009	424635N0705810W		65 ft.		134
Attitash, Lake	lake	25009	425100N0705855W		96 ft.		134
Austin Hill	hill	25009	424345N0710517W		292 ft.		123
Averills Island	hummock	25009	423825N0705445W		60 ft.		135
Avery Ledge	ledge	25009	424006N0703515W	1891			168
Ayers Hill	hill	25009	424826N0710331W		339 ft.		122
Ayers Village	ppl	25009	424713N0711010W		187 ft.		111
Babson Ledge	rock	25009	423621N0704003W				159
Babson Point	point of land	25009	423910N0704100W		10 ft.		159
Babson Reservoir	reservoir	25009	423733N0704006W		48 ft.		159
Bachelder Brook	stream	25009	424343N0705431W			424158N0705421	135
Back Beach	beach	25009	422930N0705100W				149
Back Harbor	cove	25009	423935N0703710W				168
Back River	stream	25009;33015	425105N0705925W			425145N0710210	122;134
Back River	stream	25009;33015	425120N0705540W			425425N0705758	133;134
Back River	tream	25009	424920N0705237W			424955N0705335	134
Badgers Rock		25009	424915N0704915W				146
Bagwell Island		25009	424220N0704920W				147
Bailey Pond		25009	425010N0705555W		25 ft.		134
Baileys Hill		25009	422506N0705547W	1971	70 ft.		137
Baker Hill		25009	422648N0710018W		194 ft.		125
Bakers Island		5009	423200N0704712W	1904	50 ft.		148
Bald Hill	h.	9	423442N0705045W		160 ft.		148
Bald Hill	hill		423818N0710037W		247 ft.		123
Bald Rocks	rocks		423925N0704140W				159
Baldpate Hill	hill		424228N0710056W		353 ft.		123
Baldpate Pond	lake		24153N0710008W		92 ft.		123;135
Ballarach Cove	cove		50N0704550W	1971			148
Ballardvale	ppl	2	N0710940W	1970	80 ft.		112;113
Bar Head	promontory	250	04625W		44 ft.		147
Bare Hill	hill	25009	15W		170 ft.		135
Bare Meadow Brook	stream	25009	55W			424430N0710935	111;112
Barker Hill	hill	25009	603W		288 ft.		123
Barn Rocks	rocks	25009	4 J4112W				159
Bartholomew Hill	hill	25009	4240 /05315W		184 ft.		135
Bartholowmew Pond	lake	25009	423030 J705800W		100 ft.		136
Bartlett Brook	stream	25009;25017;	424207N0711305W			424255N0711657	112;102
Bartlett Rock	rock	25009	424007N0703710W				168
Basin, The	cove	25009	424845N0704910W				146
Bass Point	point of land	25009	422500N0705610W		30 ft.		137
Bass River	stream	25009	423240N0705340W	1942		423504N0705430	136
Bass Rock	rock	25009	422505N0705500W				137
Bass Rock	rock	25009	424152N0704703W				147
Bass Rock	rock	25009	422450N0705530W				137
Bass Rocks	promontory	25009	423655N0703800W		50 ft.		159;168
Bass Rocks	ppl	25009	423651N0703809W		40 ft.		159;168
Batt Hill	hill	25009	425220N0705350W		170 ft.		134
Bay View	ppl	25009	424012N0703955W		60 ft.		159
Bayberry Swamp	swamp	25009	423530N0704718W		55 ft.		148
Bayns Hill	hill	25009	424134N0710232W		330 ft.		123

/...

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	GNIS CODE	STATE CO.	COORDINATE	ELEV. FEET	SOURCE	FEATURE EXTENT	MAP
Dug Way	channel	02E	25023	420329N0704047W			0.3 mi. long	161
East River	channel	02E	25023	414424N0703916W			0.3 mi. long	164
Fort Point Channel	channel	02E	25025	422120N0710300W			1 mi. long	126
Goose Point Channel	channel	02E	25023	415820N0703945W			1.5 mi. long	162
Great Wood Island River	channel	02E	25023	420307N0703922W			0.8 mi. long	161
Hog Island Channel	channel	02E	25009	423950N0704450W			1 mi. long	168;147
Horseneck Channel	channel	02E	25005	413100N0710355W			1.5 mi. long	132
Little Mystic Channel	channel	02E	25025	422250N0710300W			0.6 mi. long	125
Lords Creek	channel	02E	25009	424345N0705005W			0.5 mi. long	147
Manchester Channel	channel	02E	25009	423330N0704710W			0.8 mi. long	148
Marblehead Channel	channel	02E	25009	423135N0705150W			5 mi. long	148;149
Muskeget Channel	channel	02E	25007	412100N0702400W			6 mi. wide	264
Narrows, The	channel	02E	25023	414935N0705340W			0.1 mi. across	142
Oldtown Harbor	channel	02E	25007	412300N0703030W			1.3 mi. long	173
Pollock Rip Channel	[illegible]el	02E	25001	413330N0695700W				1209
Popponesset Creek		02E	25001	413437N0702720W			0.8 mi. long	175
Reserved Channel		02E	25025	422035N0710120W			1.3 mi. long	126
Stacy Creek		[illegible]2E	25009	424235N0704920W			0.8 mi. long	147
Third Creek			25009	424300N0704900W			0.5 mi. long	147
Thorofare, The	ch[illegible]		[illegible]09	424515N0704924W			0.5 mi. long	146
Western Channel	channe[illegible]			[illegible]22636N0705800W			1.7 mi. long	137
Woods Hole Passage	channel			[illegible]0N0704100W			2 mi. long	165
Rafes Chasm	chasm			[illegible]704205W			0.1 mi. long; 0	159
Black Wills Cliff	cliff	02E		[illegible]03W	30			137
Breakneck Ledge	cliff	02E	[illegible]		450			127
Grovers Cliff	cliff	02E	2502[illegible]					137
High Cliff	cliff	02E	25023	41[illegible]				162
Indian Neck	cliff	02E	25001	41543[illegible]			0.7 mi. long	182
Rose Cliff	cliff	02E	25021	421525N07[illegible]				138
South Bluff	cliff	02E	25007	412854N070443[illegible]	0			157
South Bluff	cliff	02E	25007	412715N0704651W	50			157
Third Cliff	cliff	02E	25023	421045N0704300W	80		0.7 mi. long	160
West Cliff	cliff	02E	25009	422520N0705615W	30			137
Cliffs, The	cliffs	02E	25023	414111N0704330W	27			164
Falmouth Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25001	413719N0703837W	61			165
Gay Head Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	412100N0705012W	147			158
Nantucket Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25019	411740N0700700W	50		0.6 mi. long	180
Nashaquitsa Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	411912N0704545W	50			158
Wequobsque Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	412005N0704415W	80		1.8 mi. long	158
.Barnstable County	county	02E	25001	414000N0701500W				
Allerton Harbor	cove	02E	25023	421810N0705340W				138
Anchorage, The	cove	02E	25001	414015N0703820W				164
Angeline Cove	cove	02E	25005	413245N0710635W			1,300 ft. wide	132
Anns Cove	cove	02E	25001	413512N0702818W			0.2 mi. long	175
Aucoot Cove	cove	02E	25023	414030N0704530W			0.6 mi. across	155
Aunt Lydias Cove	cove	02E	25001	414106N0695700W			0.2 mi. across	185
Back Harbor	cove	02E	25009	423935N0703710W			0.2 mi. wide	168
Ballarach Cove	cove	02E	25009	423350N0704550W			0.1 mi. across	148
Barker Cove	cove	02E	25023	414945N0705355W			0.3 mi. across	142
Bass Cove	cove	02E	25023	414330N0703900W			0.3 mi. across	164
Bass Creek	cove	02E	25023	414330N0703920W			0.2 mi. long	164
Bass Hole	cove	02E	25001	414335N0701420W			0.3 mi. across	179

Attachment 3: Massachusetts File; listing according to drainage basin

/...

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE	COUNTY	ELEV. FT.	BGN	COORDINATE	SOURCE	MAP
Greene	locale	44003		425	1930	414128N0714447W		19
Greene Point	cape	44005			1930	413208N0712507W		14
Greenville	ppl	44007		322	1930	415216N0713309W		26
Greenwich Bay	bay	44003			1930	414028N0712452W		21
Greenwich Cove	bay	44003			1930	413926N0712641W		21
Greenwood	ppl	44003			1930	414230N0712641W		21
Greystone	ppl	44007		139	1930	415159N0712927W		27
Grist Mill Pond	lake	44007		475	1930	415352N0714739W		29
Grove Point	cape	44009			1930	411332N0713359W		1
Grove Point Rock	pillar	44009			1930	411336N0713352W		1
Gull Point	cape	44005			1930	413834N0712001W		22
Gull Rock	pillar	44005			1930	412733N0711801W		9
Gull Rocks	pillar	44005			1930	413010N0711959W		15
Gunners Hill	summit	44009			1930	411153N0713516W		1
Gunning Rock	pillar	44009			1930	412419N0712721W		8
Gut, The	gut	44005			1930	413041N0710744W		16
Gut, The	gut	44005			1930	413707N0711216W		16
Halfmile Hill	summit	44001		122	1930	414216N0711649W		22
Halfway Ledge	[illegible]h	44009			1930	413313N0712428W		14
Halfway Rock		44005			1930	413351N0711959W		15
Halfway Rock		44005			1930	412804N0710837W		10
Hall Creek	[illegible]4009				1930	413619N0712525W	413637N0712543W	14
Hall Point	[illegible]09				1930	412124N0713544W		4
Hallville Pond				210	1930	413159N0713420W		13
Hamilton	pl[illegible]				1930	413254N0712630W		14
Hamiltons Corner	loca.			246	1930	413630N0713039W		13
Hamlet	ppl				1930	420003N0713019W		36
Hammitt Hill	summit				1930	414004N0714100W		19
Hammond Hill	summit	[illegible]			1930	413108N0712730W		14
Hanging Rock	pillar	4400			1930	412930N0711532W		9
Hannah Brook	stream	44007			1972	415107N0714318W	415215N0714327W	25
Hannah Clarkin Pond	lake	44009		47	1930	412340N0713809W		6
Happy Hollow Pond	tank	44007		51	1930	415404N0712310W		32
Harbor Hill	Hill	44009			1972	410948N0713312W		1
Harbor Neck	cape	44009			1930	411138N0713531W		1
Harbor Pond	bay	44009			1930	411037N0713400W		1
Harbour Island	island	44009			1972	412442N0712950W		8
Hardig Brook	stream	44003			1972	414202N0712741W	414118N0713106W	21
Harkney Hill	summit	44003		514	1930	414040N0713859W		19
Harmony	locale	44007		409	1930	415316N0713550W		31
Harris	locale	44003			1930	414328N0713159W		20
Harris Brook	stream	44007			1930	415349N0713044W	415538N0713010W	31
Harris Point	cape	44009			1930	411126N0713427W		1
Harris Pond	tank	44007		311	1930	415449N0713025W		31
Harris Pond	tank	44007	25027	168	1930	420057N0713025W		36
Harrisville	ppl	44007		336	1930	415756N0714030W		30
Haul Rock	pillar	44003			1930	414103N0712658W		21
Haversham	ppl	44009			1930	412050N0714414W		4
Hawkins Brook	stream	44007			1930	415225N0713004W	415215N0713137W	26
Hawkins Pond	lake	44007		269	1930	415139N0713246W		26

Attachment 4: Rhode Island File; alphabetical listing

/...

Annex (*continued*)

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	DGN	ELEVATION	SOURCE	MAP
Meetinghouse Swamp	swamp	25023	415453N0705330W		55 ft.		141
Megansett	ppl	25001	413910N0703715W		40 ft.		171;164
Megansett Harbor	bay	25001	413915N0703830W	1938			164;171
Mellen Hill	hill	25027	422517N0715554W		1,210 ft.		73
Mellen Pond	lake	25027	423800N0720152W		1,074 ft.		65
Melrose	ppl	25017	422730N0710400W		133 ft.		125
Melrose Highlands	area	25017	422815N0710343W		150 ft.		125
Melrose Rock	hill	25017	422645N0710444W		210 ft.		125
Menauhant	ppl	25001	413315N0703302W		10 ft.		172
Mendall Hill	hill	25005	414205N0705300W		140 ft.		143
Mendellis Rocks	rocks	25001	414030N0704452W				164
Mendon	ppl	25027	420620N0713310W		330 ft.		94
Menemsha	ppl	25007	412106N0704553W		30 ft.		150
Menemsha Basin	harbor	25007	412110N0704600W				158
Menemsha Beach	beach	25007	412125N0704555W		5 ft.		158
Menemsha Bight	ght	25007	412110N0704645W				158
Menemsha Creek		25007	412115N0704610W			412115N0704610W	158
Menemsha Pond		25007	412015N0704630W				158
Meninimisset		25027	422000N0720935W		565 ft.		62
Mercer Square		25023	420755N0705133W		70 ft.		151
Meriams Corner		017	422735N0711930W		130 ft.		104
Merino Pond	re-		420300N0715400W		485 ft.		76
Merino Village	area		420300N0715325W		440 ft.		76
Merriam Beach	beach		414000N0703015W		5 ft.		164
Merriam Brook	stream		2905N0722002W			423852N0722707W	47
Merriam Hill	hill		N0711333W		290 ft.		114
Merriam Hill	hill	25	N0712650W		328 ft.		98
Merrick	locality	25015	JN0723730W		100 ft.		40;46
Merrick Island	hill	25001	0N0700330W		70 ft.		182
Merrill, Cape	point of land	25009	20N0704858W				140
Merrimac	ppl	25009	42 950N0710010W	1892	107 ft.		122
Merrimac Terrace	ppl	25009	422856N0710015W		100 ft.		123
Merrimack River	stream	25009;25017;	424910N0704945W	1916			95;102;111;11
Merrimacport	ppl	25009	424940N0705920W		100 ft.		134
Merritts Hill	hill	25015	422612N0724600W		1,340 ft.		31
Merrymount	area	25021	421545N0705945W		32 ft.		138
Metacomet Lake	lake	25015	421820N0722550W		306 ft.		50
Metcalf	ppl	25017	421100N0712645W		269 ft.		90
Metcalf Creek	stream	25009	424330N0705000W			424315N0705036W	147
Methuen	ppl	25009	424334N0711129W		115 ft.		112
Miaconet Pond	lake	25019	411455N0700657W		5 ft.		180
Miaconet Rip	shoal	25019	411400N0700630W				180
Micah Pond	lake	25001	413820N0702245W		12 ft.		175
Micajah Pond	lake	25023	415513N0704154W		107 ft.		162
Midchannel Rock	rock	25009	423125N0704915W				140
Middle Branch Swift River	stream	25011;25027;	422035N0721855W				56;55;54
Middle Branch Westfield River	stream	25015;25013;	421535N0725200W			422720N0725953W	32;26;25
Middle Breakers	rocks	25009	423110N0704550W		10 ft.		140
Middle Brewster Island	island	25025	422010N0705320W	1950			138
Middle Brook	stream	25013	420010N0725555W			420900N0725700W	27
Middle Flats	tidal flats	25007	412420N0703020W				173

Attachment 5: Massachusetts File; alphabetical listing

Attachment 6. Alaska File; alphabetical listing

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	COORDINATE	BGN	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	MAP	I.D. NUMBER
Castle Creek	stream	613820N1440520W			0.8 mi. long	68	00003932
Castle Creek	stream	603520N1523500W			6.5 mi. long	134	00003934
Castle Creek	stream	645200N1640800W			1.6 mi. long	95	00003933
Castle Hill	hill	570257N1352010W		54 ft.		9	00003935
Castle Hill	hill	615000N1653000W		437 ft.		75	00003936
Castle Island	island	602000N1451200W			4.5 mi. long	64	00003938
Castle Island	island	513920N1774040W				17	00003937
Castle Island Slough	stream	602000N1451000W			8 mi. long	64	00003940
Castle Islands	islands	564000N1331000W				6	00003939
Castle Mountain	mountain	615030N1483000W		5,500 ft.	6 mi. long	69	00003943
Castle Mountain	mountain	603400N1523500W		3,409 ft.		134	00003944
Castle Mountain	mountain	565250N1320720W		7,329 ft.		6	00003941
Castle Mountain	mountain	613900N1415900W		8,620 ft.		67	00003942
Castle Peak	mountain	613500N1432700W		11,000 ft.		67	00003945
Castle River	stream	603830N1331530W	1930		12 mi. long	6	00003946
Castle Rock		551700N1593000W			0.6 mi. long	27	00003947
Castle Rock	land	584030N1615615W				39	00003949
Castle Rock		632200N1501620W	1932	5,765 ft.		88	00003948
Castle Rocks		632515N1520430W		1,900 ft.		88	00003950
Castle Rocks Lake		[illegible]2130N1520800W			1.1 mi. long	88	00003951
Casther Creek	st.	[illegible]0N1454545W			1.5 mi. long	86	00003953
Casther Glacier	glaci.	454300W			12 mi. long	86	00003954
Casther Mount	mountain	[illegible]500W		5,535 ft.		69	00003952
Caswell	RR station	[illegible]W				70	00003955
Caswell Creek	stream				12 mi. long	70	00003956
Caswell Lake	lake	6[illegible]			1 mi. long	82	00003957
Cat Head	point of land	601[illegible]				63	00003963
Cat Island	island	550120N[illegible]			2.3 mi. long	3	00003988
Cat Island	island	552800N13[illegible]				4	00003989
Cat Island	island	644800N15710[illegible]				97	00003990
Cat Lake	lake	621300N1470000W	1959		0.6 mi. long	83	00003991
Cat Passage	water passage	550030N1311600W	1917			3	00003996
Catalina Island	island	553255N1331720W			1,800 ft. long	4	00003958
Cataract Bight	cove	514150N1764920W	1936			17	00003959
Cataract Cove	cove	594230[illegible]1495000W	1930		0.8 mi. wide	49	00003961
Cataract Cove	bight	543845N1644600W	1942		3.5 mi. across	24	00003960
Cataract Glacier	glacier	610230N1482310W			2.7 mi. long	69	00003962
Catnead Bay	estuary	601810N1475030W			1 mi. long	63	00003964
Cathedral Bluffs	bluffs	632330N1434400W			1.2 mi. long	85	00003965
Cathedral Creek	stream	625015N1522245W			5 mi. long	81	00003966
Cathedral Creek	stream	650815N1411120W	1965		18 mi. long	103	00003968
Cathedral Creek	stream	631905N1463250W			2 mi. long	86	00003967
Cathedral Creek	stream	562600N1594700W			9 mi. long	30	00022636
Cathedral Falls Creek	stream	565330N1334400W			7 mi. long	6	00003969
Cathedral Island	island	571200N1530800W	1930		0.3 mi. across	34	00003970
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	671000N1501500W		3,440 ft.		124	00003973
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	633400N1493600W		4,900 ft.		87	00003972
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	615715N1525730W		5,730 ft.		70	00003971
Cathedral Peak	mountain	553630N1614300W		2,963 ft.		28	00003974
Cathedral Peak	peak	583645N1342149W	1965	6,500 ft.		11	00003975
Cathedral Point	point of land	534430N1665145W				23	00003977
Cathedral Point	point of land	515610N1754310W	1936			18	00003976

Annex (*continued*)

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	DATE
Birch Islands	islands	ME 23029	445224N0670906W			1947
Birch Islands	islands (2)	ME 23029	453715N0673800W		0.1 mi. long and 0.4 mi	1954
Black Duck Cove	cove	ME 23029	442845N0673554W			1947
Black Ledges	shoal	ME 23029	443200N0673000W			1947
Boundary Ledges	shoal	ME 23029	443545N0673012W		0.5 mi. in extent	1947
Bray Ledge	shoal	ME 23029	443440N0674512W			1947
Bray Point	point of land	ME 23029	443500N0674520W			1947
Brooks Bluff	point of land	ME 23029	450530N0670648W			1947
Bucks Neck	point of land	ME 23029	443030N0672240W			1947
Bung, Rock	rock	ME 23029	443520N0674454W			1947
Burial Island	island	ME 23029	445255N0665955W			1954
Carrying Place Cove	cove	ME 23029	443110N0674230W		0.8 mi. long	1954
Carrying Place Cove	cove	ME 23029	443242N0674700W			1947
Carrying Place Island	island	ME 23029	443110N0674145W		250 yds. long and 150 y	1954
Chandler Island	island	ME 23029	443133N0674150W			1947
Clement Point	point of land	ME 23029	445524N0670548W			1954
Cothell Meadow Brook	stream	ME 23029	444215N0673620W		2 mi. long	1947
Crotched Meadow	meadow	ME 23029	444230N0671430W			1947
Crow Island	island	ME 23029	442945N0673245W			1947
Crow Neck	peninsula	ME 23029	445130N0670800W		3 mi. long and 1 mi. wi	1947
Cutler Harbor	harbor	ME 23029	443928N0671228W			1947
Daniels Island	island	ME 23029	443202N0674120W			1947
Deep Cove	ove	ME 23029	442936N0673612N			1947
Dennys Bay	of Cobscook	ME 23029	445300N0670900W			1939
Donovan Cove		ME 23029	443140N0673715W			1947
Drisko Island		ME 23029	442845N0674025W		0.8 mi. long	1947
Drisko Ledge		ME 23029	443015N0673343W			1947
Drisko Ledge		ME 23029	443122N0673240W			1947
Drown Boys Ledges	sh.	23029	442648N0673006W			1947
Dunn Island	isla.	029	443654N0673324W		0.8 mi. long	1947
East Branch	stream		443230N0673800W		5 mi. long	1947
Eastern Knubble	hill		443930N0671150W	164 ft,		1947
Eastern Ladle Ledge	shoal		442901N0674410W			1947
Eastern Ledges	shoal		443155N0673006W			1947
Eastern Marsh Brook	stream	ME	10N0671455W			1939
Eastern Pitch	slope	ME 23	0674406W			1947
Edgecomb Point	point of land	ME 23029	70440W			1954
Fellows Island	island	ME 23029	200W		0.5 mi. long	1947
Fifth Rock	rock	ME 23029	3025W			1947
Flake Point Bar	bar	ME 23029	44. 73342W		500 yds. long	1947
Folkingham Cove	cove	ME 23029	4429. 673615W			1947
Garnet Point	point of land	ME 23029	445525N0670640W			1954
Gilman Hill	hill	ME 23029	443824N0673710W	180 ft,		1947
Goose Island	island	ME 23029	445448N0670230W		300 yds. long	1947
Grassy Point	point of land	ME 23029	443730N0671806W			1947
Great Cove	bay	ME 23029	443730N0673045W			1947
Hallowell Island	island	ME 23029	445254N0670945W		0.8 mi. long	1947
Hardscrabble River	estuary	ME 23029	445445N0671205W		2 mi. long	1947
Hopkins Cut	water passage	ME 23029	443145N0673837W			1947
Howard Cove	cove	ME 23029	443700N0672300W			1947
Inner Hardwood Island	island	ME 23029	443014N0673312W			1947
Inner Sand Island	island	ME 23029	442818N0674030W		500 yds. long	1947
Kilton Point	point of land	ME 23029	443850N0673255W			1947
Lamb Cove	cove	ME 23029	450620N0670750W			1947
Leach Point	point of land	ME 23029	445618N0670610W			1954
Little Breaking Ledge	shoal	ME 23029	443044N0673025W			1947
Little Dram Island	island	ME 23029	445312N0670915W			1947

The agent for data-collection monitoring and for maintenance of the GNIS files is the USGS Geographic Names Office, which can keep the file current and guarantee the accuracy and official status of the name data in the file without bias.

Additions to GNIS files will be monitored by the geographic names staff. Changes of file information relating to a name or its application are processed through BGN, as prescribed by law, or by the controlling agencies for other data. Specific information about the Geographic Names Information System can be obtained by writing to:

Director, United States Geological Survey
National Center
Reston, Virginia 22092
United States of America

DATA PROCESSING FOR THE PREPARATION OF THE GAZETTEER OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

Résumé

A l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie à Francfort-sur-le-Main on prépare actuellement le *Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (Nomenclature géographique: République fédérale d'Allemagne) en tant que contribution aux séries de nomenclatures des Nations Unies. On y trouve les noms figurant sur les cartes officielles complétés par des indications sur le type et la fonction, la situation et les dimensions ainsi que le classement des objets en ce qui concerne l'administration et la géographie. L'acquisition des données sur les noms, leur préparation et leur emmagasinage dans un fichier de noms géographiques à l'aide du traitement électronique des données s'effectuent dans le cadre de l'établissement du *Informationssystem für die Erfassung geographischer Namen aus amtlichen Landkarten der Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (système d'information pour l'acquisition de noms géographiques à partir de cartes géographiques officielles de la République fédérale d'Allemagne) qui servira aussi à d'autres fins.

Les procédés et programmes pour l'acquisition, la préparation, l'emmagasinage et l'édition de l'ensemble des noms pour la préparation de la nomenclature géographique décrits par l'auteur ont été élaborés et éprouvés à l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie.

Resumen

El Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada (Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie) de Francfort del Main prepara actualmente el nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania (*Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland*) como contribución a la serie de nomenclátores de las Naciones Unidas. En él se incluyen los nombres que figuran en los mapas oficiales, complementados con indicaciones sobre el tipo, la función, la situación y las dimensiones —y la clasificación—de los objetos desde el punto de vista político-administrativo y geográfico. La recopilación de los datos sobre nombres, su preparación y su acumulación en un fichero de nombres geográficos con ayuda de métodos de elaboración electrónica de datos han sido resultado de la creación de un sistema de información para la adquisición de nombres geográficos a partir de las cartas geográficas oficiales de la República Federal de Alemania (*Informationssystem für die Erfassung geographischer Namen aus amtlichen Landkarten der Bundesrepublik Deutschland*), que servirá también para otras finalidades.

Los procedimientos y los programas para la adquisición, la preparación, el almacenamiento y la edición del conjunto de nombres para la elaboración del nomenclátor geográfico, descritos por el autor, han sido desarrollados y ensayados en el Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada.

*

* *

Introduction: purposes of the Information System for the Capture of Geographical Names from Official Topographic Maps of the Federal Republic of Germany

The names of geographical features are of no interest unless they are explained by information as to the kind and function, dimensions and location of the feature concerned. The *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* now being prepared as a contribution to the United Nations Series of Gazetteers is to comprise all names, with explanatory information, in alphabetical order and with official spelling, as shown on the official maps of the Federal Republic of Germany. For the time being, the gazetteer is limited to the approximately 30,000 names shown on the General Map at scale 1:500,000, World Series 1404.

If, later on, the names shown on maps at larger scales are included, the volume of the *Gazetteer* will increase considerably. So we expect that about 180,000 names must be captured from the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000.

For the features indicated by names the following descriptive details are given:

(*a*) Kind and function (by feature codes);

(*b*) Location (by map sheet number, co-ordinates and height above mean sea level);

(*c*) Dimensions (by number of inhabitants, area and length); and

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.41

(*d*) Administrative area (relation) (by statistical key number).

A gazetteer comprising all the names shown on the map series at a certain scale and giving such additional information can be used for a number of different purposes:

(*a*) As a general source of information on geographical features;

(*b*) As a basis for the representation of administrative structures;

(*c*) As a compilation of names, from which to select, by kind and function, location and dimension, those which are to be shown on a map sheet to be prepared; and

(*d*) As a compilation of criteria for the selection of kind and dimension of map lettering and its placement on the map.

However, in order to make such varied uses possible, it is necessary that the data (such as, e.g., the number of inhabitants) be updated continuously and that they can be selected and sorted according to different characteristics. Electronic data processing (EDP) is the best means to solve this task. The Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (IfAG), which is charged with the preparation of the *Gazetteer*, has considered, from a very early date, the use of EDP. While doing so, we have not restricted ourselves to the preparation of a "gazetteer" only, but proposed to establish an Information System for the Capture of Geographical Names from Official Topographic Maps of the Federal Republic of Germany (hereinafter referred to as the "Information System") in order to serve all the purposes mentioned above.

We have particularly considered the plan to use the information, stored together with the names, for the automatic preparation of the printing plates for map lettering. The result has been that in addition to the co-ordinates of the feature concerned, the co-ordinates of the base line of the name on the map (as a rule, those at the left bottom corner of the first letter) have also been captured.

Without the co-ordinates of the base line, letter type and letter size can already be determined by means of kind, function and dimension of the topographic feature. At the Institute we plan the following procedure which considerably exceeds the scope of the above project:

The names stored are displayed, together with the symbols for the appertaining features and their surrounding, in their correct size on the screen of an interactive graphic system by means of the co-ordinates of the base lines. By displacing the names on the display to the most favourable position, the co-ordinates of the base lines are changed at the same time. In an automatically controlled phototypesetting device, the names are "written" on film, using type of the correct style and size, at the positions determined by the corrected co-ordinates of the base line. After it is developed this film is used to produce the printing plate for map lettering.

Structure of the Information System

The core of the Information System is a data bank system, which permits at any time the input of new data, the modification or erasure of existing data and the selection of a great quantity of data according to certain characteristics. This System is supported by several programmes, which permit the examination of data groups at a given format with regard to specified selection criteria and interrelations; storage of the characteristics and relations found in a suitable way; and classification of the search characteristics (in case of calls to the information system) in such a way that the data bank system can find the data records in question by means of the stored characteristics and relations and make them available in an output data file.

The DATAS data bank system has proved very suitable for the purposes of the Information System. The DATAS system has been described in detail by Wigand Weber in *Ein Datenbanksystem für Geographische Namen*.[1] In the meantime, DATAS has been installed in the TR 440 computer of the Gesellschaft für Mathematik und Datenverarbeitung mbH (Society for Mathematics and Data Processing), Bonn, Bereich Darmstadt. The Information System can also, however, be operated on a smaller computer.

With the TR 440 computer, the following processes are also performed:

(*a*) The data bank input, i.e. the capture of names and additional information on data carriers (magnetic tape, punch cards) and the preparation of the data up to the provision of the data records for the data bank; and

(*b*) The production of the *Gazetteer*, i.e. the sorting of the data records in the alphabetical order of the names, writing of the numerically coded information in clear text. The printed output (planning, programming and computation) is done by the group of operators in the IfAG.

Data bank input

The Information System data bank stores the following data:

(*a*) The name of the feature, followed by (for names other than place names) the grammatical gender (m), (f), (n), (pl);

(*b*) A second name of the feature, or the name of a special superior administrative unit below the *Kreis* (district) level;

(*c*) The co-ordinates of the central point of the feature (Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, geographical co-ordinates, and UTM co-ordinates);

(*d*) The Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates of the base line, necessary for placing the name on the map;

(*e*) The height of the feature above mean sea level;

(*f*) The dimensions of the feature (number of inhabitants, for towns and communes; lengths of rivers; surface areas of lakes and landscapes etc.);

(*g*) The feature's statistical key number, indicating its political affiliation to superior administrative units as the

[1] "A data bank system for geographical names", *Nachrichten aus dem Karten- und Vermessungswesen*, series I, No. 69.

level of *Land* (federal State), *Regierungsbezirk* or *Kreis* (district), town or commune;

(*h*) The hydrographic code number (for rivers, lakes and canals);

(*i*) Geographical and hydrographic code numbers;

(*j*) Feature codes, taken from the feature catalogue attached to the *Standard-Daten-Format für den Austausch kartographischer Daten* (Standard Data Format for the Exchange of Cartographic Data), which express the type and function of the feature by a four-digit number; and

(*k*) The number(s) of the official map sheet(s) on which the name is shown.

The input of data requires two steps:

(*a*) Capture of the data on data carriers (e.g. magnetic tape or punch card); and

(*b*) Preparation of the captured data in order to supply the complete data records in a Data File of Geographical Names which are transferred over into the data bank system.

Data capture

The most time-consuming factor in establishing the Information System is the data capture, i.e. the transfer of the data compiled from different sources to the data carrier. Therefore we strove from the very beginning to avoid the repeated input of information, to take over the data already captured elsewhere and to allow the least possible number of intersteps (as, e.g., the preparation of separated capture documents). For this reason, we have developed and tested a procedure by means of which the co-ordinates of the central point and the base line of each feature are measured at the digitizer, the names and all additional information being entered on the keyboard of the digitizer, so that all data are stored together on magnetic tape in a single data record.

Data capture at the digitizer

The digitizer used, the Bendix-Aristogrid off-line digitizer, consists of a table with a movable cursor on it, both being coupled to a control unit with operation field and output installations. The co-ordinates of the cursor with reference to a starting point, the table co-ordinates, are continuously stored electronically. In the same way the input data—name, height, key numbers, feature codes and so on—can be stored. After pressing a record key, all stored values and, in addition, a preset header are output on magnetic tape or on punch tapes and lists.

For reasons of intelligibility and accuracy, the table co-ordinates of the central points and base lines of the features on 1:200,000 maps are measured at the digitizer. Therefore, a preparatory working group must mark all named features to be captured, as shown on the 1:500,000 map, on the corresponding map sheets of the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000 before they are captured at the digitizer. This group must also assemble the documents showing the additional information.

At the digitizer, data records of the following kind are input one after another and "written" on the magnetic tape:

Header 1111 Label. Input of number and scale of map sheet, number of magnetic tape, names of map sheet and operator;

Header 2222–Header 7777 Sheet corner record. Clockwise measurement of the table co-ordinates of the corners of the inner map margin, starting at the left bottom;

Header 0000 Feature data record. Measurement of the table co-ordinates of the central point and base line of the feature and ensuing input of name, feature code, height, statistical key number and number of inhabitants or code number with indication of length or surface area (erroneous fields or records can be repeated before being output on the tape, by input of an error sign. Umlauts and ß have to be labelled by placing a "+" in front of the basic vowel, small letters at the beginning of a word being labelled by several interspaces in front of the word);

Header 7777 Terminal sheet corner record. Additional sheet corner records are to be inserted after the last feature data record, in case of interruption of the capture of feature data records, and above all in case of vibration of the measuring instrument;

Header 8888 Terminal section record. The data of a new capture section (map sheet) can subsequently be stored on the same magnetic tape, starting again with header 1111;

Header 9999 Terminal tape record. The magnetic tape is also concluded with the capture section, and can be transferred to the computer for editing.

Data capture via punch cards or display terminal

Data capture by digitizer is particularly suitable when a great number of features with central point and base line co-ordinates have to be captured. We plan the input in punch card format for corrections and supplements of features already captured—additional feature codes, new statistical key numbers and officially determined central point co-ordinates in the national system (in the case of newly created communes and for the addition of features that are not yet captured but the co-ordinates of which have been determined elsewhere). The data can be punched in the prescribed format in cards and input into a data file, or in the same format be input into this data file from a display terminal. The different input modes to be applied (modes 1 to 3) are conditioned by the effects of the modifications on other fields within the data record or also on other data records (e.g. modification of map sheet numbers when the feature co-ordinates are modified, or modification of the sorting field when names are changed)

Mode 4 is applied in case of a new capture of features with all additional information.

When the input is made via punch cards or terminal, only Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, geographical co-ordinates, or UTM co-ordinates must be input as feature co-ordinates, but no table co-ordinates.

Data editing for the input into the data bank of the information system

Editing of the data captured at the digitizer on magnetic tape

At the digitizer, data records with 1536 characters each in the EBCDIC code are written on tape. The data records of a tape are stored on magnetic disc for processing on the TR 440 computer, by translation into the central code ZC1 of the TR 440 and reduction to 359 characters in a data file with random access.

These data are edited for transfer to the data file in a programme system called GEONAM, the run of which can be controlled in interactive mode from the Institute's data remote processing station; the run can be interrupted in case of gross errors, and continued after correction of small errors.

In detail, the following operations are executed:

(*a*) Processing of name strings by insertion of the central code data for umlauts, small letters and ß, recording of the length of strings and position of umlauts, establishing of a sorting field for alphabetizing the data records;

(*b*) Presentation of a test drawing at the plotter of the computation centre. This drawing shows the features and names by means of the measured table co-ordinates of the central points and base lines of the features. By comparison with the original maps, one can find out if features have been forgotten or if names and features do not match;

(*c*) Output of lists of the captured data in order to check the data (names, key numbers, heights, feature codes) input via keyboard;

(*d*) Determination of sheet corner co-ordinates by means of the number of the measured map sheet and computation of the elements of a conformal or affine transformation of the table co-ordinates into the Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates of the national system, using the sheet corners as control points;

(*e*) Transformation of all table co-ordinates of central points and base lines of features into Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, transformation of Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates into geographical co-ordinates, and transformation of geographical co-ordinates into UTM co-ordinates;

(*f*) Determination, by means of its geographical co-ordinates, of the numbers of map sheets from the 1:25,000 Topographic Map series to the IMW 1:1,000,000 map on which the feature is shown; and

(*g*) Assignment of commune name to parts of populated places by means of the statistical key number.

The data, edited in this way, are included in the data file of geographical names for transfer to the data bank of the Information System.

Errors in data can be corrected as follows:

(*a*) By repeating the capture at the digitizer and the ensuing run of the above programme; or

(*b*) By input via punch cards or terminal according to one of the four input modes.

Editing of data not captured at the digitizer

After the first capture, as well as at a later date, the data stored in the data file of geographical names can be modified or corrected and supplemented. A programme system for the manipulation of feature data of the gazetteer (GNOM), going back to those parts of the programme that are also used for editing the data captured at the digitizer, affects such different operations (depending on the input mode in question) as, for example, the processing of the name string (capitals and small letters, umlauts, sorting field); transformation of the input Gauß-Krüger, geographical or UTM co-ordinates into the two other co-ordinate systems; and determination of map sheet numbers by means of geographical co-ordinates. The feature data captured at the digitizer, as well as those input via punch cards or at the terminal, are available at the end of editing in the data file of geographical names for the transfer to the data bank of the Information System. In this data file, a record number is definitely assigned to each feature, enabling random access to the data record in question.

Data output for the printing of the Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany

For the Information System, the essential data of features—their kind and function and their administrative and geographical areas—have been coded numerically. The data records are numbered and stored in the sequence of their capture. The *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* will list the geographical names in alphabetical order, as well as feature codes and administrative or geographical area in clear text. This requires, besides a sorting process, a considerable expenditure in storage capacity and computation work.

The alphabetical sorting of the data records is performed by means of the sorting operator of the computer TR 440. The sorting field, which comprises 32 characters, is established during the processing of the name strings after their capture.

As the information on the length of name strings, positions of umlauts, sorting field and so on is also stored in the geographical names data file during the editing of data, only the output of names is required in order to print the *Gazetteer*. As the data can also be reconstructed from the edited name strings at any time, they are not taken over into the data bank of the Information System, in order to save storage capacity. For the time being, therefore, only the Information System data file is used for the preparation of the *Gazetteer*; the use of the information system is restricted at present to such cartographic applications as, for example, the above-mentioned preparation of map lettering.

The further processing of the sorted data records is done by means of the GEODRUCK programme system, which includes, among others, the following individual operations:

(*a*) Insertion of mnemotechnical abbreviations of feature codes;

(*b*) Classification of the statistical key numbers by *Land* (Federal State), *Regierungsbezirk*, *Kreis* (district), town or commune;

(*c*) Classification of the code for geographical features according to the control number of the structure of natural regions and/or hydrographic codes; and

(*d*) Classification of the hydrographic codes according to the receiving hydrography concerned (Rhine, Main, Nidda, Wetter).

In order to provide the correct spellings for the character sequences corresponding to the key numbers, as well as that for the names themselves, the names also had to be processed by capitals, small letters and umlauts and to be stored in such a way that quick and unequivocal access is possible by means of the key numbers.

At present, the *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* is being output on a high-speed printer, equipped for spelling with capitals and small letters, installed in the computation centre of the Gesellschaft für Mathematik und Datenverarbeitung. Before being printed, the text pages must still be reduced.

In the meantime, tests have been performed to bypass the high-speed printer by writing directly on microfilm and then enlarging the images for reproduction. For the future, it is also planned to use an automatically controlled phototypesetting installation.

APPLICATION OF ELECTRONIC DATA PROCESSING (EDP) TO GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

In the German Democratic Republic the use of electronic data processing (EDP) to edit, store and process geographical names has been studied for cartographic purposes. The method developed in the German Democratic Republic for the automated processing of map names includes manual collection and storage as well as automated processing of map names as to content and design, and their graphic reproduction (as proper names, common nouns, abbreviations, letter and number characteristics and so on). By means of a digitizer, the map names are collected manually according to their wording, their plan-position co-ordinates and the parameters required for their processing (according to content and design) and for their graphic reproduction. These information items must allow for (among other processes) the retrieval and updating of the map names; their systematization according to various attributes; the selection and determination of the font parameters of map names for automated graphic reproduction; and changes in the position and the graphic design of the map names according to given rules. For this purpose, every map name is stored in its wording with the relevant parameter part as an independent data set of constant length and structure.

The wording of map names is stored in its clear text. On the basis of previous experience, a sufficient storage capacity is provided for this purpose, which is used differently in accordance with the length of names and filled up with stipulated space characters.

The parameter part has a constant length and contains, in alpha-numeric coding, all data required for the processing of map names as to contents and design and for their graphic reproduction. These data include:

(*a*) Placement co-ordinates for defined points of map names (in most cases for the south-western corner of the rectangle circumscribing the map name, sometimes also its total length), either in the co-ordinate system of the map to be prepared or in an arbitrary co-ordinate system. These co-ordinates are supplemented by coded data concerning the position of the map names in relation to the relevant object. Both elements form the basis for determining or more precisely indicating the position of the map name for graphic reproduction;

(*b*) Data concerning the type and qualitative-quantitative properties (size, importance, rank, administrative affiliation etc.) of the objects described by the map names, as the basis for the automated selection of the map names as well as for the determination and assignment of font parameters according to the rules governing characters;

(*c*) Code numbers or indications of measures for the font parameters (type, colour, height and width, spacing, inclination of font etc.) as the basis for the automated graphic reproduction of map names.

These data sets are supplemented by computer-dependent, computer-oriented specifications and instructions (e.g. markings indicating the beginning of the data set or the end of the punch tape).

From these basic data, and by means of the above-mentioned requirements of relevant computing programmes, the control programmes for automated photocomposition are determined on office digital computers. During this process, the map names to be represented are selected, calculated in their placement co-ordinates by conversion to scale and by exact definition (according to the most suitable position in relation to the described object) and fixed as to their font parameters (according to the particulars wanted). In this connexion, further processes may be automated, e.g. the listing of names and objects by a corresponding systematization of the relevant map names.

By running this control programme in the automatic photocomposer, the map-name original is produced, which, after checking and possible completion by the cartographer, meets all the main requirements.

So far, the testing and application of the automated

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Dr Bauer, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 49

processing of map names have proved their basic suitability, and shown the following advantages:

(*a*) Applicability to both the new production and the updating of maps;

(*b*) High editing reliability and graphic quality; and

(*c*) Considerably reduced time in comparison with the previous manual processing of map names.

It is advisable to connect the generation of a memory for geographic names with the construction of a memory for map names, so that the necessary investments will pay off more quickly and so that several institutions may use these units.

Mainly, two groups of users are covered: producers of maps, and producers of names registers, indexes and registers of objects. Therefore, the placed as well as the non-placed output of geographic names should be regarded, from the very beginning, as a basic condition of the technology of the automated use of the map name memory.

Similarly, there are special requirements concerning the selection of the geographic names.

The following conditions for the output of geographical names follow from these aspects, especially for the indexing to be discussed here:

(*a*) Punch tapes for controlling photocomposers for non-placed photocomposition;

(*b*) Punch tapes as input media for the users' own sorting programmes;

(*c*) Lists containing the total sets or subsets of the contents of the memory of map names.

The production of registers on the basis of the storage of map names requires the sorting of the selected geographic names, but it is advisable to separate the necessary sorting programmes from the selection and output programmes. For the latter, therefore an output of the selected geographical names should be provided, in the code of the EDP equipment used, that can be used as input of the sorting programmes.

AUTOMATED DATA PROCESSING

Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

L'Institut géographique a préparé une carte porteuse de marques destinée à être utilisée comme entrée dans un calculateur électronique aux fins du traitement automatique des données recueillies, ce qui a beaucoup facilité le traitement des données.

Resumen

El Instituto de Estudios Geográficos ha preparado una ficha perforada para su uso en una calculadora electrónica para la elaboración automática de los datos recopilados, que ha facilitado en gran manera los trabajos de elaboración de datos.

*

* *

The Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, prepared a mark card (see Form 1 in annex) for input into an electronic computer, and the geographical names indicated on the 1:25,000-scale topographic maps of the entire area of Sizuoka Ken are recorded on these mark cards.

Because this system was still on an experimental basis and because no concrete method has been finalized for the processing of Kanzi characters, which are indispensable for the indication of Japanese geographical names, the input of Kanzi characters was not taken into consideration. Instead, the readings are inputted in the form of Hiragana characters.

The information recorded on the mark card includes, among other data, the pronunciation of the name of a given place; its kind; the name of *si*, *mati* or *mura* (with location indicated by latitude and longitude); the number of the area, sectioned by 30-second intervals of latitude and 45-second intervals of longitude (this area is known as a "standard area mesh"); the name of the topographic map; the year of preparation of the topographic map; survey data; and the date of preparation of the card. Of these pieces of information, those which may be inputted into the electronic computer are the pronunciation, kind, name of *si*, *mati* or *mura*, standard area mesh, year of preparation of the topographic map, survey data and date of preparation of the card.

Form 2 (see annex), a slight modification of the Form 1 mark card, is used in recording geographical names by kind.

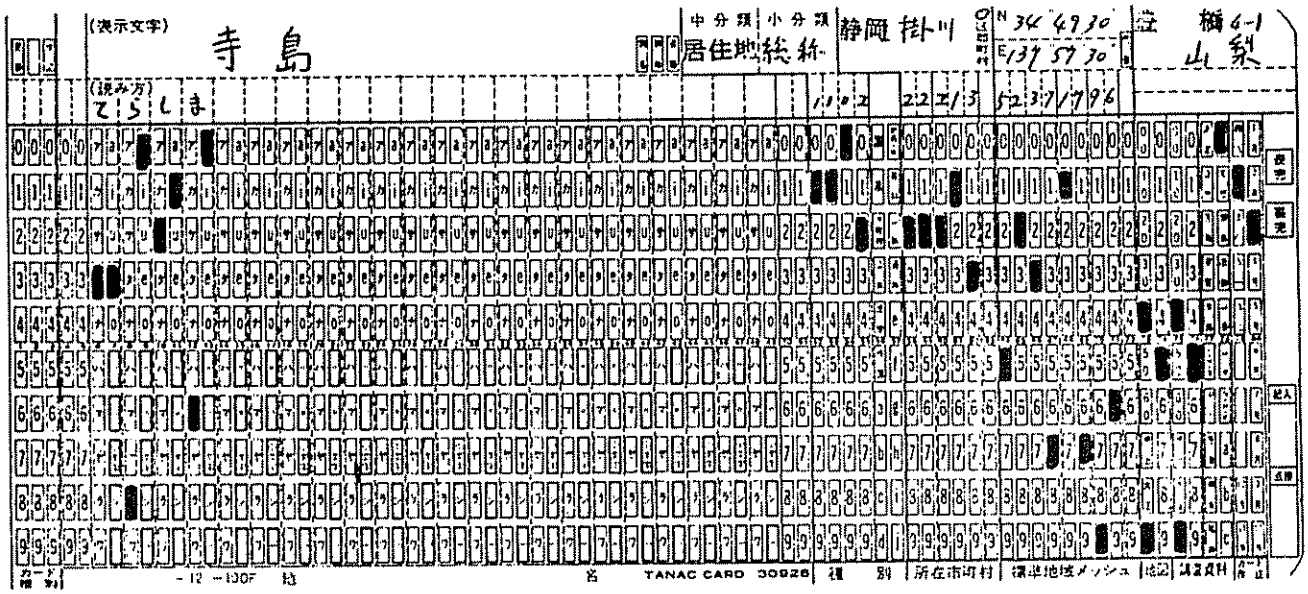
This work was carried out when a wide variety of information was being converted into data that could be inputted into the computer, and mark cards were prepared at that time for mountains (15,732), lakes (11,584) and islands (5,281).

On the basis of the results of this work, an attempt was made to study Kanzi printers, necessary for writing in Kanzi characters as well as codes and symbols. At the same time, a study is under way on the merits and disadvantages of input of standard area meshes, latitudes and longitudes.

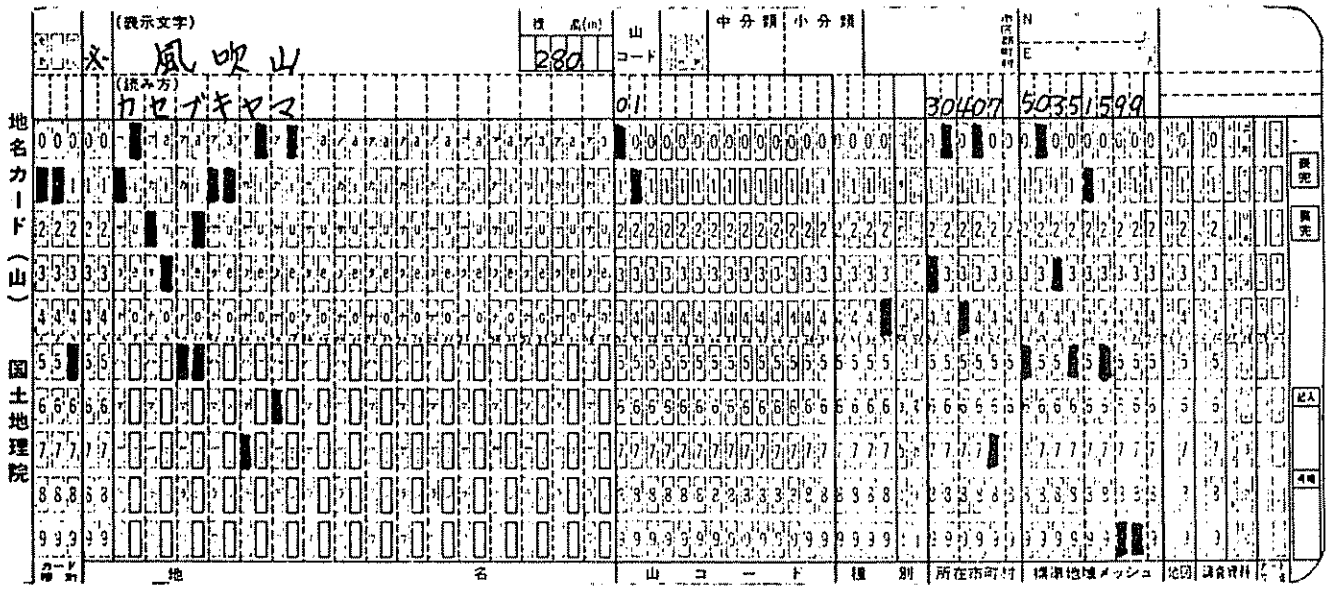
* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.57.

ADP MARK CARDS, FORM 1 AND FORM 2

Form 1



Form 2



LE SYSTÈME *LAKHDAR* DE COMPOSITION ARABE STANDARD ET LA NOMENCLATURE ASV-CODAR*

Rapport présenté par le Maroc

A. Le système *Lakhdar* de composition standard

Le système *Lakhdar* est un ensemble de signes destinés à la fabrication de caractères typographiques, de matrices ou de types à l'usage de tous moyens de composition de textes et, en particulier, ceux de l'imprimerie : typographie manuelle, composition mécanique à chaud et à froid.

Reproduisant l'alphabet arabe total (voyelles incluses) sans modification majeure de l'esthétique calligraphique habituelle et par un nombre limité de caractères, le système, qui comprend, outre les lettres et les signes de voyelles, les chiffres et la ponctuation, permet de constituer des polices standards dans les normes mêmes du caractère latin, donc adaptables aux procédés et aux machines conçus sur ces normes.

B. La nomenclature ASV-CODAR

ASV	Arabe standard voyellé. Police ou jeu de caractères arabes permettant la composition de textes voyellés, non voyellés ou partiellement voyellés.
CODAR	Code arabe. Codage binaire de sous-ensembles de caractères formés à partir du système ASV et permettant son introduction dans l'informatique et la transmission de données.
ASV-CODAR	Système composé par l'ensemble ASV et par les codages binaires de ses sous-ensembles définis selon des critères de priorité linguistique (niveaux de concision).

Description

Le système ASV-CODAR est un ensemble de caractères destinés à composer et à transmettre des textes en langue arabe, selon les procédés et les techniques existants dans les domaines de l'imprimerie, de la dactylographie, de l'informatique, de la transmission de données et des télécommunications.

Le nombre total des caractères composant le système (107 signes comprenant les lettres arabes, les voyelles, les chiffres et les signes de ponctuation) ne dépasse pas les normes des jeux de caractères des alphabets internationaux normalisés. Comme ces derniers, le jeu total des caractères est réductible jusqu'à un niveau de concision minimal selon les contraintes imposées par le matériel.

Normes numériques des alphabets internationaux : de 110 à 32 signes;

Normes numériques de l'ASV-CODAR : de 107 à 32 signes.

Une lettre, une forme, un caractère

Les caractères ASV répondent aux normes graphiques internationales imposées par les techniques existantes : alignement sur la ligne d'écriture, normalisation des largeurs et des hauteurs des signes, juxtaposition linéaire stricte. Le respect de ces impératifs graphiques a permis de réaliser l'unicité des formes de lettres et donc de réduire le nombre de caractères de composition de textes arabes aux normes numériques internationales.

Les caractères alphabétiques de l'ASV sont réalisables dans tous les styles de l'écriture arabe traditionnelle (*naskhi, coufigue, roqa*, etc) et se plient aux contraintes, graphiques de techniques spéciales telles que la visualisation sur écran cathodique.

Alphabet latin et alphabet arabe compatibles

Pour l'informatique et la transmission de données, l'ensemble ASV s'articule en sous-ensembles imbriqués comportant des codages binaires compatibles avec les codages des alphabets internationaux en caractères latins.

---

* Le texte original complet de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.92 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à l'Institut d'études et de recherches pour l'arabisation, B.P. 430, Rabat, Maroc.

Un autre rapport, présenté également par le Maroc, intitulé "Lexique de cartographie français-arabe", paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.91 et qui n'est pas reproduit dans la présente publication, peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction de la conservation foncière et des travaux topographiques, Ministère de l'agriculture et de la réforme agraire, Rabat, Maroc.

AGENDA ITEM 12—POINT 12 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 12 DEL PROGRAMA

LES ASPECTS PRATIQUES DE LA DÉFINITION DU "NOM GÉOGRAPHIQUE"

Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

A geographical name comprises two elements, one generic, the other specific. An appellative is a geographical name containing a generic element with a specific function. The generic term and the generic feature are usually rendered by the same word. In gazetteers, geographical names and descriptions of geographical entities should appear in separate columns. The first element in the specific term should be used to determine alphabetical order. In this regard, the Québec Geographical Commission follows the recommendations of the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. Standardizing the meaning of generic terms within specific linguistic areas is of prime importance. Considerable care should be taken in standardizing generic terms so as to take account of variations in usage resulting from linguistic development and cultural dispersion.

Resumen

Un nombre geográfico contiene elementos tanto genéricos como específicos. Un apelativo es un nombre geográfico que comprende un elemento genérico con una función específica. Por lo comùn, una misma palabra expresa al término genérico y al ente. En los nomenclátores geográficos los nombres geográficos y la descripción del accidente deberían figurar en distintas columnas. La primera parte del término específico debe determinar el orden alfabético. A este respecto, la Comisión Geográfica de Quebec sigue las recomendaciones de las conferencias de las Naciones Unidas sobre la normalización de nombres geográficos. Es esencial la normalización del significado de la terminología genérica dentro de zonas lingüísticas seleccionadas. La normalización de los términos genéricos debe hacerse con mucho cuidado para respetar los usos divergentes debidos a la evolución lingüística y la dispersión cultural.

*

* *

Traditionnellement, le "nom géographique" (toponyme ou choronyme) est défini comme "un nom propre de lieu". Cette définition est insuffisante pour délimiter, dans la chaîne parlée ou écrite, où commence et où finit le nom géographique. Cette question n'a pas qu'un intérêt théorique puisque d'elle dépendent plusieurs opérations liées à la normalisation des noms géographiques telles que le classement alphabétique des noms, l'usage des particules, le format de présentation des répertoires et l'application des règles de traduction des éléments des noms géographiques.

La définition du nom géographique pose des difficultés logiques au point de vue grammatical. D'abord, on dit que le toponyme est un "nom propre de lieu". Un nom propre est reconnu comme celui qui ne s'applique qu'à un être, qu'à une chose. Or, il existe un grand nombre de *Paris* et autant de *London*. Des linguistes contournent cette difficulté en considérant ces séries comme des homonymes.

En fait, pour désigner un lieu unique, on utilise soit un seul mot qui peut être un nom commun ou un nom propre (*LeCap, Moskva*), soit une expression composée d'un nom commun et d'un nom propre (le *lac d'Annecy*), ou encore d'un nom commun et d'un autre élément grammatical commun qui peut être un nom, un adjectif ou autre (le *Mont-Blanc*).

Autrement, dit, lorsqu'on dit que le toponyme est un nom propre de lieu, on ne traduit pas vraiment la réalité du nom géographique. Par ailleurs, on simplifie à l'excès lorsqu'on dit qu'un nom géographique est composé d'un nom commun et d'un nom propre. Le nom géographique, en principe, est composé d'un élément générique, le plus souvent un nom commun (*lac, rivière...*), et d'un élément spécifique, qui peut être un nom propre mais pas nécessairement (*Laval, Rouge...*). Certains auteurs, dont quelques grands toponymistes de l'école française, considèrent que seul l'élément spécifique constitue le toponyme, alors que, pour d'autres, l'élément générique est synonyme de l' "appellatif"[1] ou l'"entité". Nous considérons que ces confusions peuvent être nocives pour les fins de la normalisation.

D'abord, le nom géographique contient toujours un élément qui joue un rôle "spécifique" de désignation ou d'identification : c'est l'élément spécifique, même s'il est constitué d'un mot qui, dans la langue courante, est un terme générique (exemple : *Iles*, dans le toponyme *lac des*

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par Henri Dorion, professeur de géographie à l'Université Laval, Canada, et directeur du groupe d'étude de choronymie et de terminologie géographique, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.30

[1] Voir *Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. 2, *Travaux de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.69.I.8), p. 125

Iles). Par ailleurs, le toponyme comprend le plus souvent un "élément générique" qui a la fonction de catégoriser le lieu nommé; c'est un nom commun qui peut avoir retenu ou non son sens originel.

L'"entité" (*feature*) est le mot qui définit le genre d'accident géographique ou d'espace. Ce mot ne fait pas partie du toponyme, bien que le terme générique de celui-ci peut être le même mot que l'entité: le *lac Côté* (toponyme où "lac" est le terme générique et "Côté" le terme spécifique) constitue le nom d'un "lac" donné (entité).

Tel n'est pas le cas du *Cap Nord* (générique et spécifique) qui est une île (entité). Il peut donc arriver que le terme générique ne caractérise pas exactement le lieu nommé. La différence entre le terme générique et l'entité peut d'ailleurs tenir, non pas d'une mauvaise description ou identification géographique, mais d'une simple question dialectale. Ainsi, dans *Plée de Saint-Charles*, le terme "plée" n'est pas reconnu comme un terme générique courant, et le répertoire notera comme entité le terme *marais* (voir l'annexe). On comprend dès lors l'importance de la recommandation plus d'une fois formulée à ces conférences d'indiquer clairement les "entités" dans les répertoires de noms géographiques, préférablement dans des colonnes à part.

Cette nécessité est d'autant plus grande qu'il existe des toponymes dépourvus de terme générique: *Athènes* (entité: ville), comme il existe d'ailleurs des noms géographiques formés d'un seul élément, de nature générique mais à fonction spécifique; c'est ce qu'on appelle proprement des "appellatifs": *Le Brûlé* est un toponyme formé d'un simple terme générique; comme il s'agit d'un brûlé en particulier, le mot a une fonction spécifique (en d'autres termes, *Le Brûlé* est un nom propre). Encore là, appellatifs et entités peuvent différer. C'est le cas de l'exemple que l'on vient de donner: *Le Brûlé* est en fait le nom d'un marais (entité). Mais il arrive souvent qu'une île n'ait pas d'autre nom que l'*Ile*, l'*Ilet* ou l'*Ilette*.

Il résulte de ces considérations que, tant pour des raisons logiques que pour des raisons pratiques, le nom géographique (toponyme ou choronyme) est composé autant de l'élément générique, lorsqu'il existe, que de l'élément spécifique, même si celui-ci est grammaticalement un nom générique. Un peu à la manière des noms de personnes, composés de prénom, nom et quelquefois patronyme, les noms géographiques sont le plus souvent des expressions dont aucun des éléments constitutifs ne doit être rejeté.

Il y a des exceptions, cependant, dont seuls les usages particuliers à chaque langue peuvent rendre compte. Par exemple, en langue française, les hydronymes, et tout particulièrement les potamonymes (noms de rivières), s'emploient sans terme générique (*la Seine, le Danube*); par ailleurs, si l'élément générique est un substantif précédé d'une particule ou d'un adjectif (*Rivière aux Outardes, Lac Jaune*), on conservera le terme générique dans la forme parlée comme dans la forme écrite, y compris les répertoires.

Des questions de détails s'ajoutent au principe énoncé. Par exemple, l'article qui précède le terme générique doit-il être inclus dans le toponyme? Là-dessus les solutions varient de langue à langue et de pays à pays.

Reliée à ce problème est la question de l'ordonnancement alphabétique. Cela, de la manière suivante: le principe de classification alphabétique veut que l'on ordonne les noms géographiques par le terme spécifique. Il faut dire que pour bien des langues, comme pour l'anglais en général, ce principe n'a pas de large application puisqu 'en général, l'élément spécifique précède l'élément générique. Ce n'est pas le cas du français, par exemple, où pour respecter le principe du classement il faut intervertir les éléments, donc choisir un endroit de coupure entre le générique et le spécifique. En général, on ordonne les noms par le premier élément "signifiant" de la partie spécifique : *Ile de la Commune de Berthier* sera classé alphabétiquement selon l'inversion: *Commune de Berthier, Ile de la* (voir l'annexe). En anglais, on utilise une virgule pour signifier l'inversion : dans les répertoires, *Mitchell Lake* et *Mitchell, Mount* correspondent aux formes courantes:*Mitchell Lake* et *Mount Mitchell*.

Ce ne sont là que quelques exemples pour illustrer des principes très généraux. On pourrait les multiplier, surtout si l'on élaborait dans plus de détails les règles appliquées par les différentes autorités toponymiques quant à l'écriture, au classement, aux techniques d'inversion des éléments toponymiques, à l'emploi des particules, etc.

Nous croyons que le rappel des quelques précisions élémentaires que nous venons de donner relativement à la définition du "nom géographique" et de quelques termes reliés à la toponymie[2] permet d'appliquer plus facilement certaines des recommandations des Conférences sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, notamment quant au format de présentation des répertoires géographiques. Rappelons, en conclusion, certains points en conformité avec ces recommandations.

1. Un nom géographique comprend en principe à la fois un élément générique et un élément spécifique;

2. Il ne faut pas confondre "terme générique" et "appellatif" qui est un nom géographique composé d'un élément générique à qui l'usage a donné une fonction spécifique;

3. Il ne faut pas confondre "terme générique" et "entité", même si, dans un grand nombre de noms géographiques, les deux sont exprimés par un même mot;

4. Dans les répertoires, il faut dégager en colonnes distinctes les noms géographiques et les entités qu'ils désignent;

5. La classification alphabétique des noms géographiques se fait d'après le premier terme "signifiant" de la partie spécifique du nom géographique (au Québec, l'autorité toponymique a entrepris la révision de son répertoire pour répondre au vœu des recommandations des Conférences des Nations Unies à cet égard);

[2] Ces définitions et environ 400 autres ont été consignées dans un ouvrage d'Henri Dorion et Jean Poirier, *Lexique des termes utiles à l'étude des noms de lieux*, Québec, Presses de l'Université Laval, 1974.

6. La normalisation des termes géographiques vers l'unification de sens de ces termes à l'intérieur d'aires linguistiques données devrait toucher essentiellement les mots utilisés comme entités;

7. La normalisation des termes génériques à proprement parler devrait être faite avec beaucoup de prudence pour respecter les usages souvent divergents que l'évolution linguistique et la fragmentation ont engendrés.

Annexe

Nom	*Entité*	*Localisation*	*Position*		*Carte*
Aananiàvik, Pointe	*Pointe*	*Territoire du* Nouveau-Québec	58 35	70 02	24 L/09E
Adolphe, Ruisseau des	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Matane, *Canton de* Romieu	48 59	66 39	22 B/15E
Brûlé, Le	*Marais*	*Comté de* Brome, *Canton de* Potton	45 03	72 20	31 H/01W
Commune de Berthier, Ile de la	*Ile*	*Comté de* Berthier	46 04	73 11	31 N/11E
Corris	*Lieu-dit*	*Comté de* Richmond, *Canton de* Cleveland	45 37	72 05	31 H/09E
Côté, Lac	*Lac*	*Comtés de* Gaspé-Ouest *et de* Matane *Cantons de* Courcelette *et de* Faribault	47 35	66 32	22 B/15
Grande Coupe, La	*Escarpement*	*Voir* Muraille, La	48 32	64 14	22 A/09E
Grande Décharge, La	*Ruisseau*	*Voir* Saint-Antoine, Ruisseau	46 02	72 53	31 I/02E
Havre, Ile du	*Ile*	*Voir* Portneuf, Barre de	48 37	69 05	22 C/11E
Le Fer-à-Cheval	*Lieu-dit*	*Comté de* Chicoutimi, *Canton de* Bagot	48 19	70 57	22 D/07W
Loutre, Petite rivière de la	*Rivière*	*Comté de* Saguenay	49 05	62 00	12 F/04E
Martineau, Chutes à	*Chutes*	*Voir* Vieux Moulin, Chutes du	47 02	71 19	21 M/03W
Mercouiller, Crique	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Champlain, *Canton de* Radnor	46 42	72 44	31 I/10E
Merville, Lac	*Lac*	*Territoire du* Nouveau-Québec	55 09	74 30	23 P/02W
Milieu, Branche du	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	45 26	73 10	31 H/06E
Pain de Sucre, Le	*Colline*	*Comté de* Joliette	46 16	73 33	31 I/05E
Roland-Lemire, Ruisseau	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	46 06	72 42	31 I/02E
Roselets, Les	*Rochers*	*Comté de* Saguenay	49 48	64 20	22 H/16W
Saint-Charles, Plée de	*Marais*	*Comtés de* Lévis *et de* Bellechasse	49 13	63 00	21 L/14
Saint-Joseph-de-la-Rivière-Bleue	*Village*	*Voir* Rivière-Bleue *(Municipalité)*	47 26	69 03	21 N/06
Saint-Laurent-du-Fleuve	*Localité*	*Comté de* Verchères	45 56	73 12	31 H/14
Zénophile-Larose, Ruisseau	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	45 56	72 30	31 H/15E

JAPANESE GEOGRAPHICAL TERMINOLOGY

Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Il n'existe pas d'ouvrage complet de terminologie géographique japonaise. L'Institut géographique japonais a donné la définition de quelques termes géographiques indispensables pour l'établissement de la carte des noms géographiques de régions naturelles.

Resumen

No existe una colección completa, en forma de libro, de los términos geográficos japoneses. El Instituto de Estudios Geográficos elaboró definiciones de algunos términos geográficos esenciales al preparar el Mapa de Nombres Geográficos de Regiones Naturales.

No comprehensive collection of Japanese geographical terms is available. However, when the naming of natural regions was undertaken in 1954, definitions were given for individual geographical terms (see the paper entitled "Standardization of geographical names in Japan", under agenda item 8 of the present publication).

The topographical terms associated with the seas are generally based on those defined under the intra-office regulations of the Hydrographic Department. They are in conformity with those defined in the Hydrographic Dictionary published by the International Hydrographic Bureau (IHB). The topographical terms associated with the sea bottom are used on the basis of the definitions for use on GEBCO, fifth edition, adopted by the GEBCO Sub-Committee on Geographical Names and Nomenclature of Ocean Bottom Features.

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.58.

TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by China*

The following technical terminology employed in the standardization of geographical names was prepared by the China Division of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names:

语言，语文／*language*

人们用语音表达意思、互相交际的工具。“语言”一般包括它的书面形式。但在与“文字”并举时只指口语。

口语／*speech*

口头交际使用的语言，就是说的话。

语言区／*linguistic community*

其中的人使用某一种方言、某一种语言或某一种文字系统，彼此容易相互了解。

口语区／*speech community*

其中的人说某一种方言或某一种语言，彼此容易相互了解。

官方的／*official*

法定机构正式认可的。

官方语言／*official language*

在某一法定区域内具有官方地位的语言。

非官方的／*non-official*

未经法定机构正式认可的。

非官方语言／*non-official language*

在某一法定区域内不具有官方地位的语言。

国语／*national language*

在全国范围内具有官方地位的语言。

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 63

/...

地区语／*state language*

在一个国家的部分地区内具有官方地位的语言，在全国范围内并不具有这种地位。

标准语／*standard language*

符合法定条件或公认条件的语言，包括口语及其书面形式。

方言／*dialect*

方言是语言在地理上的分支，有语音、词汇、语法特点。

文语／*literary language*

在正式场合使用的语言，包括口语及其书面形式。

俗语／*colloquial language*

在非正式场合使用的语言。包括口语及其书面形式。俗语和当地的标准语或文语有相当差别（假如该地区有标准语或文语）。

主体语言／*principal language*

使用多种语言的地区里最通行的语言。

交际语／*vehicular language*

不同语言区的成员之间交际时使用的语言。

混杂语／*pidgin*

本地人和外国人都没有学会对方语言时使用的一种混杂的语言。根据本地话的语法，运用外来语的词汇，并在语音上加以简化，使之接近本地音。这种语言使用范围有限，只作为辅助语使用，并且稳定性不高。

混合语／ *creole*

从混杂语来的稳定的语言，是某一地区的唯一语言或主体语言。

多语种注记／ *multilingual lettering*

同一幅地图上的各个国家的地名依据各国自己认可的法定拼法来注记。

语音／ *sound*

语言的声音，就是人说话的声音。

音位／ *phoneme*

一个语言中能够区别意义的最小的语音单位（包括能区别意义的声调、轻重、长短等）。

音值／ *allophone*

有的音位有几个读法。同一音位的几个读法之一叫音值。

词素／ *morpheme*

语言中最小的有意义的单位叫词素。词素有特定的语音格式和语法功能。在汉语里，通常一个字就是一个词素。

词素变体／ *allomorph*

有的词素有几个形式，这些形式语音结构不同。同一词素的几个形式之一叫词素变体。

虚词／ *particle*

用来确定别的词素（或其他语言格式）的语法功能的词素。

冠词／ *article*

用来标明别的词素（或其他语言格式）是有定还是无定的词素。

标音／*transcription*

1.用一种文字系统（或音标）来记录语言的语音成份。

2.这种记录的结果。

标音法／*transcription key*

一种对照表，列举某语言的语音成份，及其在一种文字系统（或音标）里的写法。

转写／*transliteration*

1.用一种文字系统的书写符号来表示其他文字系统的书写符号，如用罗马字母表示俄文字母。

2.这种处理的结果。

转写法／*transliteration key*

一种对照表，列举某语言书写符号及其如何改变为另一种书写符号。

转换／*conversion*

标音和转写的总称。

翻译／*Translation*

1.把一种语言文字的词句用另一种语言文字表达出来。

2.、这种过程的结果。

书写符号／*graphic symbol*

记录语言用的书写单位（就其个体而言），如个别的汉字与罗马

字母。

文字／*script*（法文本／*ecriture*）

记录语言的书写符号，就其整体而言，如汉字、罗马字母。

文字系统／*writing system, orthography*

（法文本／*systeme ecriture*）

指文字的各种系统。如拼音文字（如罗马字）、音节文字（如梵文和日本文的假名）、词素文字（如汉字）。

字母／*letter*

拼音文字最小的书写单位。特指罗马字母。

字母表／*alphabet*

一套特定的书写符号，可以用来表示一种语言的语音成份。

字母顺序／*alphabetical sequence*

字母表里字母或书写符号的顺序。

变音符号／*diacritical mark*

不自成单位的书写符号，本身不表示音位。附加在一个字母或字之上来表示语音的变化。

元音附点／*vowel point*

阿拉伯文或希伯来文里表示元音的符号。

罗马字化／*romanization*

用罗马字母记录语言的语音成份或转写非罗马字母的文字。

拼法／*spelling*

使用书写符号（多指拼音字母）表示词句的方式。

音节／*syllable*

一个或几个音位组成的语音单位。其中包含一个比较响亮的中心（往往是元音）。在汉语里，一般地说，一个汉字就是一个音节，一个音节写成一个汉字。

音节文字／*syllabary*

一种拼音文字，它的字母表示整个音节。例如梵文和日本文的假名。

二合字母／*digraph*

两个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

三合字母／*trigraph*

三个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

四合字母／*tetragraph*

四个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

字／*character*

罗马字母以外的书写单位。

或体，或体字／*variant character*

一个文字系统里，音义相同而写法不同的字。

简体，简体字／*abbreviated character*

写法比较简单的或体。

文字规范化／*normalization*

1.制定文字写法的规范。

2.依照文字规范写字。

印刷格式/ *printing form*

指印刷文本的尺寸、字体、行款等。

书写格式/ *format*

指书写文本的尺寸、字体、行款等。

上下文/ *context*

地形/ *topography*

一个星体的表面形状或其一部分。

地形要素/ *topographic feature* (24, "*topographic entity*")

任何星体表面可识别的部分。

地物/ *geographical feature* (23, "*geographical entity*")

地球表面可识别的部分。

星体地物/ *extraterrestrial feature*

地球以外任何星体表面景物。

人工地物/ *cultural feature*

由人力造成或加以重大改变的地物。

自然地物／*natural feature* (3.0, "*physical feature*")

并非由人力造成或加以重大改变的地物。

海底地物／*undersea feature*

海洋之下的地球表面景物。

月球上地名／*lunar name*

月球表面可以识别的部分的名称。

名称／*name*

说的或写的语言单位，用来指某个事物。

通名／*generic term*

地名中表示该地名所指事物类别的字眼。这类字眼用于各种地名时有相同的意义。如“潮河、白河、子牙河”的“河”，“甘肃省、安徽省”的“省”。

通名部分／*generic element*

地名中由通名构成的部分，如“潮河、白河、子牙河”的“河”，“开封市、邯郸市”的“市”。通名部分也可以包括“修饰语、冠词、虚词”，如“潮白新河”的“新河”（“新”修饰“河”），“中山南路”的“南路”（“南”修饰“路”）。

专名部分／*specific element*

地名中减去通名部分就是专名部分。如“甘肃省、安徽省”的“甘肃、安徽”。

地名／*geographical name* (*place name*; *toponym*)

地物的名称。

别名／*allonym*

用来指同一个地物的几个名称之一。

标准名／*standardized name*

法定机构认可的名称。

又名／*alternate*

适用于同一地物的几个标准名称之一。

非标准名／*variant name*

山岳名称／*oronym*

山地、山脉及山峰等的名称。

水文名称／*hydronym*

水文事物的名称。

居民点名称／*populated place name*

外来地名／*exonym*

某个语言里的某个地名，这个语言在当地并无官方地位，并且这个地名又和当地官方语言所用地名不同。

惯用的／*conventional*

通行习惯认可的。

惯用名称／*conventional name*

某一语言区里广泛使用的一种名称，其写法与当地官方写法不同。

专名学／*onomastics*

研究专名的科学。

地名学／*toponymy*

研究地名的科学。

地名录／*gazetteer*

所列地名有比较简单情况介绍的地名表。

地名索引／*gazetteer index* (39, "*place name index*"; *toponymic index*)

根据地图或正文中出现的地名编纂成的地名表，其所列条目有比较简单的情况介绍，读者凭此可找到该条目在地图里或正文中的出处。

术语／*designation* (92, "*designatory term*")

使用范围有明确规定的词。

定名者／*names authority*

在地名方面有决定权的个人或团体。

图上名称／*map name*

地图上某地物的名称，可能与文献上的名称、当地的名称不同。

图上说明性注记／*map information*

地图上地名以外表示地形特征的文字。

地理词典／*geographical dictionary*

收集地理方面的术语、名称，并加以解释的工具书。

词汇／*glossary*

收集某一范围的词语，并加以解释的工具书。

词典／*lexicon*

收集词语并加以解释的工具书。

字典／*logographic lexicon*

这里的字指汉字一类的词素文字，一般地说，每个字代表一个词素。

A GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names*

Résumé

Ce glossaire a été établi aux fins des discussions et des exposés où il doit être traité de questions de toponymie. Il n'a pas de valeur normative, mais vise plutôt à fournir des indications dont on puisse s'inspirer pour s'exprimer avec plus de clarté et de précision.

Il est bien connu que le champ sémantique d'un terme peut varier d'une personne à l'autre et d'un groupe à l'autre. De même, la signification de mots de même origine a tendance à varier plus fortement encore d'une langue à l'autre. En outre, le champ sémantique des mots change souvent avec l'usage et avec le temps. Il n'est donc pas possible d'éviter les délimitations arbitraires, mais l'on s'est efforcé de les réduire au minimum.

Pour la plupart des entrées, des équivalences sont fournies en anglais, en français et en espagnol, et chaque terme est défini en français. Lorsque plusieurs synonymes sont mentionnés, ils le sont sans ordre de préférence.

Un index a été également établi pour aider les usagers à retrouver les termes qui les intéressent, sans introduire trop de renvois dans le glossaire proprement dit.

Resumen

Las definiciones de terminología que a continuación se presentan están destinadas al uso y discusión en el campo de la toponimia. Se presentan, no como reglas de uso obligatorio, sino más bien como pautas que pueden servir para hacer más clara y precisa la comunicación.

Es un hecho generalmente reconocido que el alcance semántico de un término dado puede variar de persona a persona y de comunidad a comunidad. También está reconocido que términos afines tienden a variar en mayor grado, por lo que a su significado se refiere, de un idioma a otro. Además, la extensión semántica de los términos cambia a veces con el uso y con el transcurso del tiempo. Aunque bajo tales circunstancias no es posible evitar del todo delineaciones arbitrarias, se ha realizado un serio esfuerzo para reducirlas al mínimo.

Cada definición va encabezada por la palabra española, seguida por sus equivalentes inglés y francés. Las definiciones se dan en español. En aquellos casos en que se indica sinonimia entre dos o más términos, no existe orden preferencial alguno.

Al final se incluye un índice de los términos ingleses y franceses, destinado a facilitar su localización en la lista de palabras y definiciones españolas, sin introducir en ésta excesivo número de referencias.

*

* *

The following definitions of terminology are intended for utilization in discussion and exposition in the field of toponymy. They are set forth not as prescriptive rules of usage but rather as guidelines, which may serve to enhance clarity and precision in communication.

It is generally recognized that the semantic range of any given term may vary from person to person and from community to community. It is further recognized that cognate terms tend to vary in meaning to a still larger degree from language to language. Furthermore, the semantic ranges of terms often change with usage and with the passage of time. Although it is not possible in such circumstances wholly to avoid arbitrary delineations, a sincere effort has been made to reduce these to a minimum.

Equivalent terms are provided for most entries in English, French and Spanish, and the definition of each term is given in English. Where synonymy of two or more terms is indicated, no order of preference is intended.

An index has been included in order to aid users in locating particular terms without introducing an excessive number of cross-references in the main body of the definitions.

* The original text of this paper appeared as documents E/CONF 69/L. 1 and Add. 1.

* * *

TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

English	*French*	*Spanish*

1. *abbreviated character*
   See *Character, abbreviated*.

2. *allograph* — *allographe* — *alógrafo*
   One of the particular representations of a grapheme (see *grapheme*).

3. *allomorph* — *allomorphe* — *alómorfo*
   One of two or more differing phonological manifestations of a given morpheme (see *morpheme*).

English	French	Spanish

4. *allonym* — *allonyme* — *alónimo*
One of two or more names employed in reference to a single topographic feature.

5. *allophone* — *allophone* — *alófono*
A phonetic variant of a phoneme.

6. *alphabet* — *alphabet* — *alfabeto*
A specific set of graphic symbols that may be employed in representation of the phonological elements of a language.

7. *alphabet, transcription* — *alphabet de transcription* — *alfabeto de transcripción*
An alphabet that may be employed in the process of transcription (see *transcription*).

8. *alphabet, transliteration* — *alphabet de translittération* — *alfabeto de transliteración*
An alphabet that may be employed in the process of transliteration (see *transliteration*).

9. *alphabetical sequence*
See *sequence, alphabetical*.

10. *alternate name*
See *name, alternate*.

11. *article* — *article* — *artículo*
A morpheme that makes explicit the definite or indefinite nature of another morpheme or morphemes.

12. *authority, names* — *autorité toponymique* — *autoridad de nombres geográficos*
A person or body assigned power of decision in toponymic matters by a legally constituted entity.

13. *character* — *caractère* — *carácter*
A segmental graphic symbol particularly of a script other than Roman script (see *letter*).

14. *character, abbreviated* — *caractère abrégé* — *carácter abreviado*
A variant character that is less complex than another and that resembles it in some particular (see *character, variant*).

15. *character, modified* — *caractère modifié* — *carácter modificado*
See *character, variant* and *character, abbreviated*.

16. *character, variant* — (—) — *carácter optativo*
One of two or more characters employed in a writing system in representation of the same phonological and/or morphological item or items.

17. *colloquial language*
See *language, colloquial*.

18. *community, linguistic* — *communauté linguistique* — *comunidad lingüística*
The totality of those individuals who communicate with relative ease in a single dialect, language or writing system.

19. *community, speech* — (—) — *comunidad de hablantes, o de habla*
The totality of those individuals who communicate orally with relative ease in a single dialect or language.

20. *context* — *contexte* — *contexto*
The body of material within which a particular item appears.

21. *conventional* — *usuel* — *convencional o usual*
That which is sanctioned by current and widespread usage.

22. *conventional name*
See *name, conventional*.

23. *conversion* *conversion* *conversión*
The process of recording in terms of a given writing system the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language, or the graphic symbols of another writing system (see *transcription* and *transliteration*).

24. *creole* *créole* *lengua criolla*
A stable form of speech, derived from a pidgin, which has become the sole or principal language of a linguistic community.

25. *cultural feature*
See *feature, cultural*.

26. *descriptive term*
See *term, descriptive*.

27. *designation* *désignation* *designación*
A term employed in such a manner as to encompass a specific range of feature types.

28. *designatory term*
See *term, designatory*.

29. *diacritical mark*
See *mark, diacritical*.

30. *dialect* *dialecte* *dialecto*
A variety of a language which is distinguished by phonological and/or morphological characteristics that give it a distinctive identity.

31. *dictionary, geographical* *dictionnaire géographique* *diccionario geográfico*
A list of terms and/or names pertaining to the field of geography, which presents relatively extensive and definitive information concerning the items listed.

32. *diglossia* *diglossie* *diglosia*
A relatively stable language situation, in which in addition to the primary dialect of a language, which may include a standard or regional standards, there is a very divergent, highly codified, often grammatically more complex, superposed variety, the vehicle of a large and respected body of written literature, heir of an earlier period or in another speech community, which is learned largely by formal education and may be used for written and formal spoken purposes, but is not used by any sector of the community for ordinary conversation (after C. Ferguson, 1959).

33. *digraph* *digraphe* *dígrafo*
Two letters or characters that are together employed in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

34. *diphthong* *diphtongue* *diptongo*
A combination of vocalic elements of which only one is the nucleus of a syllable.

35. *element, generic* *élément générique* *elemento genérico*
That part of a name which consists of a generic term, and which may include modifiers, articles, and/or particles as well (see *term, generic*).

36. *element, specific* *élément spécifique* *elemento específico*
That portion of a name which does not contain a generic element (see *element, generic*).

37. *entity, geographical* *objet géographique* *entidad geográfica*
See *feature, geographical*.

38. *entity, topographic* *objet topographique* *entidad topográfica*
See *feature, topographic*.

39. *exonym* *exonyme* *exónimo*
A geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where that language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated.

40. *extraterrestrial topographic feature*
See *feature, extraterrestrial topographic*.

41. *feature, cultural* (—) *accidente geográfico artificial*

A topographic feature made or significantly modified by human effort.

42. *feature, extraterrestrial* *accident topographique extra-terrestre* *accidente topográfico extra-terrestre*

On any planet or satellite other than the earth, a portion of the surface that has a recognizable identity.

43. *feature, geographical* *accident géographique* *accidente geográfico*

A portion of the surface of the earth that has a recognizable identity.

44. *feature, hydrographic* *élément hydrographique* *accidente hidrográfico*

A topographic feature that consists of water and/or of recognizable interfaces between a body of water and one or more of its boundaries.

45. *feature, natural* (—) *accidente natural*

A topographic feature not made or significantly modified by human effort.

46. *feature, physical* (—) *accidente físico*
See *feature, natural*.

47. *feature, topographic* *accident topographique* *accidente topográfico*

A portion of the surface of any planet or satellite that has a recognizable identity.

48. *feature, undersea* (—) *accidente submarino*

A portion of that part of the earth which lies directly beneath an ocean or sea, and which has a recognizable identity.

49. *feature name*
See *name, feature*.

50. *form, graphic* *graphie* *grafía*

Written letter(s) or character(s), including any markers and diacritical marks, that represent a linguistic item.

51. *form, printing* *présentation typographique* *presentación tipográfica*

The size, shape and style of the graphic items in a printed document.

52. *format* *présentation générale* *formato*

The size, shape and general arrangement of a written document.

53. *gazetteer* *nomenclature toponymique* (—)

A list of toponyms that presents relatively brief information regarding the items listed.

54. *index gazetteer*
See *gazetteer, index*.

55. *international geographical name standardization*
See *standardization, international geographical name*.

56. *key, romanization* *tableau de romanisation* *clave de romanización*

A table that sets forth the graphic symbols of a non-Roman writing system together with corresponding graphic symbols of one or more Roman writing system(s).

57. *key, transcription* *tableau de transcription* *clave de transcripción*

A table that sets forth descriptions and/or graphic representations of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language together with corresponding representations in terms of a particular writing system.

58. *key, transliteration* *tableau de translittération* *clave de transliteración*
A table that sets forth the graphic symbols of one writing system together with the corresponding graphic symbols of another writing system or systems.

59. *language* *langue* *lengua o idioma*
A system that provides a means by which the members of a community carry on conscious thought, and in terms of which they communicate orally and/or graphically.

60. *language, colloquial* *langue courante* *lengua coloquial*
A form of the speech and/or writing of a language, which is employed in informal communication in a given area and which, where a standard or literary language exists, significantly differs from it.

61. *language, literary* *langue littéraire* *lengua literaria o lenguaje literario*
A form of the speech and/or writing of a language, which is employed in formal speech and/or writing.

62. *language, non-official* *langue non-officielle* *lengua no oficial dentro de un estado o región*
A language that lacks official status in a particular legally constituted entity.

63. *language, official* *langue officielle* *lengua oficial*
A language that has official status in a particular legally constituted entity.

64. *language, principal* *langue principale* *lengua principal*
In a linguistic community where more than one language is in use, that language which has greatest currency.

65. *language, receiver* (—) (—)
A language in terms of which a geographical name may be adopted or converted from its source language (see *language, source*).

66. *language, source* (—) (—)
A language in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be adopted or converted for use in the context of another language, which is called a receiver language (see *language, receiver*).

67. *language, standard* (—) *lengua común o normal*
That form of the speech and/or writing of a language which is specified as correct by an officially designated or widely recognized authority or, in the absence of such an authority, which is generally recognized as correct in a linguistic community.

68. *language, vehicular* *langue véhiculaire* *lengua vehicular*
A language that serves for communication between members of different linguistic communities.

69. *letter* *lettre* *letra*
A segmental graphic symbol, particularly of Roman script (see *character*).

70. *lettering, multilingual* (—) *rotulación multilingüe*
The writing of geographical names in the individual countries that appear on a map in accordance with their officially recognized spellings.

71. *lexicon* *dictionnaire* *léxico*
A relatively exhaustive compilation of items, generally in alphabetical order, pertinent to a particular sphere of interest, that may present information concerning the items listed.

72. *lexicon, ideographic* *lexique idéographique* *léxico ideográfico*
See *lexicon, logographic*.

73. *lexicon, logographic* *lexique logographique* *léxico logográfico*
A body of graphic symbols, each symbol typically (but not necessarily) representing a morpheme, that may be employed in the writing of a language or languages.

74. *linguistic community*
See *community, linguistic*.

75. *literary language*
See *language, literary*.

76. *logogram* *logogramme* *logograma*
A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols that consistently represents a given morphological element or elements in a given language.

77. *logographic lexicon*
See *lexicon, logographic*.

78. *lunar name*
See *name, lunar*.

79. *mark, diacritical* *signe diacritique* *signo diacrítico*
A non-segmental graphic symbol, which does not in itself represent a phoneme, that is employed in conjunction with a letter or character.

80. *marker* (—) *signo auxiliar*
A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols (segmental, non-segmental or combined) that represents one or more phonemes of a language and that is employed in conjunction with a letter or character.

81. *modified character*
See *character, modified*.

82. *morpheme* *morphème* *morfema*
A unit in the grammatical structure of a language that has a specific phonological form or range of forms, a particular grammatical function or set of functions and a limited semantic range.

83. *multilingual lettering*
See *lettering, multilingual*

84. *name* *nom propre* *nombre propio*
An oral or written item that is recognized as designating a particular entity.

85. *name, alternate* (—) *nombre alternativo*
One of two or more standardized names for a single feature.

86. *name, conventional* (—) *nombre propio convencional*
A written form of a name, which is widely and currently used in a given linguistic community and which does not coincide with any local official form of the name.

87. *name, feature* (—) (—)
See *toponym*.

88. *name, geographical* *nom géographique* *nombre propio geográfico*
A name applied to a geographical feature.

89. *name, lunar* *nom lunaire* *nombre propio lunar*
A name applied to a feature on the surface of the moon.

90. *name, place* *nom de lieu* *nombre propio de lugar*
See *toponym*

91. *name, populated place* *nom de lieu habité* *nombre propio de lugar habitado*
A name applied to an inhabited feature.

92. *name, standardized* *nom normalisé* *nombre propio normalizado*
A name that has the official sanction of a legally constituted entity.

93. *name, variant* *variante* *nombre propio optativo*
A name other than that or those standardized for a feature.

94. *names authority*
See *authority, names*

English	French	Spanish

95. *non-official* — *non officiel* — *inoficial*
Lacking explicit sanction by a legally constituted entity.

96. *non-official language*
See *language, non-official*.

97. *normalization* — (—) — (—)
1. The establishment of a specific set of orthographic criteria or norms.
2. The writing of an item in accordance with such criteria or norms.

98. *official* — *officiel* — *oficial*
Explicitly sanctioned by a legally constituted entity.

99. *official language*
See *language, official*.

100. *onomastics* — *onomastique* — *onomástica*
The science that has as its object the study of proper names.

101. *oronym* — *oronyme* — *orónimo*
A name applied to a feature of elevation.

102. *orthography* — *orthographie* — *ortografía*
1. *graphic form* (q v.).
2. *writing system* (q.v.).

103. *particle* — *particule* — *partícula*
A morpheme that serves to identify and/or to delimit the grammatical function of another morpheme or other linguistic construction.

104. *phoneme* — *phonème* — *fonema*
1. A functionally irreducible unit in the phonological structure of a language.
2. That limited range of quality, tone, stress, pitch and/or duration of sound which corresponds to the above.

105. *physical feature*
See *feature, physical*.

106. *pidgin* — (—) — *lengua franca*
A relatively stable form of speech learned as an auxiliary language, whose vocabulary and sphere of employment are narrowly limited and whose phonological and morphological structures tend to be simpler than those of the language of derivation.

107. *place name*
See *name, place*.

108. *place name index*
See *index, place name*.

109. *point, vowel* — *point-voyelle* — *moción*
A term that designates a vowel marker in an alphabet of Arabic or Hebrew script.

110. *principal language*
See *language, principal*.

111. *printing form*
See *form, printing*.

112. *receiver language*
See *language, receiver*.

113. *reversibility* — (—) — *reversibilidad*
A characteristic of a conversion system that permits any written item to be converted from one writing system to another and subsequently reconverted back into the first system, the resulting item being identical in every particular with the original.

English	French	Spanish

114. *romanization* — *romanisation* — *romanización*
1. The process of recording in Roman script either the phonological elements of a language or the graphic symbols of a non-Roman writing system.
2. An item of a language that has undergone this process.

115. *romanization key*
See *key, romanization*.

116. *script* — *écriture* — *escritura*
A set of graphic symbols that may be variously employed in representation of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language or languages.

117. *script, receiver* — (—) — (—)
A script in terms of which a geographical name may be converted from its source script (see *script, source*).

118. *script, source* — (—) — (—)
A script in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be converted for use in another script, called a receiver script (see *script, receiver*).

119. *sequence, alphabetical* — *suite alphabétique* — *orden alfabético*
1. The order in which the letters or characters of an alphabet are customarily cited.
2. A body of items listed in such order.

120. *sound* — *son* — *sonido*
An oral symbol that, in a given linquistic context, conveys a specific item of information.

121. *source language*
See *language, source*.

122. *source script*
See *script, source*.

123. *specific element*
See *element, specific*.

124. *speech* — *parole* — *habla*
An oral manifestation of language

125. *speech community*
See *community, speech*.

126. *spelling* — *graphie* — *grafía*
See *form, graphic*.

127. *standardization, geographical name* — (—) — *normalización de un nombre geográfico*
The prescription or the recommendation of a particular graphic form or forms for application to a given feature, as well as the conditions of employment of that form or forms.

128. *standardization, international geographical name* — (—) — *normalización internacional de nombres geográficos*
That activity aiming at a maximum of uniformity in the writing of every geographical name on earth and of topographical names on other bodies of the solar system by means of national standardization and/or international agreement, including the achievement of equivalences between different writing systems.

129. *standardized name*
See *name, standardized*

130. *standard language*
See *language, standard*.

131. *syllabary* *syllabaire* *silabario*
A specific set of graphic symbols, each symbol typically (but not necessarily) representing a particular syllable, that may be employed in representation of the phonological elements of a language.

132. *symbol, graphic* *symbole graphique* *signo gráfico*
A written mark that, in a given linguistic context, conveys a specific item of information.

133. *system, writing* *système d'écriture* *sistema de escritura*
A structure that employs in representation of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language both
1. An alphabet, syllabary and/or logographic lexicon; and
2. A systematic manner of application of the alphabet, syllabary and/or logographic lexicon.

134. *term, descriptive* *terme descriptif* *término descriptivo*
A written item that appears on a map, which does not constitute a toponym but which serves to describe a topographic characteristic in the area where it appears.

135. *term, designatory* (—) *término designativo*
See *designation*

136. *term, generic* *terme générique* *término genérico*
A term, included in a name, that indicates the type of the named entity and that has the same meaning in current local usage (see *element, generic*).

137. *tetragraph* *tétragraphe* *tetrágrafo*
Four letters or characters, which are employed together in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

138. *topographic entity*
See *entity, topographic*.

139. *topographic feature*
See *feature, topographic*

140. *topography* *topographie* *topografía*
The surface configuration of a planet or satellite, or of a portion thereof.

141. *toponym* *toponyme* *topónimo*
A name applied to a topographic feature.

142. *toponymic index*
See *index, toponymic*.

143. *toponymy* *toponymie* *toponimia*
1. The science which has as its object the study of toponyms.
2. A coherent body of toponyms.

144. *transcription* *transcription* *transcripción*
1. The process of recording the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language in terms of a specific writing system.
2. The result of this process.

145. *transcription alphabet*
See *alphabet, transcription*.

146. *transcription key*
See *key, transcription*

147. *translation* *traduction* *traducción*
1. The process of rendering an expression of one language in terms of a corresponding expression of another language.
2. The result of this process.

148. *transliteration* *translittération* *transliteración*
1. The process of recording the graphic symbols of one writing system in terms of corresponding graphic symbols of a second writing system.
2. The result of this process

149. *transliteration alphabet*
See *alphabet, transliteration*.

150. *transliteration key*
See *key, transliteration*.

151. *trigraph* *trigraphe* *trígrafo*
Three letters or characters, which are employed together in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

152. *undersea feature*
See *feature, undersea*.

153. *variant character*
See *character, variant*.

154. *variant name*
See *name, variant*.

155. *vehicular language*
See *language, vehicular*.

156. *vocabulary* *vocabulaire* *vocabulario*
1. A list of the words of a language (synonym: *lexicon*.)
2. A succinct dictionary giving the principal words of a language or citing a list of specialized terms (see *glossary* and *lexicon*).
3. The repertory of words of a particular individual or document.

157. *vowel point*
See *point, vowel*.

158. *writing system*
See *system, writing*

INDEX OF FRENCH AND SPANISH TECHNICAL TERMS CORRESPONDING TO ENGLISH TERMS LISTED IN THE GLOSSARY

French or Spanish	*English*
accidente físico	feature, physical
accidente geográfico	feature, geographical
accidente geográfico artificial	feature, cultural
accidente hidrográfico	feature, hydrographic
accidente natural	feature, natural
accidente topográfico	feature, topographic
accidente topográfico extraterrestre	feature, extraterrestrial
accidente submarino	feature, undersea
accident géographique	feature, geographical
accident topographique	feature, topographic
accident topographique extra-terrestre	feature, extraterrestrial
alfabeto	alphabet
alfabeto de transcripción	alphabet, transcription
alfabeto de transliteración	alphabet, transliteration
allographe	allograph
allomorphe	allomorph
allonyme	allonym
alófono	allophone
alógrafo	allograph
alómorfo	allomorph
alónimo	allonym
alphabet de transcription	alphabet, transcription
alphabet de translittération	alphabet, transliteration

French or Spanish	*English*
artículo	article
autoridad de nombres geográficos	authority, names
autorité toponymique	authority, names
carácter	character
carácter abreviado	character, abbreviated
caractère	character
caractère abrégé	character, abbreviated
caractère modifié	character, modified
carácter modificado	character, modified
carácter optativo	character, variant
clave de romanización	key, romanization
clave de transcripción	key, transcription
clave de transliteración	key, transliteration
communauté linguistique	community, linguistic
comunidad de hablantes o de habla	community, speech
comunidad lingüística	community, linguistic
contexte	context
contexto	context
convencional o usual	conventional
conversión	conversion
créole	creole
designación	designation
désignation	designation
dialecte	dialect
dialecto	dialect
diccionario geográfico	dictionary, geographical
dictionnaire	lexicon
dictionnaire géographique	dictionary, geographical
diglosia	diglossia
diglossie	diglossia
dígrafo	digraph
digraphe	digraph
diphtongue	diphthong
diptongo	diphthong
écriture	script
élément générique	element, generic
élément hydrographique	feature, hydrographic
elemento genérico	element, generic
elemento específico	element, specific
élément spécifique	element, specific
entidad geográfica	entity, geographical
entidad topográfica	entity, topographic
escritura	script
exónimo	exonym
exonyme	exonym
fonema	phoneme
formato	format
glosario	glossary
glossaire	glossary
grafema	grapheme
grafía	spelling
graphème	grapheme
graphie	spelling
habla	speech
hidrónimo	hydronym
hydronyme	hydronym
ideograma	ideogram

French or Spanish	*English*
idioma	language
index toponymique	gazetteer, index
índice de nombres geográficos	index, place name
índice o listado de topónimos	gazetteer, index
inoficial	non-official
langue	language
langue courante	language, colloquial
langue littéraire	language, literary
langue non officielle	language, non-official
langue officielle	language, official
langue principale	language, principal
langue véhiculaire	language, vehicular
lengua	language
lengua coloquial	language, colloquial
lengua común o normal	language, standard
lengua criolla	creole
lengua franca	pidgin
lengua literaria o lenguaje literario	language, literary
lengua no oficial dentro de un estado o región	language, non-official
lengua oficial	language, official
lengua principal	language, principal
lengua vehicular	language, vehicular
letra	letter
lettre	letter
léxico	lexicon
léxico ideográfico	lexicon, ideographic
léxico logográfico	lexicon, logographic
lexique idéographique	lexicon, ideographic
lexique logographique	lexicon, logographic
listado de topónimos	gazetteer, index
logograma	logogram
logogramme	logogram
moción	point, vowel
morfema	morpheme
morphème	morpheme
nombre alternativo	name, alternate
nombre propio	name
nombre propio convencional	name, conventional
nombre propio de lugar	name, place
nombre propio de lugar habitado	name, populated place
nombre propio geográfico	name, geographical
nombre propio luna	name, lunar
nombre propio normalizado	name, standardized
nombre propio optativo	name, variant
nom de lieu	name, place
nom de lieu habité	name, populated place
nomenclature toponymique	gazetteer
nom géographique	name, geographical
nom lunaire	name, lunar
nom normalisé	name, standardized
nom propre	name
non officiel	non-official
normalización de un nombre geográfico	standardization, geographical name
normalización internacional de nombres geográficos	standardization, international geographical
objet géographique	entity, geographical
objet topographique	entity, topographic

French or Spanish	*English*
officiel	official
oficial	official
onomástica	onomastics
onomastique	onomastics
orden alfabético	sequence, alphabetical
orónimo	oronym
oronyme	oronym
orthographie	orthography
ortografía	orthography
parole	speech
partícula	particle
particule	particle
phonème	phoneme
point, voyelle	point, vowel
presentación tipográfica	form, printing
présentation générale	format
présentation typographique	form, printing
reversibilidad	reversibility
romanisation	romanization
romanización	romanization
rotulación multilingüe	lettering, multilingual
signe diacritique	mark, diacritical
signo auxiliar	marker
signo diacrítico	mark, diacritical
signo gráfico	symbol, graphic
silabario	syllabary
sistema de escritura	system, writing
son	sound
sonido	sound
suite alphabétique	sequence, alphabetical
syllabaire	syllabary
symbole graphique	symbol, graphic
système d'écriture	system, writing
tableau de romanisation	key, romanization
tableau de transcription	key, transcription
tableau de translittération	key, transliteration
terme descriptif	term, descriptive
terme générique	term, generic
término descriptivo	term, descriptive
término designativo	term, designatory
término genérico	term, generic
tetrágrafo	tetragraph
tétragraphe	tetragraph
topografía	topography
topographie	topography
toponimia	toponymy
topónimo	toponym
toponyme	toponym
toponymie	toponymy
traducción	translation
traduction	translation
transcripción	transcription
transliteración	transliteration
translittération	transliteration
trígrafo	trigraph
trigraphe	trigraph
usual	conventional

French or Spanish	*English*
usuel	conventional
variante	name, variant
vocabulaire	vocabulary
vocabulario	vocabulary

DICTIONARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED BY THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia

The original text of this paper, which appeared as document E.CONF.69/L.126, contains a translation in Czech and Slovak of the technical terms presented in the preceding document, entitled "A glossary of technical terminology employed in the standardization of geographical names", presented by the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Copies of the Czech and Slovak version of the glossary may be obtained on request from the Commission on Terminology of the Czech Board of Geodesy and Cartography or from the Commission on Terminology of the Slovak Board of Geodesy and Cartography.

AGENDA ITEM 13—POINT 13 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 13 DEL PROGRAMA

EXONIMOS
Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

The paper reproduces resolutions 28, 29 and 31 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[1] together with a summary of the deliberations on the topic during the fifth and sixth sessions of the United Nations *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1973 and 1975.

A number of observations are also made on the term "exonym" and suggestions pertaining to the national and international levels are submitted for consideration by the Third United Nations Conference, with a view to reducing the use of exonyms to the greatest extent possible.

Résumé

Le rapport rappelle les résolutions 28, 29 et 31 adoptées par la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques[2] et les travaux sur la question du Groupe spécial d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques à ses cinquième et sixième sessions en 1973 et 1975.

Le rapport contient aussi un certain nombre de considérations relatives au terme "exonyme" et présente des suggestions au niveau national et international, pour la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies, afin de réduire le plus possible l'emploi des exonymes, qu'il s'agisse de noms consacrés ou de noms traditionnels.

*

* *

Como tema 13 del programa provisional de la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, conforme fue redactado por el Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos durante su sexto período de sesiones (Nueva York, 5 a 26 de marzo de 1975), aparece en relación con los exónimos lo siguiente:

a) Categoría y grado de utilización de los exónimos;

b) Determinación de los principios que han de seguirse en la reducción de los exónimos.

Como resultado de la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos (Londres, 1972), se establecieron los siguientes principios en torno a los exónimos, de acuerdo con las resoluciones 28, 29 y 31, y que a continuación se reproducen:

28. Listas de exónimos (nombres convencionales. nombres tradicionales)

La Conferencia,

Deseando facilitar la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos,

Reconociendo que ciertos exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales) constituyen elementos vivos y esenciales de los idiomas,

Reconociendo además que ciertos exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales) subsisten en el idioma aunque disminuya la necesidad de su empleo,

Recomienda que las autoridades nacionales en materia de nombres geográficos preparen listas de exónimos comúnmente empleados, que los revisen, con miras a su posible supresión, y publiquen los resultados.

29. Exónimos

A

La Conferencia,

Reconociendo la conveniencia de limitar el empleo de exónimos,

Recomienda que en la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos se reduzca, en la mayor medida y con la mayor rapidez posibles, el empleo de aquellos exónimos que designen entidades geográficas que corresponden a la soberanía de un solo Estado.

B

La Conferencia,

Advirtiendo que, incluso en el plano nacional, el empleo de exónimos está perdiendo terreno,

Recomienda que en las publicaciones exclusivamente para uso nacional se tenga en cuenta la posibilidad de reducir el empleo de exónimos,

---

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF 69/L.2.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), p. 17.

Recomienda además que, cuando se conserven los exónimos, se indiquen, siempre que sea posible, las formas oficiales locales.

31. COMPRENSIÓN Y ACEPTACIÓN UNIFORMES DE LOS FINES Y OBJETIVOS DE LA NORMALIZACIÓN INTERNACIONAL

La Conferencia,

Advirtiendo la conveniencia de lograr que se comprendan y acepten de un modo uniforme los fines y objetivos de la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos,

1. *Recomienda*, en relación con el examen constante por el Grupo de Expertos del campo de aplicación de la normalización internacional, la siguiente definición general:

"Por normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos se entiende la actividad encaminada a lograr una forma escrita única de cada nombre geográfico de la Tierra y de los nombres topográficos de otros cuerpos del sistema solar mediante una labor nacional de normalización nacional o un acuerdo internacional, o una y otro, incluyendo el establecimiento de equivalencias entre los distintos sistemas de escritura";

2. *Recomienda asimismo* que, en lo posible, los nombres locales normalizados se utilicen en los mapas y cartas destinados al uso internacional así como en todas las publicaciones internacionales en que los nombres geográficos no aparezcan en el texto propiamente dicho como, por ejemplo, en horarios internacionales o en cuadros de estadísticas internacionales; se podrán utilizar exónimos cuando los nombres geográficos figuren en el texto propiamente dicho de las publicaciones internacionales en un idioma dado, pero en esos casos será conveniente que figuren también entre paréntesis los nombres geográficos locales normalizados.

El Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos adoptó unas definiciones en idioma inglés en el informe de su quinto período de sesiones (Nueva York, 6 a 16 de marzo de 1973), que se presenta en traducción a la fecha no oficial y sujeto a un cambio eventual:

"*Exónimo*: Nombre propio, o forma escrita suya, usual en una lengua para designar un accidente geográfico situado fuera del área donde aquella lengua tiene carácter oficial, y diferente del nombre propio, o de la forma escrita de éste, usual en la lengua o lenguas oficiales del área donde el accidente geográfico está situado.

"Un *nombre convencional* es un exónimo usado de manera amplia y corriente.

"Un *nombre tradicional* es un exónimo que ha sido establecido hace mucho tiempo y que asimismo está en uso actualmente."

En lo que atañe a la reducción de exónimos—temas 14 y 15 de nuestro sexto período de sesiones—se especificó en el informe respectivo lo siguiente, en traducción no oficial del autor de este documento:

"El Grupo discutió la reducción de exónimos con base en los documentos de trabajo 6, 11, 13, 13/Add. 1 y 27, así como de otras propuestas [*6*: "Exónimos"—J. González y F. Vázquez, España; *11*: "Sobre la normalización de nombres geográficos en la Unión Soviética en 1972–1974"—A. M. Komkov, URSS; *13*: "Sobre la compilación de un listado de topónimos (*gazetteer*) de nombres convencionales rusos para entidades geográficas en países del extranjero" (A. M. Komkov, URSS); *27*: "Reducción de exónimos"—Hungría]. Se examinó ampliamente una propuesta formulada por el Sr. Sharma, para recomendar el empleo de los nombres oficiales de los países de manera preferente a, o conjuntamente con los exónimos de los nombres de los países. Se manifestó que la reducción de los exónimos tendría que iniciarse en alguna parte y que los nombres de los países resultaban los más apropiados. Se señaló el hecho de que en el pasado había sido posible para un país cambiar su nombre y que dicho cambio fuese aceptado a través del mundo. En contra de la propuesta, se expuso el hecho de que los exónimos para un número de nombres antiguos de países eran los que tenían las raíces más profundas en los idiomas, y los más difíciles de eliminar. Se esperaba mucha oposición contra tal recomendación.

"Se estuvo de acuerdo en que los principios enunciados en las resoluciones 28, 29 y 31 de la Conferencia serían reiterados, y en que el Grupo instaría a evitar en lo posible los exónimos para nombres de nuevos países y para nuevos nombres de países."

Se estudió, entre otros aspectos, el de una gradación por incidencia, conforme fue indicado por España, pudiéndose para ello fijar las siguientes cinco categorías:

1. *Total*, cuando el nombre oficial no se utiliza en forma escrita ni oral;
2. *General*, sólo cuando en contados casos se ha utilizado el nombre oficial;
3. *Extendido*, en que el uso es realizado de manera indistinta y más bien según la cultura de quien se expresa;
4. *Escaso*, cuando sólo se encuentra en obras de tipo literario de gusto tradicional;
5. *Obsoleto*, cuando no se encuentra más que en obras antiguas, lo que vendría a ser lo mismo que un nombre histórico en desuso en la actualidad.

Se considera que la voz *exónimo* es un término más apropiado que el de *nombre tradicional* o *nombre convencional*, en lo que respecta a los objetivos de la normalización de nombres geográficos. De consiguiente, además de su definición, podría también indicarse que ese término consiste en un nombre geográfico utilizado en un dado idioma para una entidad geográfica ubicada fuera del área donde dicho idioma goza de reconocimiento oficial. En este caso, podría asimismo solucionarse el problema, si inmediatamente después del topónimo y siempre que se use un exónimo de manera lo más reducida posible, siguiese "o . . .", o bien que el nombre geográfico normalizado apareciera primero, así como que inmediatamente después figurase el exónimo entre paréntesis.

También es menester comprender que, en ámbito nacional, en muchos casos será imposible omitir un exónimo que por tradición forma parte de un dado nombre geográfico. Esto, por supuesto, se aplica más a otros accidentes que a los lugares poblados y, en todo caso, es sumamente deseable tener sólo un nombre que defina a la entidad, lo cual debería ser reconocido tanto por el usuario como por los habitantes locales.

En cuanto a los exónimos que figuren en otros accidentes además de lugares poblados, en muchos casos y en ámbito nacional, se estima necesario que dentro del espíritu de la resolución 28 de Londres, siempre que ello pudiese llevarse a cabo, sería altamente deseable que los nombres convencionales o tradicionales que se utilizan en forma corriente, pudiesen ser evitados en lo posible.

Es de señalarse el hecho y esto constituye un asunto que también debe tomar en consideración la Tercera Conferencia, que como ya se mencionado más arriba en el cuarto párrafo parece que nuestro Grupo de Expertos, no obstante que la resolución 29 B de Londres se refiere al plano nacional, ha tenido en mente de manera principal los nombres de países. Por ello, debería reiterarse una recomendación en forma de resolución, en el sentido de que a nivel nacional también deben tomarse en cuenta los exónimos, para evitarlos en lo posible.

Como resultado de un somero análisis, según corresponde al limitado alcance del presente documento de trabajo, el autor estima que en muchos casos el problema de los exónimos es, ante todo, de aspecto lingüístico, y asimismo que existen muchos otros aspectos a nivel nacional que también deben tomarse bajo consideración tanto en favor como en contra. Empero, una cosa debe ser resuelta conforme ya se indicó, en el sentido de que es menester impartir un mandato a nuestro Grupo de Expertos para que dentro de un término que se le fije estudie no sólo los exónimos de países, como aconteció durante su sexto período de sesiones, sino que también se pronuncie en el sentido requerido. Mejor aún, que la Tercera Conferencia emita una resolución relacionada con los exónimos dentro de un país. Para todo lo anterior, deberá tomarse en consideración lo que el autor ha esbozado en este documento. Se entiende que se estima asimismo necesario recalcar de nuevo que el aspecto internacional de los exónimos debe ser el resultado de lo realizado a nivel nacional.

Se estima, a la vez, que por conducto del respectivo Experto de División en Nombres Geográficos se comunique a la Sección de Cartografía de las Naciones Unidas para su divulgación internacional, que incluirá a todos los expertos de las Naciones Unidas en nombres geográficos, lo que atañe a la segunda recomendación de la resolución 31 de Londres.

En Guatemala, por ejemplo, un accidente hidrográfico que descarga en otro en latitud 13°49′30″ Norte y longitud 90°15′48″ Oeste del meridiano de Greenwich, que se ha designado como "Madre Vieja o Dormido" se normalizó a "Madre Vieja", omitiendo así el nombre convencional o tradicional de "o Dormido". Otro exónimo, "Chinimá o El Cañal" se normalizó a "Chinimá", el que en su desembocadura está en latitud 14°47′15″ y en longitud 91°28′36″. Por ejemplo, en lo que asimismo se relaciona con el lugar poblado conocido antes como "Sepemech o Las Conchas" (latitud 15°45′15″, longitud 89°23′25″) y debido al hecho de que en el idioma kekchí "Sepemech" equivale a "Las Conchas", se aceptó de manera local que fuese designado sólo como "Sepemech", lo que así se realizó. Otro ejemplo entre muchos más: en lo que atañe a la que había sido capital de los indígenas quichés hasta el año de 1524, en la actualidad el sitio arqueológico "Utatlán" y que antaño se había conocido más como "Gumarcaaj", apareciendo así en muchas referencias antiguas, a efecto de mantener un nombre debido a su importancia por múltiples razones, los nombres geográficos se normalizaron a "Utatlán" (como se le disigna en la actualidad) en latitud 15° 01′14″ y longitud 91° 10′11″, pero con la referencia del caso a su antiguo nombre histórico quiché. De consiguiente y de manera especial, en el respectivo cuadrángulo del mapa a escala 1:50.000 el sitio aparece con su nombre antiguo entre paréntesis como "Utatlán (Gumarcaaj)" a 2.020 metros sobre el nivel del mar. Por el otro lado, ríos como "Chixoy o Negro", "Grande o Motagua", etc., retienen parcialmente sus exónimos, debido a que así lo requiere el uso tradicional local, y los habitantes vecinos, o usuarios locales, se manifestaron en contra de omitir en su totalidad los nombres convencionales o tradicionales.

Se entiende que las ideas presentadas en este documento de trabajo deben ser estudiadas de manera cuidadosa y se espera que la presente Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas tome una acción necesaria sobre el particular.

En vía ilustrativa y con respecto a los nombres de países, entre otros, pueden mencionarse los siguientes:

China es el exónimo en español de *Zhongguó*, y *Pekín* de su capital *Beijing*;

Grecia es el exónimo en español de *Hellás*, y *Atenas* de su capital *Athinai*;

Hungría es el exónimo en español de *Magyarország*, cuyo nombre completo es *Magyar Nepköstársaság*;

Japón es el exónimo en español de *Nippon*, conocido también comò *Nihon*;

Surinam es el exónimo en español de *Suriname*;

India es el exónimo en español de *Bhárat Ganarájy*';

Austria es el exónimo en español de *Österreich*;

Brasil es el exónimo en español del país cuyo nombre completo es *República Federativa do Brasil*;

Egipto es el exónimo en español de *(al) Misr*;

Finlandia es el exónimo en español de *Suomi*, cuyo nombre completo es *Suomen tasavalta*;

Ceilán es el exónimo en español de *Sri Lanka*;

Suecia es el exónimo en español de *Sverige*, cuyo nombre completo es *Konungariket Sverige*;

Noruega es el exónimo en español de *Norge*, cuyo nombre completo es *Kongeriket Norge*;

Bulgaria es el exónimo en español de *Bálgarija*, cuyo nombre completo es *Narodna Republika Bálgarija*;

Líbano es el exónimo en español de (*el*) *Loubanâne*;

Polonia es el exónimo en español de *Polska*, cuyo nombre completo es *Polska Rzecspospolita Ludowa*;

Saudi Arabia es el exónimo en español de *Arabīyah as Sa'ūdiyah*, cuyo nombre completo es (*al*) *Mamlakah al 'arabīyah as Sa'ūdiyah*;

Países Bajos es el exónimo en español de *Nederland* cuyo nombre completo es (*het*) *Koninkrijk der Nederlanden*.

LE PROBLÈME DIDACTIQUE DE LA RÉDUCTION DES EXONYMES
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

The reduction of exonyms is currently looked on as being desirable in theory, but it appears to be impracticable. Few naming organizations oppose exonym reduction. Reluctance is due to a belief that confusion will result and that exonyms will persist. Recent efforts to reduce exonyms indicate that, if the new names are widely broadcast, they are accepted quickly. The important question is determining the means of promoting the original names, especially by encouraging the important publishers to use them on maps and in atlases. Airline schedules reveal a predominance of English exonyms, although some airlines have adopted original forms.

Resumen

La conversión de exónimos se considera actualmente deseable en teoría pero poco realista en la práctica. Son pocas las organizaciones de nombres geográficos que se opongan a la conversión de exónimos. La reticencia a ponerla en práctica se debe a la creencia de que va a causar la confusión sin hacer desaparecer el uso de los exónimos. Los recientes esfuerzos por reducir el empleo de exónimos indica que, si se les da suficiente difusión, los nuevos nombres son rápidamente aceptados. La cuestión más importante es determinar qué medios pueden emplearse para fomentar el uso de los nombres originales, en especial la manera de incitar a las editoriales más importantes a utilizarlos en mapas y atlas. Los horarios de las aerolíneas muestran una predominancia de exónimos ingleses aunque algunas compañías hayan adoptado las formas originales.

*

* *

On peut caractériser le problème de la réduction des exonymes par le dilemme suivant: théoriquement souhaitable mais pratiquement irréalisable pour les raisons suivantes:

a) Les positions des organismes et des Etats sont très variées; certains défendent la position "romantique", pour le maintien intégral des exonymes; d'autres adoptent la position "internationaliste", cherchant à les éliminer;

b) En général, on préconise des solutions à long terme plutôt qu'à court ou moyen terme;

c) On propose des solutions mixtes, en distinguant des types de noms géographiques et des niveaux d'utilisation, types et niveaux selon lesquels le recul de l'exonymie devrait être plus ou moins rapide;

d) Ce faisant, on tend à faire coexister des tendances contradictoires, l'une vers la consécration encore plus forte des exonymes, l'autre vers leur réduction progressive.

Ces constatations sont à la fois réalistes et peu encourageantes. Pour cette raison sans doute, certains pays suggèrent de repousser à plus tard l'étude de ce problème[1]. D'autres font le constat de cette situation paradoxale en précisant où les exonymes demeureront fréquents (langage parlé, contexte, fiction, textes destinés au public, matériel d'enseignement à l'intérieur d'une aire linguistique) et où ils sont susceptibles d'être réduits (langue écrite, cartes et tableaux, textes techniques ou spécialisés, cartes spéciales ou d'usage international)[2]. D'autres enfin proposent des moyens pratiques pour aborder le problème, en l'occurrence en dressant des listes, dans chaque langue, des exonymes effectivement en usage[3].

En fait, sauf quelques exceptions, rares sont les organismes qui sont contre le principe lui-même de la réduction des exonymes. La raison de leurs réticences tient plutôt de la crainte de semer la confusion, en prenant pour acquis que les exonymes ont la vie tellement dure que même l'usage élargi des noms originaux ne fera disparaître pratiquement aucun exonyme.

A vrai dire, l'expérience des tentatives vraiment sérieuses pour réduire les exonymes est beaucoup trop récente (10 ans à peine) pour établir si l'hypothèse de leur vie dure se vérifie vraiment. L'exemple des pays qui ont récemment changé de nom suggérerait plutôt que, lorsque le nouveau nom (souvent un retour à un nom original local) est diffusé et appuyé par un appareil politique et publicitaire adéquat, il s'impose rapidement.

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par Henri Dorion, professeur de géographie à l'Université Laval, Québec, Canada, et directeur du Groupe d'étude de choronymie et de terminologie géographique, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.13.

[1] Voir "Noms conventionnels", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II, *Documents techniques* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente F.74.I.4), p. 211.

[2] Voir "Noms conventionnels, définition, usage", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II, p. 207.

[3] Voir "Définition et emploi des exonymes", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II, p. 211.

La question est donc d'identifier les moyens susceptibles de diffuser puis de consacrer les noms originaux, soit à la place des exonymes, soit, dans l'hypothèse moins optimiste, parallèlement à eux. On a déjà parlé des actions à entreprendre auprès des agences internationales de nouvelles, des organismes diffusant des informations et de la documentation à l'échelon international, des compagnies de transport ferroviaire et aérien[4], des organismes publics ou privés qui font une large utilisation des noms géographiques, et assurément des grandes maisons d'édition, surtout celles qui publient des cartes et des atlas.

C'est sur ce dernier point qu'il convient d'insister, puisque c'est un secteur où les hésitations et les oppositions à la réduction des exonymes se sont manifestées le plus nettement. Le problème didactique de la réduction des exonymes mériterait d'être étudié par des spécialistes en matière d'apprentissage, d'usage et de disponibilité du vocabulaire géographique. Peu d'études ont été faites dans ce domaine, mais de la consultation d'experts en didactique des langues, il ressort que les craintes manifestées à l'égard de l'apprentissage par les étudiants d'âge scolaire de noms de lieux étrangers (pour eux) ne sont pas fondées sur une appréciation objective des faits et des problèmes.

Les didacticiens s'entendent sur le fait que, pour un esprit jeune, il revient exactement au même d'apprendre un nom propre étranger ou assimilé à la langue de celui qui apprend. De plus, les spécialistes conviennent du fait que la "charge" additionnelle que représente l'apprentissage d'une seconde forme pour le même nom de lieu est plus faible si c'est le nom étranger (c'est-à-dire le nom original) qui est appris en premier; en effet, l'exonyme, à cause de son caractère répétitif dans le langage courant, s'imposera plus facilement de lui-même. Enfin, les didacticiens estiment que, si une publicité adéquate diffuse les noms originaux (étrangers) avec constance, l'effet répétitif rendra ces noms aussi "disponibles" que les exonymes pour les parlants de tous âges.

Ces constatations, qu'il faudrait vérifier par des tests, sont de nature à remettre en question les propositions qui visent à conserver les exonymes dans les manuels, atlas et autres documents d'enseignement. D'ailleurs, le matériel didactique, dans tous les pays du monde, se diversifie et se "déspécialise"; on le constate de plus en plus dans l'enseignement, la presse parlée ou écrite, les documents officiels ou publics et le matériel publicitaire (où la réduction des exonymes est plus facilement acceptée). La distinction entre les solutions apportées au niveau de l'enseignement et celles qui touchent les organismes d'information spécialisée, est donc, selon nous, moins valable qu'on pourrait le croire à première vue. On pourrait même penser, une fois la preuve faite des énoncés ci-dessus, qu'une action devrait être entreprise auprès des Ministères de l'éducation des différents Etats pour introduire, au niveau de l'enseignement, les solutions préconisées par les Conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques. Cette action "prolongerait vers l'amont" et rendrait assurément plus efficaces les autres actions entreprises auprès des organismes de normalisation et de diffusion de l'information au niveau international, auprès des compagnies de transport et des agences de presse.

[4] Un relevé des horaires internationaux des compagnies aériennes révèle que ce sont les exonymes anglais qui dominent largement. Cette situation est paradoxale, puisqu'on se trouve à n'avoir ainsi, dans plusieurs cas, ni le nom original ni l'exonyme "national" mais ce qu'on pourrait appeler, dans le cas des compagnies de pays non anglophones, un "exonyme exogène". Le fait que la langue anglaise soit la langue technique de l'aviation ne justifie pas cette situation, puisque les horaires sont destinés au public, essentiellement international. De fait, dans les horaires de compagnies aériennes, les exonymes "nationaux" autres qu'anglais sont rares sauf dans quelques pays hispaniques. Par ailleurs, il convient de signaler que quelques compagnies ont adopté les formes originales: Swissair, Air France, Lot (Pologne) devraient servir d'exemples.

DICTIONARY OF RUSSIAN CONVENTIONAL NAMES FOR GEOGRAPHICAL ENTITIES OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

A programme of regular work is carried on in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the normalization of spelling of foreign geographical names. To achieve this aim, rules for rendering geographical names from different foreign languages into Russian are elaborated and introduced for common use as compulsory ones. Such rules provide for necessary unification and stability of name spelling in official documents, maps and other publications. At the same time the rules set forth and resolve the problem of reproducing the original pronunciation of a foreign name as exactly as possible, taking into account the differences in phonetic, grammar and graphic systems of the donor-language and Russian.

Nevertheless, there is in Russian, as in all other languages, a rather large group of conventional place names, that is, names that are rendered with certain deviations from the rules. The extent of such deviations may range from a single letter change to complete lexical substitution. For example, the capital city of the United States, *Washington*, is spelled **Вашингтон** in Russian, though it sounds like **Уошингтон**; the French *Chatillon* is conventionally spelled **Шатильон** instead of the regular **Шатийон**; we use **Большая Фатра** in lieu of **Велька-Фатра** for the Czech *Vel'ka Fatra*; the Russian for the Austrian *Hohe Tauern* is **Высокий Тауэрн**, not

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice-Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.22.

Хоэ-Тауэрн; on Russian maps one can find **Огненная Земля** for the Spanish name of *Tierra del Fuego*, Argentina; and many similar examples could be adduced.

Up to now lists of conventional names were published only as part of the instructions developed for the Russian rendering of geographical names for particular countries or for groups of countries united by a common language. A single list of conventional names on a world-wide basis has not been compiled so far, though the practical need for such a list is extremely pressing. The *Dictionary of Russian Conventional Names for Geographical Entities of Foreign Countries*, work on which is now in progress in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, is intended to fill up this gap.

There is no need to explain that the existence of such names impedes the identification of features when using geographic maps, tourist guides, scientific and popular literature, or that such names cause misunderstanding when establishing personal contacts and lead to confusion when studying foreign languages: why do we use the "wrong" names if we could speak the "right" way? It is not a mere coincidence that the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, paid special attention to conventional names and adopted a recommendation to reduce their number to a minimum.

On the other hand, it is because of their existence in the Russian language for many years, or sometimes even many centuries, that such names are called "conventional". They entered the active Russian vocabulary where they produced derivatives (**Шотландия, шотландцы**; **Париж, парижане**) and even fixed word combinations (**Рим, римское право** and **Римский папа**; **Китай, китайская стена** and **китайская грамота**); they were repeatedly used in the works of Lenin and in classic Russian literature (Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky and others) as well as in translations of foreign classic writers.

The compilation of the *Dictionary* of conventional names is aimed at providing a single systematized collection (if not exhaustive, then optimum) of conventional names of foreign geographic features, which will enable us, on the basis of their investigation, to proceed to reduce their number and to substitute national forms for them.

The analysis of the list compiled permitted, first, clarification of the main (i.e., the most widely represented) linguistic forms of conventional names and identification of those kinds of geographical features that most often have conventional names.

The main types of conventional names may be distinguished according to their linguistic forms (regardless of their origin) as follows:

(*a*) Names that took root in Russian in forms that were obsolete or sometimes just incorrectly rendered: **Гамбург** instead of **Хамбург** (German *Hamburg*), **Париж** instead of **Пари** (French *Paris*), **Рим** instead of **Рома** (Italian *Roma*), **Эдинбург** instead of **Эдинборо** (English *Edinburgh*);

(*b*) Names that are entirely different from their national equivalents: **о. Гаити** (Spanish *Española*), **Касабланка** (Arabic *Ed Dār el Beidā'*), **прол. Дарданеллы** (Turkish *Çanakkale Boğazi)*, **Албания** (Albanian *Shqipëri*), **Финляндия** (Finnish *Suomi*), **Египет** (Arabic *Miṣr*);

(*c*) Names formed by adding Russian adjectives derived from the name of a locality: **Вандейская равнина** (French *La Plaine*), **Тосканская Маремма** (Italian *Maremma*), **Северо-Шотландское нагорье** (English *Northern Highlands*);

(*d*) Completely or partially translated names: **Скалистые горы** (English *Rocky Mountains*), **Большое Невольничье озеро** (English *Great Slave Lake*), **Берег Слоновой Кости** (French *Côte d'Ivoire*), **Верхняя Луара** (French *Haute Loire*), **Венский Лес** (German *Wienerwald*), **Западный Азербайджан** (Persian *Āẕarbayjān-e Gharbi*), **Венгерская Народная Республика** (Hungarian *Magyar Népköztársaság*), **Соединенные Штаты Америки** (English *United States of America*);

(*e*) Names with Russian noun endings (**-ия, -а/ -я, -ы/ -и**) attached to original roots: **Исландия** (Islandic *Island*); **Моравия** (Czech *Morava*), **Луара, Сена** (French *Loire, Seine*), **Вандея** (French *Vendée*), **Анды** (Spanish *Andes*, plural), **Альпы** (Italian *Alpi*, French *Alpes*, German *Alpen*, plural), **Гималаи** (Hindi *Himalay*);

(*f*) Names expressed by Russian nouns in the genetive case: **о-ва Кука** (English *Cook Islands*), **прол. Дрейка** (English *Drake Passage*);

(*g*) Names with Russian adjective suffixes and endings (**-ов/ -ово, -ский/ -ская/ -ское**) attached to original roots: **Бассов пролив** (English *Bass Strait*), **Арафурское море** (Indonesian *Laut Arafuru*), **Балеарские острова** (Spanish *Islas Baleares*), **Сулинское гирло** (Romanian *Bratul Sulina*);

(*h*) Linguistically mixed forms: **Северо-фризские острова** (German *Nordfriesische Inseln*), **Гудзонов пролив** (English *Hudson Strait*), **Коринфский залив** (Greek *Kólpos Korinthiakós*).

The analysis of Russian conventional names according to the kinds of features to which they are applied demonstrated that the conventional names include the following:

(*a*) The names of almost all countries of the world whose short forms have the Russian ending (**-ия**) and whose long (official) forms are usually translated due to their big informational load: **Объединенное Королевство Великобритании и Северной Ирландии** (English *United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland*), **Социалистическая Республика Вьетнам** (Vietnamese *Công Hoa Xà Hôi Chù Nghía Viêt Nam*), **Испанское государство** (Spanish *Estado Español*);

(*b*) The names of many capital and port cities, large economic, historical and cultural centres: **Париж** (French *Paris*), **Калькутта** (Hindi *Kalikātā*), **Каир** (Arabic *El Qāhirah*), **Марсель** (French *Marseille*), **Турин** (Italian *Torino*);

(*c*) The names of historical and geographical regions as well as administrative units: **Золотой берег** (English *Gold Coast*), **Поморье** (Polish *Pomorze*), **Приморская**

Шаранта (French *Charente Maritime*), Нижняя Австрия (German *Niederösterreich*);

(*d*) The names of seas, big gulfs, important straits and channels: Японское море (Japanese *Nihon Kai*, Korean *Tonghae*), Бискайский залив (Spanish *Golfo de Vizcaya* or *Mar Cantábrico*, French *Golfe de Gascogne*), Суэцкий канал (Arabic *Qanāt es Suweis*);

(*e*) The names of individual outstanding physical–geographical features (rivers, mountains, islands, lakes, waterfalls etc.): Темза (English *Thames River*), Эльба (German *Elbe*), Сена (French *Seine*), Арденны (French *Ardennes*), Бразильское плоскогорье (Portuguese *Planalto Brasileiro*), Тивериадское озеро (Hebrew *Yam Kinneret*, Arabic *Buḥairat Ṭabarīyah*);

(*f*) The names of historical and archaeological memorials: Ангкор (Khmer *Angko*); Геркуланум (Italian *Ercolano*), Колизей (Italian *Coloseo*), Карфаген (Arabic *Qarṭajannah*);

(*g*) The names of individual large-scale economic enterprises: Высотная Асуанская плотина (Arabic *Sadd el 'Āli*).

Some conventional names form larger or smaller "families": the conventional form of the key element entails the Russification of other elements attached to it. For example, the Russian-rendered form of Альпы for the Alps gives rise to numerous names of their parts, local forms of which belong to different languages: Альгойские Альпы (German *Allgäuer Alpen*), Лигурийские Альпы (Italian *Alpi Liguri*), Грайские Альпы (French *Alpes Graies*) and others. The name Силезия (Polish *Śląsk*, Czech *Slezsko*, German *Schlesien*) is the core of the "family" comprising Верхнесилезский бассейн (Polish *Zagłębie Górnośląskie*), Нижнесилезские боры (Polish *Dolnośląskie Bory*) and others. The Russian form Дунай entails the translation of differential attributes in the names of its parts: Малый Дунай (Hungarian *Kis-Duna*, Czech *Mali Duna*), Шорокшарский Дунай (Czech *Šorokšari Duna*) and the like.

It is rather difficult if not impossible to collect all forms of this kind, therefore the derivative names are not included in the *Dictionary* and the key-names are marked with asterisks.

A comparatively complete list of conventional names compiled by us permits us to evaluate properly the significance and the degree of conventionality of each name and to provide recommendations on the possible exclusion of some of them from the category of conventional names.

Unquestionably, there is a stable tradition governing the use of conventional names for countries and their capitals, historical regions, large ocean features (seas, gulfs, straits), the largest orographic features and biogeographic communities as well as for major rivers. As a rule such names are either a combination of a foreign root with Russian suffixes and endings or a complete or partial translation.

But there is another group of conventional names that should be treated in a different way. These are conventional names that are not widely known and for whose employment there exists no stable tradition, although they do occur on maps and in literature. Many of them appeared originally as a result of lack of linguistic knowledge or wrong transcription. In this case we have grounds to reject the tradition and to substitute the correct and modern forms for the wrong, outdated ones. For example, we have managed without notable loss to replace the form Лос-Анжелос with the correct Лос-Анджелес (*Los Angeles*, United States of America). The name Балканские горы disappeared from our maps and was replaced by Стара-Планина (Bulgaria); the name Халл is already substituting for the conventional Гулль (*Hall*, United Kingdom). It seems possible to give up some translated names beginning by refusing to translate differential attributes (such as great little, high low, northern or southern) when they appear in the names of small features: instead of Большая фани and Малая фани to use фани-и-Мад and фани-и-Вогель (*Fani i Madh*, *Fani i Vogel*, Albania); instead of Высокий and Низкий Есеник to use Груби-Есеник and Низки-Есеник (*Hrubý Jeseník*, *Nízký Jeseník*, Czechoslovakia); and so on.

Rather a numerous group consists of names expressed by nouns in the genitive case or by possessive adjectives: о-ва Кука (English *Cook Islands*), прол. Дрейка (English *Drake Passage*), Тасманово море (English *Tasman Sea*), Магелланов пролив (Spanish *Estrecho de Magallanes*). All of these are Russian forms derived from foreign personal names introduced into Russian: Кук, Тасман, Дрейк, Магеллан (*Cook*, *Tasman*, *Drake*, *Magallanes*). Names of this kind can hardly be considered as conventional ones, though in future such forms should be avoided.

There is one more category of geographical feature names that can hardly be considered as conventional, even though they vary from language to language. These are the names of features located beyond a national jurisdiction or covering the territory of several countries, e.g. Атлантический океан, Средиземное море, Черное море, Азия, Америка, Европа, Перуанская впадина, Центральноамериканский желоб and the like. Such names do not have—cannot have—any national form; each language has its own name forms for them, which represent either phonetic variations (e.g. "Asia", "Europe" etc. in different languages) or grammatical variations (Атлантический океан, *Atlantic Ocean*, *Océano Atlántico*, etc.) or lexical variations of the same name Тихий океан *Pacific Ocean*, *Stiller-Ozean* etc.).

* * *

The material in the *Dictionary* is presented in five columns. Conventional Russian names appear in the first column, in alphabetical order. If the conventional form coincides with one or more national forms of the name it is explained by a parenthetical indication of the language(s), e.g. Карпаты (тр. и польск.). The second column contains a designation of the kind of feature named, in mnemonic codes. The third column gives the

national name form(s) (one or several), with an indication of the source language. The names from Cyrillic- or Roman-writing countries are reproduced in original script; names from other countries are reproduced in the official script or in most widespread Romanized form. The names of physical features are usually accompanied by corresponding generic terms and the specific part of the name is underlined. Generics for the administrative units are placed after the toponyms, from which they are separated by a comma. The fourth column incorporates the Russian normalized names that should be used in the absence of or instead of the conventional one. The geographical term is not repeated in this case. The fifth column is meant for indication of the territory or water body where the named feature is located.

In the preface to the *Dictionary* we appeal to all readers to inform us of their opinions as to whether it is possible to reject certain names that are now regarded as conventional and, if so, what particular names could be changed.

ESSAI DE CLASSIFICATION DES EXONYMES
Rapport présenté par la France*

Summary

The paper is an attempt at classifying exonyms on the basis of the origin, nature and extent of the differences noted in the report between "exonyms" and "local names". The system of classification is illustrated by many examples relating to countries and features as well as to towns.

Annexed to the paper is a list (confined to European towns) of the exonyms most frequently encountered in French publications.

Resumen

La comunicación se presenta en forma de un intento de clasificación de los exónimos basado en el origen, la naturaleza y la importancia de las diferencias observadas entre "exónimo" y "denominación local". La clasificación se ilustra con numerosos ejemplos relativos tanto a los países o a los detalles topográficos como a las ciudades.

Se anexa a la comunicación una lista de los exónimos que se encuentran con mayor frecuencia en las publicaciones francesas. Está limitada a las ciudades europeas.

*

* *

Le Groupe de travail sur les définitions, constitué au sein du Groupe spécial d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques, a défini ainsi l'exonyme: "Nom propre employé dans une certaine langue pour désigner un objet géographique situé à l'extérieur du territoire dans lequel cette langue a un statut officiel et différent dans sa forme du nom propre utilisé dans la ou les langues officielles du territoire où l'objet géographique est situé." Le Groupe d'experts a constaté que dans le passé les expressions "nom conventionnel", "nom consacré" et "exonyme" ont été utilisées indifféremment par les pays dans la même acception; pour éviter cette confusion, il a recommandé l'usage du terme "exonyme" à l'exclusion de tout autre dans le sens rappelé précédemment. Il a pu ainsi mettre en opposition avec le terme exonyme l'expression "nom traditionnel", qu'il a définie comme un "nom qui, sous sa forme écrite, est d'un usage répandu, courant et durable à l'intérieur d'une communauté linguistique donnée, mais qui diffère de toute dénomination officielle locale".

Le présent rapport se propose de déterminer une classification des exonymes fondée sur l'origine, la nature et l'importance des différences constatées entre "exonyme" et "dénomination locale". La classification est illustrée par de nombreux exemples concernant aussi bien les pays ou les détails topographiques que les villes. Certains noms étrangers tels que le Texas, les Açores et les Andes sont repris par le français avec adjonction d'un article initial ou traduction de l'article local. Dans le cadre de la classification, ils ne sont pas considérés comme des exonymes. De même ne sont pas considérés comme des exonymes les noms géographiques français tels que Panama, Iran, Irak et Pakistan qui ne diffèrent du nom local que par l'absence des signes diacritiques.

Dans le système de classification présenté, il n'existe pas de cloisons étanches entre les différentes catégories et les caractéristiques de ces catégories peuvent se combiner entre elles dans un grand nombre d'autres exonymes possibles. L'intitulé des catégories étant assez souple pour permettre d'y classer des exonymes d'aspects divers, chacun d'entre eux pourra être qualifié par plusieurs attributs: sa structure, sa construction, sa composition, son origine et son mode de formation. Les trois premiers critères seront surtout pertinents pour les exonymes composés. Les deux derniers seront les critères privilégiés des noms propres.

Les délégués participant à la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Londres en mai 1972, ont constaté que les exonymes des objets géographiques peu importants tendent à être remplacés par les dénominations officielles locales, mais que les exonymes des objets importants font partie intégrante du système lexical d'une langue et qu'ils ne peuvent donc pas être éliminés sans appauvrir le vocabulaire de cette langue, et qu'enfin leur remplace-

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF 69/L 68 et Add 1

ment par le nom officiel local créerait pour les utilisateurs étrangers des difficultés d'orthographe et de prononciation.

Ils ont néanmoins reconnu que cette prolifération d'exonymes pouvait prêter à confusion dans certaines activités internationales et notamment en matière de communication ou de circulation routière. C'est pourquoi la Conférence a recommandé, par les résolutions 28 et 29[1], que les organismes nationaux chargés des noms géographiques dressent la liste des exonymes couramment employés et examinent la possibilité d'en réduire l'emploi dans les ouvrages destinés à être utilisés dans leur pays.

Suivant la recommandation exprimée par la Conférence, la Commission de toponymie de l'Institut géographique national (IGN) a dressé une liste des exonymes les plus fréquemment rencontrés dans les publications françaises. La Commission l'a limitée aux villes d'Europe et elle a exclu les noms de villes historiques qui ne sont aujourd'hui que des lieux inhabités offrant un intérêt touristique, comme Olympie ou Delphes (voir l'annexe I).

La Commission de toponymie a utilisé pour sa communication le terme "traduction" dans le sens d'une "opération consistant à produire dans une langue, dite d'arrivée, l'équivalent naturel le plus proche d'un message exprimé dans une autre langue, dite de départ, en tenant compte à la fois de la signification du message et de son style".

Les déterminants sont compris comme "les constituants d'un groupe d'éléments linguistiques qui dépendent du nom, tête ou constituant principal de ce groupe. En ce cas, les déterminants sont les articles, les adjectifs, les compléments du nom; ce sont les éléments qui actualisent le nom (déterminé), qui lui donnent ses déterminations".

Pour en revenir à l'observation déjà faite à propos de l'absence de cloisons étanches dans la classification, on peut remarquer que celle-ci fait qu'un certain nombre d'exonymes apparaissent comme des "exonymes combinés", en ce sens que leur structure et leur formation répondent à des critères multiples, qui ont tous servi individuellement à déterminer les différentes catégories de la classification.

Du point de vue de la structure, des exonymes comme Reggio de Calabre et Reggio d'Emilie (Italie) apparaissent comme essentiellement constitués par des noms propres, mais l'un, Reggio, pris isolément, ne peut pas être considéré comme un exonyme, alors que les deux autres, Calabre et Emilie, appartiendraient en tant que toponymes isolés à la catégorie 3-I-4 (voir l'annexe II).

Dans Francfort-sur-le-Main et Fribourg-en-Brisgau, en République fédérale d'Allemagne, on décèle l'existence d'un critère de traduction portant sur les prépositions et articles, d'un critère de déformation ou de corruption portant sur la diphtongue *ei* et d'un critère d'adaptation phonétique portant sur la voyelle *u*; enfin, on peut noter que Main pris isolément n'est pas un exonyme.

Dans Angleterre (Royaume-Uni), on note le critère de traduction portant sur une partie du mot unique Angleterre, alors que, dans le reste du même mot, on se trouve en présence d'un critère de déformation ou de corruption (vieil anglais, Engla lond), ou, éventuellement, d'une évolution différente à partir d'une origine commune (Anglen, région du Slesvig, en République fédérale d'Allemagne).

Enfin, Louisbourg (Ludwigsburg) en République fédérale d'Allemagne, qui se présente comme un nom propre en un seul mot, est originellement constitué par l'association d'un nom commun et d'un prénom; l'exonyme combine la traduction du prénom et l'adaptation phonétique du nom commun aux habitudes orthographiques du français.

Annexe I

LISTE D'EXONYMES[a]

1	EXONYMES COMPOSÉS D'UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS COMMUNS ET DE LEURS DÉTERMINANTS À L'EXCLUSION DE TOUT NOM PROPRE	
	Ces exonymes proviennent de la traduction du nom local. Cette traduction peut être elliptique; dans ce cas, certains éléments du nom local n'ont pas de correspondants en français, la signification du message n'étant pas altérée	
1.1	*Traduction du nom local*	
1.1.1	*L'exonyme est constitué d'un substantif seul*:	
	L'Equateur	Ecuador
	La Haye (Pays-Bas)	den Haag
1.1.2	*L'exonyme est constitué de substantifs et d'adjectifs*	
1.1.2.1	*Un seul substantif déterminé par un ou plusieurs adjectifs*:	
	La Forêt-Noire (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	der Schwarzwald
	Les Pays-Bas	Nederland
	Montagne Blanche (Tchéoslovaquie)	Bila Hora
	Grande Vallée (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Central Valley
	Grand Lac Salé (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Great Salt Lake
	Deux-Ponts (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Zweibrücken
1.1.2.2	*Deux substantifs dont l'un est le complément de l'autre*:	
	La Terre de Feu (Chili et Argentine)	Tierra del Fuego
	Iles du Commandeur (URSS)	Komandorskije Ostrova
	Rivière des Esclaves (Canada)	Slave River
	Union des Républiques socialistes soviétiques	Sojuz Sovetskich Socialističeskich Respublik
	Iles de l'Amirauté (Papouasie-Nouvelle-Guinée)	Admiralty Islands
	Iles du Cap-Vert	Ilhas do Cabo Verde
1.2	*Traduction elliptique du nom local*	
	Le Cap (Afrique du Sud)	Cape Town ou Kaapstadt
2	EXONYMES COMPOSÉS D'AU MOINS UN NOM PROPRE ACCOMPAGNÉ D'UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS COMMUNS ET DE LEURS DÉTERMINANTS	

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

[a] Une liste de villes d'Europe établie par catégories, telles qu'elles sont définies ci-dessous, figure à l'annexe II.

2 1 *Exonymes provenant de la traduction du nom local*

Andorre-la-Vieille (Principauté d'Andorre)	Andorra la Vella
La Nouvelle-Galles du Sud (Australie)	New South Wales
Les Etats-Unis d'Amérique	The United States of America
La Transbaïkalie (URSS)	Zabajkalje
Archipel de la Nouvelle-Sibérie (URSS)	Novosibirskije Ostrova
Ile de Pâques (Chili)	Isla de Pascua
Saint-Jacques-de-Compostelle (Espagne)	Santiago de Compostela

2 2 *Exonymes se présentant comme la traduction du nom local*

2 2 1 *Eléments en correspondance*

La Nouvelle-Zélande (du néerlandais Nieuw Zeeland)	New Zealand
Le Nouveau-Mexique (Etats-Unis d'Amérique) (de l'espagnol Nuevo Méjico)	New Mexico
Le Détroit de Magellan (Chili) (du portugais Magalhens)	el Estrecho de Magallanes

2 2 2 *Eléments additionnels*

Aix-la-Chapelle (Allemagne. République fédérale d') [du latin Aquae Grani]	Aachen

2 3 *Exonymes provenant de la traduction partielle du nom local*

2 3 1 *Noms propres tirés du nom local par emprunt direct*

D'une manière générale, peuvent se ranger dans cette catégorie les toponymes composés constitués d'un terme générique et d'un nom propre de lieu ou de personne pour lequel n'existe aucun usage traditionnel français; tels que:

Iles Marshall (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Marshall Islands
Iles Falkland (Royaume-Uni)	Falkland Islands

2 3 2 *Noms propres présentant des altérations*

Vieux-Brisach (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Alt-Breisach

3 EXONYMES COMPOSÉS EXCLUSIVEMENT D UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS PROPRES

3 1 *Exonymes provenant de la même dénomination originelle que le nom local*

3 1 1 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation phonétique aux habitudes orthographiques du français*

Peuvent se ranger dans cette catégorie tous les noms français qui ne diffèrent des noms locaux que par l'addition d'un *e* muet en finale. abstraction faite des signes diacritiques, tels que:

L'Islande	Island
La Finlande	Suomi et Finland

Peuvent aussi se ranger dans cette catégorie les exonymes suivants:

Iéna (Allemagne. République fédérale d')	Jena
Cassel (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Kassel
Augsbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Augsburg
Hambourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Hamburg
Clèves (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Kleve
Coblence (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Koblenz
Cobourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Koburg
Duisbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Duisburg
Oldenbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Oldenburg
Wurtzbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Würzburg
Le Pérou	el Perú
L'Irlande	Ireland

3 1 2 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation sémantique aux structures linguistiques du français*

L'Argentine	la Argentina
La Bolivie	Bolivia
La Colombie	Colombia
Louisbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Ludwigsburg

3 1 3 *Exonymes résultant de la déformation ou de la corruption du nom local*

3 1 3 1 *Noms locaux écrits en caractères latins*

Bucarest (Roumanie)	Bucureşti
Varsovie (Pologne)	Warszawa
Cracovie (Pologne)	Kraków
Hanovre (Allemagne. République fédérale d')	Hannover
Leyde (Pays-Bas)	Leiden
Londres (Royaume-Uni)	London
Spire (République démocratique allemande)	Speyer

3 1 3 2 *Nom local écrit en caractères non latins*

Ces exonymes résultent:

a) Soit d'une transcription phonétique approchée, dont le degré de fidélité et de précision peut être très variable;

b) Soit d'une translittération d'une rigueur incertaine, fondée sur les habitudes orthographiques du français.

Il sera le plus souvent très difficile de connaître l'origine de l'exonyme et le processus qui a conduit à sa forme actuelle Il faut de plus noter que les systèmes de transcription ou de translittération peuvent rarement être parfaits et universels, et qu'ils varient avec le temps, aussi bien en France que dans le pays où se situe l'objet géographique considéré Ainsi, une modification relative du système de translittération. par exemple en France et dans le pays où se trouve l'objet géographique considéré, aura pour conséquence de transformer en exonyme ce qui était jusque-là une dénomination propre

Le Cambodge	Kàmpŭchéa
Kiev (URSS)	Kijev
Moscou (URSS)	Moskva
Nijni-Novgorod (URSS)	Nižnij Novgorod
Sofia (Bulgarie)	Sofija
Arkhangel (URSS)	Archangel'sk
Médine (Arabie Saoudite)	al Madina

3 1 4 *Exonymes résultant d'une évolution différente de celle dont résulte le nom local*

Florence / Firenze	Italie	(Du latin Florentia)
Rome / Roma	Italie	(Du latin Roma)
Agrigente / Agrigento	Italie	(Du latin Agrigentum)
Athènes / Athinai	Grèce	(Du grec Athênai)
Capoue / Capua	Italie	(Du latin Capua)
Coni / Cuneo	Italie	(Du latin Cuneus)
Gênes / Genova	Italie	(Du latin Genua)
Milan / Milano	Italie	(Du latin Mediolanum)

Cologne / Köln	Allemagne, République fédérale d'	(Du latin Colonia)
Naples / Napoli	Italie	(Du grec Neapolis)
Valence / Valencia	Espagne	(Du latin Valentia)
Brunswick / Braunschweig	Allemagne, République fédérale d'	(De Brunswich, 861; du latin *vicus*)

3.1.5 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation aux règles de l'évolution phonétique du français à partir de la langue mère commune*

3.1.5.1 *Eléments en correspondance*

Aoste (Italie)	Aosta
Carignan (Italie)	Carignano
Caserte (Italie)	Caserta
Ferrare (Italie)	Ferrara
Cérignole (Italie)	Cerignola
Barcelone (Espagne)	Barcelona
Bragance (Portugal)	Bragança
Ivrée (Italie)	Ivrea

3.1.5.2 *Eléments ajoutés*

La Marsaille (Italie)	Marsaglia

3.1.5.3 *Eléments omis:*

Cérisoles (Italie)	Ceresole Alba

3.2 *Exonymes provenant d'une dénomination différente de celle dont provient le nom local*

3.2.1 *Exonyme et nom local dérivent d'origines différentes*

Ratisbonne (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	(De Radaspona)
Regensburg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	(De Regen)
Allemagne / Deutschland	(Du latin Alamanniae, Alamanni)

3.2.2 *Exonyme provenant d'un emprunt à une tierce langue*

3.2.2.1 *La tierce langue est la langue d'origine*

Les Bermudes (Royaume-Uni) / Bermuda	(De l'espagnol Bermudas)

3.2.2.2 *La tierce langue n'est pas la langue d'origine*

Austerlitz (Tchécoslovaquie)	Slavkov
Formose (du portugais Formosa)	T'aiwan
Le Japon (du chinois jè pên kuo)	Nippon
Scutari (de l'italien) (Albanie)	Shkodër
Kharbin (du russe) (Chine)	Pin-Chiang
Arménie (du grec Armenia)	Hayastan

3.3 *Faux exonymes*

Il convient de ranger séparément les noms de lieux qui, aux termes de la définition rappelée au début de cette communication, sont des exonymes mais qui, de fait, sont les dénominations originelles des objets géographiques considérés ou des entités dont ces derniers sont issus. Il paraît possible de les désigner sous le nom de faux exonymes ou pseudo-exonymes.

La Nouvelle-Orléans (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	New Orleans
La Louisiane (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Louisiana
Port-Saïd (Egypte)	Bûr Sa'id
Sainte-Lucie (Royaume-Uni)	Saint Lucia

* * *

En conclusion, la classification présentée, qui se fonde à la fois sur la structure et sur le mode de formation en français des exonymes, devrait pouvoir constituer une base de travail en vue de recherches plus poussées. Compte tenu cependant des aspects multiples que peuvent prendre les exonymes dans les langues officielles existantes, il est à prévoir que d'autres contributions seront apportées sur ce sujet au cours de la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies pour la normalisation des noms géographiques, enrichissant ainsi nos connaissances de base.

Annexe II

VILLES D'EUROPE

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*
AGRIGENTE	AGRIGENTO (latin : Agrigentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
AIX-LA-CHAPELLE	AACHEN (latin : Aquae Grani)	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	2.2.2
AMATHONTE	AMATHOUS (grec : Amathous)	Chypre	Grec	3.1.4
ANCÔNE	ANCONA (latin : Ancona et Ancon)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
ANDORRE-LA-VIEILLE	ANDORRA LA VELLA	Andorre	Espagnol	2.1
(ANTIOCHE	ANTAKYA	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4)
ANVERS	ANTWERPEN	Belgique	Flamand	3.1.4
AQUILÉE	AQUILEIA (latin : Aquileia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
ARGOSTOLI	ARGOSTOLION	Grèce	Grec	3.1.3.1
ASSISE	ASSISI (latin : Asisium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
ATHÈNES	ATHÍNAI (grec : Athênai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4
AUGSBOURG	AUGSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1
AUSTERLITZ	SLAVKOV	Tchécoslovaquie	Tchèque	3.2.2.2
BAIES	BAIA (latin : Baiae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
BARCELONE	BARCELONA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5
BELGRADE	BEOGRAD	Yougoslavie	Croate	3.1.4
BÉNÉVENT	BENEVENTO (latin: Beneventum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie°*
BERGAME	BERGAMO (latin : Bergomum)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
BOLOGNE	BOLOGNA (latin : Bononia)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
BRAGANCE	BRAGANÇA	Portugal	Portugais	3 1 5 1
BRANDEBOURG	BRANDENBURG	Rép. dém. allemande	Allemand	3 1 1 3 1 3 1
BRÊME	BREMEN	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1 3 1 3 1
BROUSSE	BURSA (latin : Prusa)	Turquie	Turc	3 1 4)
BRUNSWICK	BRAUNSCHWEIG	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 4
BUCAREST	BUCUREŞTI	Roumanie	Roumain	3 1 3 1
CADIX	CÁDIZ (latin : Gades)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
CALAMATA	KALAMATA ou KALAMAI	Grèce	Grec	3 1 1
CANÉE (LA)	KHANIA	Grèce	Grec	3 1 5 1
CANTORBÉRY	CANTERBURY	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3 1 3 1
CAPOUE	CAPUA (latin : Capua)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
CARIGNAN	CARIGNANO	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
CARLSRUHE	KARLSRUHE	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
CARRARE	CARRARA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
CARTAGÈNE	CARTAGENA	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
CASERTE	CASERTA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
CASSEL	KASSEL	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
CATANE	CATANIA (latin : Catina)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
CÉRIGNOLE	CERIGNOLA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
CÉRISOLES	CERESOLE ALBA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 3
CLÈVES	KLEVE	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
CLOSTERCAMP	KLOSTERKAMP	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
COBLENCE	KOBLENZ	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
COBOURG	KOBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
COIMBRE	COIMBRA (latin : Conimbriga)	Portugal	Portugais	3 1 4
COLOGNE	KÖLN (latin : Colonia)	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 4
CÔME	COMO (latin : Comum)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
COMOTINI	KOMITINI	Grèce	Grec	3 1 1
CONI	CUNEO	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
CONSTANCE	KONSTANZ	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
COPENHAGUE	KØBENHAVN	Danemark	Danois	3 1 3 1
CORDOUE	CÓRDOBA (latin : Corduba)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
CORINTHE	KORÍNTHOS (grec : Korinthos)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
CRACOVIE	KRAKÓW	Pologne	Polonais	3 1 3 1
CRÉMONE	CREMONA (latin : Cremona)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
CUXHAVEN	KUXHAVEN	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
DEUX-PONTS	ZWEIBRÜCKEN	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	1 1 2 1
DRESDE	DRESDEN	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	3 1 3 1
DUISBOURG	DUISBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
EDIMBOURG	EDINBURGH	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3 1 1
ÉLATÉE	ELATEIA (grec : Elateia)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
ELSENEUR	HELSINGØR	Danemark	Danois	3 1 3 1
ÉRÉTRIE	ERETRIA (grec : Eretria)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
FAMAGOUSTE	AMMOKHÓSTOS (latin : Fama Augusta)	Chypre	Grec	3 2 2 1
FERRARE	FERRARA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
FLESSINGUE	VLISSINGEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3 1 3 1
FLORENCE	FIRENZE (latin : Florentia)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
FONTARABIE	FUENTERRABIA	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 3 1
FORNOUE	FORNOVO	Italie	Italien	3 1 3 1

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
FRANCFORT-SUR-LE-MAIN	FRANKFURT AM MAIN	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
FRANCFORT-SUR-L'ODER	FRANKFURT AN DER ODER	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	Combiné
FRIBOURG-EN-BRISGAU	FREIBURG IM BREISGAU	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
GAÈTE	GAETA (latin : Caieta)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
GALATZI	GALATI	Roumanie	Roumain	3.1.3.1.
GALLIPOLI	GELIBOLU (grec : Kallipolis)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4
GÊNES	GENOVA (latin : Genua)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
GÉRONE	GERONA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1
GRENADE	GRANADA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.3.1
GRONINGUE	GRONINGEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3.1.3.1
HAMBOURG	HAMBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1
HANOVRE	HANNOVER	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1
IÉNA	JENA	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	3.1.1
IVRÉE	IVREA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1
JULIERS	JÜLICH (latin : Juliacum)	Allemagne (Rep. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.4
KIEV	KIJEV	URSS	Russe	3.1.3.2
LA COROGNE	LA CORUNA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1.
LA HAYE	DEN HAAG OU 's-Gravenhage	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	1.1.1
LANCASTRE	LANCASTER	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.4
LEUCTRES	LEVKTRA (grec : Leuktra)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
LEYDE	LEIDEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3.1.3.1.
LIMBOURG-SUR-LA-LAHN	LIMBURG AN DER LAHN	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
LISBONNE	LISBOA	Portugal	Portugais	3.1.3
LIVOURNE	LIVORNO	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1
LONDRES	LONDON	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.4
LORETTE	LORETO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1
LOUISBOURG	LUDWIGSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
LUCQUES	LUCCA (latin : Luca)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
MANTOUE	MANTOVA (latin : Mantua)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
MARBOURG	MARBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1
MARSAILLE (LA)	MARSAGLIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.2
MAYENCE	MAINZ	Allemagne (Rép. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1
MÉGARE	MEGARA (grec : Megara)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4
MESSÈNE	MESSINI (grec : Messênê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4
MESSINE	MESSINA (latin : Messana)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
MILAN	MILANO (latin : Mediolanum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
MODÈNE	MODENA (latin : Mutina)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
MOSCOU	MOSKVA	URSS	Russe	3.1.3.2
MUNICH	MÜNCHEN	Allemagne (Rep. fèd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
MURCIE	MURCIA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1.
MYCÈNES	MYKINAI (grec : Mukênai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4
MYTILÈNE	MYTILINI (grec : Mutilênê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4
NAPLES	NAPOLI (grec : Neapolis)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4
NAUPACTE	NAVPAKTOS (grec : Naupaktos)	Grece	Grec	3.1.4
NAUPLIE	NAVPLION (grec : Nauplios)	Grece	Grec	3.1.4
NICOSIE	LEVKOSIA LEFKOŞE	Chypre	Grec Turc	3.1.3.1
NOLE	NOLA (latin : Nola)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
NOVARE	NOVARA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
NUREMBERG	NÜRNBERG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3 1 3 1
OLDENBOURG	OLDENBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
OLYNTHE	OLYNTHOS (grec : Olunthos)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
OSTIE	OSTIA (latin : Ostia)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
OTRANTE	OTRANTO	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
PADOUE	PADOVA	Italie	Italien	3 1 3 1
PALERME	PALERMO	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
PAMPELUNE	PAMPLONA (latin : Pompelona)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
PARME	PARMA (latin : Parma)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
PATRAS	PATRAI (grec : patrai)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
PAVIE	PAVIA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
(PERGAME	BERGAMA (grec : Pergamon)	Turquie	Turc	3 1 4)
PÉROUSE	PERUGIA (latin : Perusia)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
PIRÉE (LE)	PIRAIEVS (grec : Peiraieus)	Grèce	Grec	Combiné
PISE	PISA (latin : Pisae)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
PLAISANCE	PIACENZA (latin : Placentia)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
PORT-EMPÉDOCLE	PORTO EMPEDOCLE	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
POTIDÉE	POTIDAIA (grec : Potidaia)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
POUZZOLES	POZZUOLI (latin : Puteoli)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
PRAGUE	PRAHA	Tchécoslovaquie	Tchèque	3 1 3 1
PRÉNESTE	PALESTRINA (latin : Praeneste)	Italie	Italien	3 2 1
RAGUSE	RAGUSA (latin : Ragusa)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
RATISBONNE	REGENSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3 2 1
RAVENNE	RAVENNA (latin : Ravenna)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
REGGIO DE CALABRE	REGGIO DI CALABRIA	Italie	Italien	Combiné
REGGIO D'ÉMILIE	REGGIO NELL'EMILIA	Italie	Italien	Combiné
RHODES	RODOS (grec : Rodos)	Grèce	Grec	3 1 4
ROME	ROMA (latin : Roma)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
SAGONTE	SAGUNTO (latin : Saguntum)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
SAINT-JACQUES-DE-COMPOSTELLE	SANTIAGO DE COMPOSTELA	Espagne	Espagnol	2 1
SAINT-MARIN	SAN MARINO	Saint-Marin	Italien	2 1
SAINT-SÉBASTIEN	SAN SEBASTIÁN	Espagne	Espagnol	2 1
SALAMANQUE	SALAMANCA (latin : Salmantica)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
SALAMINE	SALAMIS (grec : Salamis)	Chypre	Grec	3 1 4
SALERNE	SALERNO (latin : Salernum)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4
SALZBOURG	SALZBURG	Autriche	Allemand	3 1 1
SALUCES	SALUZZO	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
SARAGOSSE	ZARAGOZA (latin : Caesaraugusta)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
SARREBRUCK	SAARBRÜCK EN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
SARRELOUIS	SAARLOUIS	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3 1 1
SAVONE	SAVONA	Italie	Italien	3 1 5 1
SCUTARI (français et italien)	SHKODAR	Albanie	Albanais	3 2 2 2
SÉGOVIE	SEGOVIA (latin : Segovia)	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
SÉVILLE	SEVILLA	Espagne	Espagnol	3 1 4
SIENNE	SIENA (latin : Sena)	Italie	Italien	3 1 4

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
SILISTRIE	SILISTRA	Bulgarie	Bulgare	3.1.3.1
(SINOPE	SINOP (grec : Sinopê)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
(SMYRNE	IZMIR (grec : Smurnê)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
SOFIA	SOFIJA	Bulgarie	Bulgare	3.1.3.2.
SORRENTE	SORRENTO (latin : Surrentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SPARTE	SPARTI (grec : Spartê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
SPOLÈTE	SPOLETO (latin : Spoletium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SPIRE	SPEYER	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
SUSE	SUSA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
SYRACUSE	SIRACUSA (latin : Syracusae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TARENTE	TARANTO	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
TARQUINIES	TARQUINIA (latin : Tarquinii)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TARRAGONE	TARRAGONA (latin : Tarraco)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
TERRACINE	TERRACINA (latin : Tarracina)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
THÈBES	THIVAI (grec : Thêbai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
THESSALONIQUE ou SALONIQUE	THESSALONIKI (grec : Thessalonikê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
TOLÈDE	TOLEDO (latin : Toletum)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
(TRÈBIZONDE	TRABZON (grec : Trapezous)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
TRENTE	TRENTO (latin : Tridentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TRÊVES	TRIER (latin : Augusta Treverorum)	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3.1.4.
TRÉVISE	TREVISO (latin : Tarvisium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TURIN	TORINO (latin : Augusta Taurinorum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
URBIN	URBINO (latin : Urbinum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VALENCE	VALENCIA (latin : Valentia)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
VALETTE (LA)	VALETTA	Malte	Anglais, Maltais	3.3.
VARSOVIE	WARSZAWA	Pologne	Polonais	3.1.3.1.
VENISE	VENEZIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
VERCEIL	VERCELLI (latin : Vercellae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VÉRONE	VERONA (latin : Verona)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VICENCE	VICENZA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
VIENNE	WIEN (latin: Vindobona; Vienna 880)	Autriche	Allemand	3.1.4.
VIEUX-BRISACH	BREISACH ou ALTBREISACH	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	2.3.2.
VINTIMILLE	VENTIMIGLIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
VITERBE	VITERBO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
VOLO	VOLOS	Grèce	Grec	3.1.3.2.
WURTZBOURG	WÜRZBURG	Allemagne (Rép. fed. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.

[a] Pour la définition de chaque catégorie, se reporter à l'annexe I.

CATÉGORIES D'EXONYMES ET LEUR DEGRÉ D'UTILISATION

Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

En application des résolutions 28 et 29 adoptées par la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, concernant la limitation de l'emploi des exonymes dans chaque langue[1], la Roumanie présente ci-après une liste préliminaire d'exonymes qui pourront être éliminés (voir annexes I et II).

A une époque au cours de laquelle la rédaction des noms géographiques ne constituait pas une préoccupation d'ordre rigoureusement scientifique, en roumain, comme en d'autres langues, des exonymes ont été introduits, dans des conditions et par des voies différentes, dans un passé plus ou moins éloigné ou rapproché. Il est indubitable que jadis les exonymes étaient employés plus fréquemment et en plus grand nombre.

La tendance générale contemporaine, accentuée au cours des dernières décennies, est d'éliminer progressivement les exonymes de la langue roumaine. Le processus historique normal, constaté aussi en d'autres langues, a été évidemment accéléré au cours des dernières années par des actions concertées de normalisation initiées sur le plan international. Un des premiers partisans de l'idée de l'élimination des exonymes de la langue roumaine a été, dès 1921, Stefan Hepites, vice-président de la Société roumaine de géographie.

Après la seconde guerre mondiale, dans le cadre de l'action générale de normalisation des noms géographiques en Roumanie, commencée dès 1958, on a eu pour objectif la réglementation systématique et unitaire des noms traditionnels (exonymes). On a commencé, bien avant que les recommandations sur le plan international soient formulées, l'introduction généralisée, par étapes, de noms officiels, dans toutes les catégories toponymiques, y compris celles ayant acquis des formes traditionnelles entrées dans l'usage linguistique. Cette manière de résoudre le problème a permis, d'une part, de traiter d'une façon uniforme tous les noms géographiques et, d'autre part, d'éliminer les exceptions difficiles représentées par les noms traditionnels. Toutefois, tenant compte de la fréquence de l'utilisation de certains d'entre eux et de leur degré de diffusion dans la langue roumaine, il a été recommandé que ces formes usuelles soient gardées et rédigées entre parenthèses.

De nombreux ouvrages de cartographie et de géographie, publiés en Roumanie au cours des dernières années, ont été rédigés de cette manière: *Petit atlas géographique* (1962, 1967, 1977), *Petit dictionnaire encyclopédique roumain* (1972), *Les pays du monde* (1975, 1977), etc. Dans cet esprit ont été élaborées à l'Institut de géographie (1972), à l'occasion de la réalisation de l'*Atlas géographique national*, *Les normes pour la rédaction des noms géographiques*, qui ont été approuvées aussi par la Commission de la langue roumaine de l'Académie roumaine et par les autorités cartographiques compétentes, ayant ainsi acquis un caractère officiel. L'application de ces principes d'utilisation des exonymes est reflétée dans les premiers fascicules déjà parus de l'*Atlas de la République socialiste de Roumanie*.

Au cours des dernières années, conformément aux recommandations des conférences des Nations Unies et des réunions bilatérales organisées par l'UNESCO ayant pour thème l'amélioration des manuels d'histoire et de géographie, les formes officielles ont été adoptées et insérées dans les manuels et dans les atlas scolaires, en tant que doublet, entre parenthèses.

Par conséquent il faut que les règles orthographiques générales (*Le guide orthographique, orthoépique et de ponctuation*, 1971) qui indiquent que "certains noms propres étrangers qui ont été introduits il y a assez longtemps dans notre culture soient rédigés dans la graphie traditionnelle", mais qui, en même temps, admettent "la rédaction de ces noms avec la graphie d'origine dans les ouvrages de spécialité (indications bibliographiques, cartes, études de langues, etc.)", soient revues, rendues actuelles et complétées afin qu'elles soient en conformité avec la résolution III proposée par la Roumanie et adoptée par le douzième Congrès international de sciences onomastiques tenu à Berne en 1975.

La liste préliminaire d'exonymes roumains comprend deux catégories:

a) Les exonymes auxquels on pourra renoncer soit parce que leurs formes graphiques anciennes ont été abandonnées, soit parce que leurs formes fluctuantes comprennent parfois des erreurs de graphie (ils devront être rendus uniquement dans la forme officielle). Exemples: *Tarigrad/Stambul/Constantinopol* = Istanbul; *Lipsca* = Leipzig; *Saragoza/Zaragosa/Saragosa* = Zaragoza; *Bagdad* = Baghdad; *Drezda/Dresda* = Dresden; *Tokio* = Tokyo; *Hanovra* = Hannover; *Neapole/Neapoli/Napŏle* = Napoli.

b) Les exonymes qui pourraient être conservés, comme doublets des noms officiels, en fonction du caractère de la publication. Exemples: *Londra* = London; *Praga* = Praha; *Chisinău* = Kišinev; *Atena* = Athinai; *Caucaz* = Kavkaz; *Cairo* = El Qâhira; *Peking* = Bei jing; *Florenta* = Firenze; *Marsilia* = Marseille; *Bavaria* = Bayern.

Les mesures invoquées, en dépit du court intervalle d'application, sont de nature à limiter, d'une part, et à fixer, d'autre part, l'emploi des exonymes dans la langue roumaine.

---

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.83.

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

Annexe I

LISTE PRÉLIMINAIRE DES EXONYMES AUXQUELS ON POURRA RENONCER (À FORMES GRAPHIQUES ANCIENNES, PARTIELLEMENT ABANDONNÉES OU À FORMES FLUCTUANTES, PARFOIS AVEC DES ERREURS DE GRAPHIE)

Adrianopol = Edirno
Alexandretta = Iskendurun
Angora = Ankara
Antiochia = Antakya
Apalași = Allegheny
Apenini = Appennini
Assuan = Aswân
Bagdad = Baghdâd
Bahrein = Bahrain
Basora = Basrah
Beirut = Beyrouth
Benares = Varanasi
Bitolia = Bitola
Brema = Bremen
Brusa = Bursa
Cadix = Cádiz
Camerun = Cameroun
Cantabrici (M) = Cordillera Cantabrica
Capetown = Cape Town
Caraci/Karaci = Karachi
Caracorum/Karakorum = Karakoram
Caşmir = Kashmir
Cefelonia = Kefallinia
Celebes = Sulawesi
Ceveni = Cévennes
Cezarees = Kayseri
Ciad (L) = Tchad
Colonia = Köln
Constanța = Boden See/Konstanz
Constantinopol = Istanbul
Corfu = Kerkyra
Corita = Korcă
Crăciunului (I) = Christmas
Damiette = Dumyât
Demavend = Damavend
Dresda/Drezda = Dresden
Ebru = Ebro
Edinburg = Edinburgh
Erzerum = Erzurum
Eubeea = Evvia
Fidji = Fiji
Filadelfia = Philadelphia
Fionia = Fyn
Formosa = Taiwan
Frankfurt (pe Main) = Frankfurt (am Main)
Frankfurt (pe Oder) = Frankfurt (a d Oder)
Franț Iosef = Franz-Josef
Fujiyama = Fuji san
Garona = Garonne
Gați = Gats
Geneva (L.) = Léman
Genua = Genova
Grampieni (M.) = Grampian M
Guadelupa = Guadeloupe
Haidarabad = Hyderabad
Haiphong = H'ai Phòng
Hanoi = Hà Nôi
Hanovra = Hannover
Hawai = Hawaii
Heluan = Helwân
Himalais = Himalaya
Hinducuș = Hindukush
Hiroșima = Hiroshima
Ianina = Ioannina
Iberici (M) = Sistema Iberico
Iena = Jena
Ind = Indus
Ismailia = Ismâiliya
Ispahan = Esfahan
Java = Jawa
Kazanlîk = Kazanlâk
Kenia = Kenya
Kilimandjaro = Kilimanjaro
Khartum = Khartoum
Kiel (Can) = Nord-Ostee Kanal
Kuweit = Al Kuwait
Larnaca = Larnaka
Lemberg = Lvov'
Leukas = Lefkaș
Lipsca = Leipzig
Liubliana = Ljubljana
Loara = Loire
Lucerna = Luzern
Luxemburg = Luxembourg
Lysa-Gora/Lyso-Góry = Góry Swiętokrzyskie
Medina = Al Madina
Mantua = Mantova
Marele Canion = Grand Canyon
Marna = Marne
Martinica = Martinique
Mauriciu = Mauritius
Meusa = Meuse/Maas
Missuri = Missouri
Mohaci = Mohácа
Mosela = Moselle/Mosel
Mozambic (Can) = Moçambique
Mukden = Shenyang
Neapole/Napole/Neapoli = Napoli
Noua Galie de Sud = New South Wales
Matapan (C.) = Tainaron
Mișkolț = Miskole
Napoli/Neapole/Neapoli = Napole
Nous Siberie (I) = Novosibirsk
Nous Zemlie = Novaja Zemlja
Noul Orleans = New Orleans
Odesa = Odessa
Odra = Oder
Okinava = Okinawa
Olimp = Olympos
Orcade = Orkney
Orinoc/Orenoc = Orinoco
Orkney de Sud = South Orkney
Pad = Po
Padua = Padova
Parnas = Parnassos
Penini = Penine M
Phenian = Pyongyang
Pilsen = Plseň
Pind = Pindos
Pnom Penh = Phnom Penh
Pripet = Pripiat
Ragusa = Dubrovnik
Riad/Ryad = Ar Riyâd
Ron = Rhône
Rostov pe Don = Rostov-na-Donu
Ruseiuc = Ruse
Saigon/Ho Și Min = Hô Chi Minh
Sanza = San'â
Sandwich de Sud = South Sandwich
Șanhai = Shanghai
Saragosa/Saragoza/Zaragosa = Zaragoza
Saraievo = Sarajevo
Sclavilor (L.) = Great Slave Lake
Scutari = Shkodër
Seghedin = Szegad
Sena = Seine
Șetlande (I) = Shetland
Seul = Seoul
Sfîntul Laurențiu = Saint Lawrence/Saint-Laurent
Sidney = Sydney
Sidon = Saida
Singapur = Singapore
Sinope = Sinop
Siracuza = Siracusa
Skoplje = Skopje
Smirna = Izmir
Sofia = Sofija
Spitzbergen = Svalbard
Stambul = Istanbul
Subotița = Subotica
Suhe Bator = Suhbaatar
Sumatra = Sumatera
Taipeh/Taibeh = Taibei
Tallin = Tallinn
Tanganyka = Tanganyika
Țarigrad = Istanbul
Tehoran = Tehrân
Timoc = Timok
Tokai = Tokaj
Tokio = Tokyo
Trebizorida/Trapezunt = Trabzon
Triest = Trieste
Tunguska Inferioară = Nižnjaja Tunguska
Tunguska Pietroasă = Podkamennaja Tunguska
Ubanghi = Oubangui/Ubangi
Urmia = Rezâiyeh
Ursilor (L) = Great Bear L
Valea Morții = Death Valley
Valons = Vlorë
Veliko Tîrnovo = Veliko Tărnovo
Veneția = Venezia
Vezuviu = Vesuvio
Vosgi = Vosges
Zante = Zakynthos
Yangtze = Changjkang

Annexe II

LISTE DES EXONYMES QUI POURRAIENT ÊTRE CONSERVÉS COMME DOUBLETS DES NOMS OFFICIELS

Acelor (C) = Cape Agulhas
Athos (Muntele) = Aghion Oros Athos
Ararat = Ağri
Alep = Haleb
Alexandria = El Iskandariya
Amazon (Amazoano) = Rio Amazonas
Amiralității (I) = Admiralty (Is)
Ammochostos = Famagusta
Anglo-Normande (I) = Channel Islands
Atena = Athinai
Asore = Açores
Balcani = Stara Planina
Baleare = Baléares
Bălți = Belcy
Basarabeasca = Bessarabka
Bavaria = Bayern
Bazargic = Tolbuhin
Biserica Albă = Bela Crkva
Belgrad = Beograd
Beltul Mare = Store Baelt
Beltul Mis = Lille Baelt
Berna = Bern
Beskizi = Beskidy
Bie = Byk
Böhmer Wald = Pădurea Boemici
Borneo = Kalimantan
Bosfor = Istanbul Bogăzi
Budapesta = Budapest
Cahul = Kagul
Cairo = El Qâhira
Călărași = Kalaraš
Calcidică = Chalkidiki, Pen
Cambrieni (M) = Cambrian M
Canare = Canarias
Canton = Guangzhou
Capul Bunei Speranți = Cape of Good Hope
Capului Verde (I) = Ilhas do Cabo Verde
Carintia = Kärnten
Casablanca = Ed-Dar el-Baida
Cascadelor (M) = Cascade Range
Caucas = Kavkas
Ceremuș = Čeremoš
Cernăuți = Černovcy
Cetatea Albă = Bel'gorod Dnestrovskii
Chișinău = Kišinev
Chilia = Kilija
Coasta de Azur = Côte d'Azur
Coastelor (M) = Coast Range
Cogîlnic = Kogylnik
Copenhaga = København
Corint = Korinthos
Corsica = Corse
Cracovia = Kraków
Creta = Kriti
Crimeea = Krym
Croația = Hrvatska
Damasc = Dimashq
Dardanele = Çanabkale Bogazi
Debrețin = Debrecen
Elba = Elbe/Labe

Eufrat = Furăt
Everest = Chomolungma
Florența = Firenze
Gange = Ganga
Geneva = Genève
Glodeni = Glodjany
Haga = s'Gravenhage
Havana = La Habana
Hebride = Hébrides
Horn = Cabo de Hornos
Hovîrla = Goverla
Ierusalim = Ierushalayim/El Quds
Irlanda de Nord = North Ireland
Iutlanda = Jütland/Jylland
Ladoga = Ladožskoe
Leova = Leovo
Limasol = Lemesos
Lisabona = Lisboa
Londra = London
Macedonia = Makedonija
Moluccelor (M.) = Maluku
Marele Lac Sărat = Great Salt Lake
Marsilia = Marseille
Masivul Central = Massif Central
Mekka (Mecca) = Makkah
Moscova = Moskva
Muntenegru = Crna Gora
Nicosia = Levkosia
Nipru = Dnepr
Nise = Nice
Nistru = Dnestr
Noua Caledonie = Nouvelle-Calédonie
Noua Guinee = New Guinea/Irian
Onega = Onežskoe (oz.)
Oran = Ouahran
Pădurea Neagră = Schwarzwald
Padurea Turingiei = Thüringer Wald
Palatinat = Pfals
Paștelui (I.) = Ila de Pasoua
Patras = Patrai
Peking = Poijing
Peloponez = Peloponnises
Pireu = Piraiefs
Plevna = Pleven
Pols = Pals
Port Said = Bür Saïd
Praga = Praha
Rășcani = Ryăkany
Răut = Reut
Rin = Rhein/Rin/Rijn
Rahova = Orjahove
Salenic = Thessaloniki
Sardinia = Sardegna
Saxonis Inferioară = Niedersachsen
Scoția = Scotland
Seeland = Sjaelland
Sfînts Elena = Saint Helena
Silezis = Slask
Sistov = Svištov
Slobozia = Slobodzeja
Slovenia = Slovenija
Societății (Inst.) = Société (Iles de la)
Soroca = Soroki
Stîncoși (M.) = Rockies
Styria = Steiermark
Sudeți = Sudety
Sues = Es: Sumeis
Temisa = Thames
Tanger = Tanja
Țara de Fos = Tierra del Fuege
Țara Galilor = Wales
Tetra = Tstry
Taurus = Teros Dağleri
Teba = Thivai
Terra Nova = Newfoundland
Tibru = Tevere
Tighina = Bendery
Tigru = Dijlash
Tirana = Tiranë
Tripoli (Liban) = Taraboulous
Tripoli (Libia) = Tarabulus al-Gharb
Turtucais = Tutrakan
Ulan Bator = Ulaan Baatar
Ungheni = Ungeny
Varsovia = Warszawa
Viena = Wien
Viloov = Vilkovo
Vîrșet = Vršae
Vistula = Wista
Westfalia = Westfalen

A DIRECTORY OF CZECH TRADITIONAL GEOGRAPHICAL PROPER NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Résumé

La liste des noms géographiques usuels tchèques figure dans un manuel à caractère normatif et obligatoire pour tous les travaux géographiques et pour les publications destinées à fournir des informations terminologiques à la presse, la radio et la télévision. Cette liste a pu être préparée grâce à des travaux de recherche visant à l'examen objectif de l'usage terminologique en Tchécoslovaquie pendant ces 10 dernières années, examen fondé sur une analyse approfondie de la littérature contemporaine, notamment géographique et linguistique et de l'usage actuel dans les publications tchèques.

On peut répartir les noms géographiques tchèques en cinq catégories linguistiques:

a) Les exonymes tchèques et internationaux qui ne s'appuient pas sur la langue originale et dont la forme lui est complètement différente;

b) Les exonymes tchèques dérivés de la forme étrangère originale, mais ayant subi une adaptation substantielle au système phonétique et morphologique tchèque;

c) Les exonymes tchèques, dans lesquels la partie finale du nom étranger original a été adaptée aux tendances de la morphologie tchèque;

d) Les exonymes tchèques, dont c'est l'orthographe en premier lieu qui a été modifiée;

e) Les exonymes tchèques calqués partiellement ou entièrement sur la forme officielle du nom étranger.

La liste est divisée comme suit:

a) Liste alphabétique des noms propres géographiques usuels;

b) Liste alphabétique des noms géographiques officiels renvoyant aux exonymes tchèques;

c) Liste des noms géographiques usuels tchèques, selon les Etats.

La liste alphabétique des noms propres géographiques usuels donne, quand c'est nécessaire, à côté de l'exonyme tchèque, sa prononciation, les données morphologiques, l'adjectif dérivé, le nom officiel et les coordonnées déterminant la position géographique dénommée.

Resumen

La lista de nombres geográficos propios, generalmente admitidos en checo, que constituye un accesorio obligatorio para el uso de la terminología en obras cartográficas y un manual normativo recomendado para ser utilizado en todas las demás obras geográficas, así como en otras publicaciones que sirven de fuente de informaciones terminológicas para la prensa, la radio y la televisión, se basa en una exploración objetiva de la práctica terminológica en la República Socialista Checoslovaca en el último decenio, aproximadamente, tal y como ha sido efectuada mediante notas sacadas de la literatura contemporánea, ante todo la geográfica y lingüística, así como por medio del estudio del uso actual en el publicismo checo.

Desde el punto de vista lingüístico, los nombres geográficos propios checos podemos dividirlos en cinco categorías:

a) Exónimos checos e internacionales sin apoyo en el idioma original y completamente ajenos a las formas originales;

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 99.

b) Exónimos checos basados en la forma original del idioma extranjero, pero en gran medida adaptados a las exigencias de la fonética y la morfologia checas;

c) Exónimos checos que adaptan la desinencia del nombre original extranjero conforme a las necesidades morfológicas del idioma checo;

d) Exónimos checos, casos en que se trata sobre todo de su forma ortográfica;

e) Exónimos checos, surgidos por medio de traducción total o parcial del nombre oficial extranjero.

La lista está dividida en tres partes: lista alfabética de nombres geográficos oficiales con referencia a los correspondientes exónimos checos; lista alfabética de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos; lista de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos, en los respectivos paises.

La lista alfabética de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos, comprende, además de exónimos checos, o, si es necesario, su pronunciación, datos morfológicos, adjetivo, nombre oficial y determinación de su posición.

*

* *

The *Directory of Czech Traditional Geographical Proper Names* is an obligatory aid to the use of terminology in cartographic publications and a recommended handbook for the standardization of terms in all other geographical books and other publications from which information on geographical names is drawn for use by the press and other media. The *Directory* is based upon research into the use of geographical names in the Czech Socialist Republic over approximately the past ten years. The basis of the research consisted mainly of:

(*a*) The extensive collection of geographical names from primarily contemporary geographical and linguistic papers; and

(*b*) Following the current usage of geographical names in Czech newspaper formulation.

Only graphic exonyms are understood to be Czech traditional geographical names.

While compiling the *Directory*, the authors took into consideration above all the frequency of occurrence, the system of script, extralinguistic circumstances and the formal morphological and word-formative aspects of Czech as a flective language.

The *Directory* was compiled to meet the need for a codification of the exonyms commonly used at present and to prevent the uncontrolled formation of new exonyms. The *Directory* does not include names of countries and regions, names of seas, oceans and parts thereof, the names of sea currents, underwater forms and undersea currents. These names will be included in independent directories now in the process of compilation by the Terminology Commission of the Czech Office of Geodesy and Cartography.

Czech proper geographical names fall into five linguistic categories:

(*a*) Czech and international exonyms that have no foundation in the original language and that completely differ from the original version;

(*b*) Czech exonyms based on the original foreign version, but considerably modified to fit the requirements of Czech phonology and morphology;

(*c*) Czech exonyms that modify the endings of the original foreign name according to the morphological needs of the Czech language;

(*d*) Czech exonyms in which primarily the spelling was modified when they were taken over; and

(*e*) Czech exonyms that originated in a complete or partial translation of an official foreign name.

Czech proper geographical names are most common in reference to the capitals of countries, large cities and places generally well known, large geographical units, countries and larger regions. The most frequent use of these names is in school geography textbooks and maps. On maps it is possible to use Czech exonyms in principle only as part of a pair; thus, for example: Wien (Vídeň). In other contexts the use of the official name is recommended at least at the first occurrence of the name. Czech exonyms are also used in geographical journals, in specialized papers, in fiction and in the media.

The *Directory* is divided into three parts:

(*a*) An alphabetical list of Czech traditional proper geographical names;

(*b*) An alphabetical list of official geographical names with cross-references to the Czech exonyms; and

(*c*) A list of traditional Czech proper geographical names by individual countries.

Apart from the Czech exonym, the alphabetical directory of Czech traditional proper geographical names contains, for each item listed, its pronunciation (if needed), morphological data, the adjectival form, the official name and the co-ordinates.

The *Directory* will be published in 1978.

NOTES ON THE RELATIONSHIP OF OFFICIAL NAMES AND EXONYMS AS A PROBLEM IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Geographical names (toponyms) constitute one of the three basic and integral elements of topographic (geographical) phenomena and their depiction on maps. The formulation and establishment of geographical names and their usage within the cultural sphere of a language constitute two series of difficult problems, which have not as yet been fully resolved and which must be tackled due to increasing social demands.

The first series of problems, those involved in the

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 105

formulation and establishment of proper geographical names, have reached an advanced stage of solution at both the national and the international levels: It is clear by now that the name of a topographic (geographical) phenomenon should appear first and foremost in the official language of the country (or in its officially adopted transcription into Roman characters, as the case may be), and on the territory determined by official definition as the area in which it is to be used. Only in this way can a geographical name fulfil its basic social function, that of conveying an officially recognized, irrefutable and distortion-free identification of the phenomenon which it designates. The aim of the solution of this series of problems is, in short, to standardize geographical names into forms giving the maximum possible information corresponding to objective reality. This would contribute significantly to the ability of a geographical name to fulfil its social function in any form of usage, but especially in a cartographic publication.

The second series of problems, those involving the proper usage of geographical names, is more complex, since it covers not only the proper use of geographical names in maps (where a stabilized nominative form is predominantly used), but also the usage of geographical names over the whole cultural sphere of a language, and thus raises the question of use and declination of geographical names in accordance with existing linguistic rules.

The situation in this second area is not yet quite clear. Apart from the official forms of geographical names, there exist also a number of traditional geographical names, exonyms, connected with the cultural heritage of the language. There is also a tendency to create new geographical exonyms, especially if it is difficult or impossible, to decline the names correctly in their official forms.

Moreover, problems of the first type (the establishment and selection of official versions of geographical names either in Czech and Slovak or in other languages) is limited, in practice, to the names of larger geographical units (e.g. countries, mountain ranges covering the area of more than one country, large rivers, international waters etc.) as they now exist. In dealing with problems of usage, we find, on the contrary that historical exonyms coexist side by side with exonymic forms of recent origin, involving large and small geographical units alike.

In this connexion the area of the cultural influence of the language is sometimes mentioned as a factor that confers the right to use exonymic forms for the names of topographic phenomena outside the area of the given country. This factor, while it may be related to the question of historic exonyms, is not, however, relevant to the contemporary naming of topographic entities. The existence of an official language for a given territory also determines the area of its cultural influence at the present time.

The need to resolve the question of geographical exonyms has also been felt on an international scale. While the First United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Geneva in 1967, did not agree on an appropriate resolution, the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in London in 1972 adopted two resolutions concerning this question. In resolutions 28 and 29[1] it is recommended that lists be compiled of commonly used geographical exonyms, that the lists be reviewed (for possible deletions) and printed and that exonyms, if they are to be used at all, be limited in their use (especially in cartographic publications) as much as possible and in the shortest possible time.

In resolution 31, entitled "A common understanding of the aims and objects of the international standardization of geographical names",[2] the Conference defined the international standardization of geographical names as an activity "aiming at the maximum possible uniformity in the form of every geographical name on the earth and of topographical names on other bodies of the solar system by means of national standardization and/or international agreement, including the achievement of equivalences between different writing systems".

The resolutions mentioned also suggest how to resolve the question of using geographical names in literature. The possibilities are as follows:

(*a*) A foreign geographical name (even if it consists of more than one word) will become a part of the vocabulary in its official form and will be declined according to the rules of the adopting language;

(*b*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name, the text will be phrased in such a way that the geographical name would occur only in the nominative case;

(*c*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name and if there exists a standardized exonym, the standardized exonym will be used and when it occurs for the first time, it will be complemented with the foreign geographical name in its official form in brackets;

(*d*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name and if there exists a standardized exonym, the standardized exonym will be used and the official form of the foreign geographical name will be included in the index of the publication

All these alternatives have already been used in books in the Czech and Slovak languages, especially in supplementary texts of geographical publications, and it is possible to say that they have proved satisfactory.

The alternative of using the geographical names in their official form in the nominative is especially recommended for geographical names consisting of more than one word, of which some have the character of a general geographical noun. The principle of not translating or separating out individual parts of compound geographical names was also confirmed in the report of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names where a publication of the Geographical Institute of the Czechoslovak Academy of

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No E.74.I.2), chap. III

[2] *Ibid*

Sciences in Brno entitled *Principles of the Use of Names of Geomorphological Units on the Territory of the Czech Socialist Republic in Texts in Foreign Languages* was quoted as an example of the carrying out of the standardization.[3]

In connexion with the ever-increasing number of proper geographical names now being included, in their official forms, in geographical publications and also being used in other contexts in a given linguistic area, the question of their pronunciation comes to the fore.

There are two basic alternatives:

(*a*) To pronounce geographical names as they are spelled; or

(*b*) To pronounce geographical names according to the pronunciation of the individual languages involved.

Since it is difficult to ensure correct pronunciation of geographical names in schools, this is sometimes used as an argument for using exonyms in maps and atlases designed to meet school requirements.

There is also much evidence for the parallel use of official, standardized geographical names (especially in books for the general public and secondary schools) and geographical exonyms (especially in publications designed for elementary schools).

Indisputably, it is a problem to synchronize in schools the teaching of fundamental information about foreign languages (especially on their alphabet and pronunciation) and the teaching of fundamental geographical information about the world.

The necessity to unify for each language, with the maximum use of its own alphabet, those elements showing how to pronounce foreign geographical names is closely connected with the above-mentioned problem. This is one of the larger problems facing linguists *en route* to the standardization of geographical names.

Not only do cartographers contribute to the solution of this problem by giving data, in their more important publications, about the general concept of how geographical names have been used (usually in the introduction to the publication) but their indexes or geographical names often also include general guidelines on the pronunciation of each language and (often printed in brackets after each name) the correct pronunciations of the individual geographical names.

The dynamic development of the contemporary world, the scientific and technological revolutions in both East and West, necessitate the transformation of school education in such a way that the instruction of the younger generation would correspond to the ever more exacting conditions of living in the world. There is no time, nor is it possible, to burden the cognitive abilities of the younger generation with many antiquated exonyms, the awareness of which only serves to complicate the acquisition of the geographical knowledge required. Since future generations will need more and more geographic information and therefore will have to know the names of a considerably larger number of geographical entities than ever before, it is simply impossible to further complicate school education with geographical names the knowledge of which, except in the narrow circle of natural literature, is of no use at all.

A consistent introduction of official forms of geographical names into schools, i.e. into maps and atlases and textbooks of geography, is one of the serious prerequisites of a true standardization of geographical names. Although difficult, the synchronization of the teaching of geography and foreign languages would bring fruitful results, since it would be possible to use the time allotted to the teaching of geography in a truly economical way.

[3] *Ibid*, para 27

CONTRIBUCION DE UNA RELACION DE EXONIMOS ESPAÑOLES

Informe presentado por España*

En informe del sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos se presentó a título de ejemplo una lista de exónimos de Francia en lengua española, siguiendo la resolución 28 adoptada por la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Londres en 1972[1].

El presente informe recoge una relación de exónimos de todo el mundo usados en obras geográficas y mapas publicados en lengua española; no obstante haber consultado numerosos documentos no puede considerarse como exhaustiva, si bien creemos que la mayoría de los importantes se encuentran en ella. La composición se realiza en cinco columnas:

a) Exónimo español;

b) Nombre oficial en su idioma vernáculo; se ha dejado en blanco si no existe o no es único;

c) Accidente geográfico con arreglo a la siguiente clave:

1. Países o continentes
2. Islas
3. Regiones
4. Relieve
5. Hidrografía marítima
6. Hidrografía costera y costas

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por J. M. González, Ingeniero Geógrafo, Dirección General del Instituto Geográfico y Catastral, España, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF. 69/L.114.

[1] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I. *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta S. 74.I.2), cap. III.

7. Hidrografía interna
8. Núcleos de población
9. Mínima dimensión (calles, edificios, etc.);

d) Nombres de las naciones a que pertenecen con las siglas internacionales de los automóviles cuando éstas existen, en caso contrario una numeración indica el continente o sin indicación alguna:

A	Austria
AL	Albania
AUS	Australia
B	Bélgica
BG	Bulgaria
BR	Brasil
BUR	Birmania
CDN	Canadá
CH	Suiza
CL	Ceilán
CS	Checoslovaquia
CY	Chipre
D	Alemania
DK	Dinamarca
DZ	Argelia
EIR	Irlanda
ET	Egipto
ETH	Etiopia
F	Francia
GB	Gran Bretaña
GR	Grecia
H	Hungría
HKJ	Jordania
I	Italia
IL	Israel
IND	India
IR	Irán
IRQ	Iraq
IS	Islandia
J	Japón
K	Camboya
L	Luxemburgo
MA	Marruecos
MC	Mónaco
MOC	Mozambique
N	Noruega
NL	Países Bajos
P	Portugal
PI	Filipinas
PL	Polonia
R	Rumania
RC	China
RH	Haití
RI	Indonesia
RL	Líbano
S	Suecia
SF	Finlandia
SOM	Somalia
SU	Unión Soviética
SYR	Siria
T	Tailandia
TN	Túnez
TR	Turquía
TT	Trinidad y Tabago
USA	Estados Unidos
VN	Vietnám
YU	Yugoslavia
ZA	Sudáfrica
(1)	Europa
(2)	Asia
(3)	Africa
(4)	América del Norte
(5)	América Centro y Sur
(6)	Oceanía
(7)	Antártico

e) Grado de empleo actual:

1. Total. El nombre oficial no se emplea nunca en forma escrita ni oral;
2. General. Sólo en contados casos se emplea dicho nombre oficial;
3. Extendido. El uso se hace indistintamente y más bien según la cultura de quien se expresa;
4. Escaso. Sólo se halla en obras de tipo literario de gusto tradicional;
5. Obsoleto. Sólo se encuentra en obras antiguas.

No se han incluído entre los exónimos los nombres que contienen alguna palabra determinativa de otra principal, como por ejemplo Oriental, Occidental, Alta, Baja, etc., pero si se incluyen tales palabras cuando no existe topónimo básico como en Selva Negra y Costa de Marfil.

Los nombres geográficos de la antigüedad que ya no corresponden a lugares actuales no se han tenido en cuenta, ni los mitológicos y poéticos.

Cuando el mismo nombre corresponde a más de un accidente geográfico, en la columna correspondiente se encuentran distintos números según la respectiva clave.

Por último, se incluyen numerosos gentilicios de los países, regiones o ciudades que quedan fuera del mundo de habla hispánica; aunque éstos no se consideran como verdaderos topónimos, también pueden proporcionar información geográfica.

Anexo I

LISTA DE EXONIMOS

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Abisinia	Ityopya	1	ETH	4
Abruzos	Abruzzi	42	I	2
Acadia	Acadie	3	CDN	5
Acarnania	Akarnania	3	GR	2
Acaya	Ajaia	3	GR	2
Adalia	Antalya	8	TR	3
Adelaida	Adelaide	8	AUS	1
Adelia	Adélie	3	(7)	3
Adigio	Adige	7	I	4
Adrianópolis	Edirne	8	TR	2
Adriático		4	(1)	1
Adua	Aduwa	8	ETH	2
Africa		1	(3)	1
Agra	Agara	8	IND	2
Agua, Cabo del	Ras el Ma	6	MA	2
Agujas	Agulhas	6	ZA	2
Albania	Shqiperia	1	AL	1
Alberto	Albert	7	(3)	2
Alcazarquivir	El Qsar el Kebir	8	MA	1
Alcazarseguer	El Qsar es Seghir	8	MA	2
Alejandreta	Iskenderun	8	TR	2
Alejandria	Alessandria	8	I	4
Alejandria	Iskandariya	8	ET	1
Alemania	Deutschland	1	D	1
Alenzón	Alençon	8	F	4
Alepo	Haleb	8	SYR	1

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Aleutianas	Aleutian	2	USA	1
Alfeo	Alfios	7	GR	2
Alguer	Alghero	8	I	3
Alhucemas	Al Hoseima	8	MA	1
Almirantazgo	Admiralty	2	(6)	3
Almirantes	Amirantes	2	(3)	
Alost	Alast	8	B	3
Alpes		4	(1)	1
Alsacia	Alsace	3	F	2
Altemburgo	Altenburg	8	D	3
Aluta	Oltul	7	R	3
Amarillo	Huanghe	7	RC	3
Amarillo	Huanghai	5		3
Amberes	Antwerpen	8	B	1
Amboina	Ambon	3	RI	2
América		1		1
Amigos	Tonga	2	(6)	4
Amindivas	Amindvip	2	IND	2
Amistad	Tonga	2	(6)	4
Anatolia	Anadolu	3	TR	1
Angora	Ankara	8	TR	4
Angulema	Angoulême	8	F	
Antártico		5		1
Antártida		1	(7)	1
Antiatlas	Atlas es Saghir	4	MA	1
Antilíbano	Chargi	4	(2)	1
Antillas		2	(5)	1
Antioquía	Antakya	8	SYR	1
Antitauro	Güneydogu Toroslar	4	TR	1
Apalaches	Appalachian	4	USA	2
Apeninos	Appennino	4	I	1
Apulia	Puglia	3	I	3
Aqueloo	Ajeloos	7	GR	3
Aquisgrán	Aachen	8	D	3
Aquitania	Aquitaine	3	F	2
Aracinto	Arakinzos			
Aracneo	Arajneon	4	GR	2
Ararat		4	SU	1
Arcadia	Arkadia	3	GR	3
Arcila	Asilah	8	MA	1
Archipiélago	Ageon	5		4
Ardenas	Ardennes	34	B	2
Argel	El Djezair	8	DZ	1
Argelia	El Djezair	1	DZ	1
Argólida	Argolis	3	GR	2
Argona	Argonne	3	F	4
Argovia	Aargau	3	CH	2
Armenia	Hayasdan	3	SU	1
Artico		5		1
Asia		1	(2)	1
Asis	Assisi	8	I	2
Asiut	Asyut	8	ET	3
Asuán	Aswan	8	ET	3
Atenas	Azine	8	GR	1
Atica	Attiki	3	GR	2
Atlántico		5		1
Atos	Agion Oros	4	GR	3
Augsburgo	Augsburg	8	D	2
Austria	Osterreich	1	A	1
Auvernia	Auvergne	3	F	3
Aviñón	Avignon	3	F	3
Avis	Aviz	8	P	3
Axdir	Ajdir	8	MA	3
Azores	Açores	2	P	2
Azul, Costa	Côte d'Azur	36	F	1
Azul, Río	Chiangjiang	7	RC	3
Azules, Montes	Blue Mountains	4	AUS	3
Bahamas	Bahama	2	(5)	2
Balcanes		3	(1)	1
Báltico		5	(1)	1
Banato		3	(1)	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Bangkok	KrungTep	8	T	1
Bangueolo	Bangweulu	7	(3)	2
Banka	Bangka	2	RI	
Barlovento	Windward	2	(5)	2
Baroda	Vadodara	8	IND	2
Basilea	Basel	38	CH	2
Basora	Basra	8	IRQ	2
Baviera	Bayern	3	D	1
Bayona	Bayonne	8	F	2
Beirut	Beyruth	8	RL	2
Belén	Beit Lam	8	IL	1
Bélgica		1	B	1
Belgrado	Beograd	8	YU	1
Beluchistán	Beluchestan	3	PAK	3
Bella Isla	Belle Île	5	F	5
Benarés	Varanasi	8	IND	3
Bender	Bendery	8	SU	4
Bengala	Bangla	15	(2)	2
Bengalore	Bengaluru	8	IND	2
Bengasi	Benghazi	8	(3)	3
Beocia	Viotia	3	GR	2
Berbería		3	(3)	4
Beresina	Berezina	8	SU	3
Berna	Bern	8	CH	1
Besanzón	Besançon	8	F	4
Besarabia		3	SU	2
Beskides	Bezkydy	4	SC	1
Bielorrusia	Belorosiya	3	SU	3
Billiton	Beletung	2	RI	2
Birmania	Myanma	1	BUR	1
Bizerta	Binzert	8	TN	2
Blanco, Mar		5		1
Blanco, Monte	Mont Blanc	4	F	4
Bohemia	Čechy	3	CS	1
Bolonés	Boulonnais	3	F	5
Bolonia	Bologna	8	I	2
Bolonia	Boulogne	8	F	5
Boloña	Boulogne	8	F	4
Bombay	Mumbai	8	IND	1
Bona	Annaba	8	DZ	2
Borbón	Reunion	2	(3)	5
Borbonesado	Bourbonnais	3	F	3
Bordelesado	Bordelais	3	F	4
Boreslavia	Boteslawiec	8	PL	5
Borgoña	Bourgogne	3	F	2
Borneo	Kalimantan	2	RI	1
Borromeas	Borromee	2	I	3
Bosnia	Bosna	3	YU	1
Botnia		5	(1)	1
Brabante	Brabant	3	B	1
Braganza	Bragança	8	P	2
Bramaputra		7	(2)	1
Brandeburgo	Brandenburg	38	D	2
Brema	Bremen	8	D	4
Bretaña	Bretagne	3	F	2
Bretaña, Gran	Great Britain	12	GB	1
Brianzón	Briançon	8	F	4
Brindis	Brindisi	8	I	4
Brionia	Brioni	2	YU	4
Brisgovia	Breisgau	3	CH	2
Brujas	Brugge	8	B	1
Brunswick	Braunschweig	38	D	2
Bruselas		8	B	1
Bucarest	Bucureşti	8	R	1
Bucovina		3	(1)	1
Buena Esperanza	Goeie Hoop	6	ZA	2
Bugia	Bedjaia	8	DZ	2
Bulgaria	Bigariya	1	BG	1
Bullión	Bouillon	3	B	5
Burdeos	Bordeaux	8	F	2

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Burgo	Bourges	8	F	5
Bután	Drukyul	1	(2)	2
Cabo Bretón, Isla de	Cape Breton Island	3	CDN	2
Cachemira	Kashmir	3	(2)	1
Caimanes	Cayman	3	(5)	3
Cairo	Al Qahira	8	ET	1
Calcídica	Jalkidki	3	GR	2
Calcis	Jalkis	8	GR	2
Calcuta	Kalkata	8	IND	2
Calés	Calais	8	F	5
Calicut	Koylikota	8	IND	1
Calino	Kalimnos	2	GR	4
Calmar	Kalmar	8	S	4
Caller	Cagliari	8	I	5
Camáldula	Camaldoli	8	I	3
Camarones	Cameroun	1	(3)	4
Camboya	Kampuchea	1	K	2
Candia	Kriti	2	GR	4
Canea	Jania	8	GR	2
Canigó	Canigou	4	F	3
Cantón	Guangzhou	8	RC	1
Cantorbery	Canterbury	8	GB	3
Capaz, Puerto	Djebba	8	MA	2
Capitolio	Campidoglio	9	I	2
Capitolio	Capitol	9	USA	1
Carcasona	Carcasonne	8	F	3
Carelia	Karjala	3	(1)	1
Caribe		5	(5)	1
Carintia	Kärnten	3	A	1
Cariñan	Carignano	8	I	3
Carlsbad	Karlovy Vary	8	CS	2
Carlsburgo	Alba Iulia	8	R	5
Carnático		3	IND	3
Cárnicos		4	(1)	1
Carniola	Kralin	3	YU	1
Carolinas	Caroline	2	(6)	1
Cárpatos		4	(1)	1
Carso	Kras	3	YU	2
Cartuja	Chartreuse	3	F	4
Casablanca	Dar al Baida	8	MA	1
Cascadas	Cascade	4	USA	3
Caspio		7		1
Castelrosso	Kastelloridson	2	GR	3
Cátaro	Kotor	8	YU	2
Caucasia		3	SU	3
Cáucaso	Kaukaz	4	SU	1
Cayena	Cayenne	28	(5)	2
Cayo Hueso	Key West	2	(5)	3
Cayos	Cayes	2	RH	3
Cefalonia	Kefallinia	2	GR	2
Cefiso	Kifisos	7	GR	2
Ceilán	Sri Lanka	12	CL	2
Célebes	Sulawesi	2	RI	1
Ceran	Seram	3	RI	2
Cerdaña	Cerdagne	3	F	2
Cerdeña	Sardegna	2	I	1
Cerigo	Kizira	2	GR	2
Cerigoto	Andikizira	2	GR	2
Ceriñola	Cerignola	8	I	3
Cerisoles	Ceresole	8	I	4
Cetiñe	Cetinje	8	YU	3
Cevenas	Cevennes	4	F	5
Cícladas	Kiklades	2	GR	2
Circasia		3	SU	3
Cirenaica	Barga	3	(3)	2
Cirene	Shahhat	8	(3)	3
Cister	Citeaux	8	F	2
Ciudad del Cabo	Kaapstad	8	ZA	2
Claraval	Clairvaux	8	F	2
Cleves	Kleve	8	D	2
Coblenza	Koblenz	8	D	2

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Coburgo	Koburg	8	D	2
Cocios		4	(1)	1
Cochinchina		3	(2)	2
Colombo	Kolamba	8	CL	1
Colonia	Köln	8	D	2
Comorin	Kumari	6	IND	1
Constantina	Koustantina	8	DZ	2
Constantinopla	Istambul	8	TR	2
Constanza	Bodensee	7	(1)	1
Constanza	Constanta	8	R	2
Constanza	Konstanz	8	D	2
Copenhague	København	8	DK	1
Córcega	Corse	2	F	1
Corea		1	(2)	1
Corfú	Kerkira	2	GR	2
Corinto	Korinzos	8	GR	1
Cornualles	Cornwall	3	GB	2
Coromandel	Koromandal	6	IND	1
Cos	Kos	2	GR	2
Cracovia	Kraków	8	PL	1
Creta	Kriti	2	GR	2
Crimea	Krim	3	SU	1
Croacia	Hrvatska	3	YU	1
Cuenca, Gran	Great Basin	3	USA	3
Cuera	Chur	8	CH	4
Cumania	Kunsag	3	H	4
Curasao	Curaçao	2	(5)	3
Curdistán		3	(2)	2
Curlandia		3	SU	2
Cuyabá	Cuibá	8	BR	3
Champaña	Champagne	3	F	3
Charenta	Charente	3	F	4
Charlottemburgo	Charlottenburg	8	D	4
Checoslovaquia	Československo	1	CS	1
Cherburgo	Cherbourg	8	F	3
Chica, Mar	Sebkhabou Areq	6	MA	2
China	Zhongguo	1	RC	1
Chipre	Kipros	1	CY	1
Dalecarlia	Dalarna	3	S	2
Dalmacia	Dalmacija	3	YU	1
Damasco	Ech Cham	8	SYR	1
Damieta	Dumyat	8	ET	1
Danubio		7	(1)	1
Danzig	Gdańsk	8	PL	3
Dardanelos	Canakkale Boğazi	5	TR	1
Delfinado	Dauphiné	3	F	3
Delhi	Dilli	8	IND	3
Deseada	Desirade	2	(5)	3
Desolación	Kerguelen	2	(7)	4
Diego Alvarez	Gough	2	(3)	4
Diego García	Chagos	2	(2)	4
Dillemburgo	Dillenburg	8	D	4
Dinamarca	Danmark	1	DK	1
Dináricos		4	(1)	1
Dnieper	Dnepr	7	SU	2
Dniester	Dnestr	7	SU	2
Dodecaneso	Dodekanisos	2	GR	1
Dolomitas		4	(1)	1
Donetz	Donets	7	SU	2
Dordoña	Dordogne	7	F	3
Drave		7	(1)	2
Dresde	Dresden	8	D	3
Duisburgo	Duisburg	8	D	3
Dunaburgo	Daugaupils	8	SU	4
Dunas	Düne	2	D	4
Dundea	Dundee	8	GB	4
Durazzo	Durrës	8	AL	2
Edesa	Urfa	8	TR	2
Edimburgo	Edinburgh	8	GB	2
Eduardo	Edward	7	(3)	3
Egadas	Egadi	2	I	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Egeo	Egeon	5		2
Egipto	Misr	1	ET	1
Elba		7	(1)	1
Elbruz	Elbrus	4	SU	3
Elburz	Alborz	4	IR	2
Elefante	Elefant	2	(7)	3
Elefantina		2	ET	2
Elgersburgo	Elgersburg	8	D	3
Engadina	Engadin	3	CH	3
Engaño	Telandjang	2	RI	4
Eolias	Lipari	2	I	4
Eritrea		3	ET	1
Erzerum	Erzurum	8	TR	3
Escafusa	Schaffhausen	8	CH	5
Escalda		7	(1)	1
Escandinavia		3	(1)	1
Escania	Skäne	3	S	3
Escarpanto	Karpazos	2	GR	3
Esclavonia	Slavonija	3	YU	5
Esclavos, Costa de los	Slave Coast	6	(3)	2
Esclavos, Gran Lago de los	Great Slave Lake	7	CDN	2
Escocia	Scotland	3	GB	1
Escopelos	Skopelos	2	GR	3
Escutari	Skodra	78	AL	2
Escutari	Usküdar	8	TR	2
Eslavonia	Slavonija	3	YU	2
Eslonim	Slonim	8	SU	4
Eslovaquia	Slovensko	3	CS	1
Eslovenia	Slovenija	3	YU	2
Esmalcalda	Schmalkalden	8	D	3
Esmirna	Izmir	8	TR	2
Esmolensco	Smolensk	8	SU	4
Espaleto	Split	8	YU	3
Esparta	Sparti	8	GR	1
Espartel	Sbartel	6	MA	1
Espartivento	Spartivento	6	I	3
Esperlinga	Sperlinga	8	I	4
Espira	Speyer	8	D	2
Espoleto	Spoleto	8	I	3
Esporadas	Sporades	2	GR	3
Esquilache	Squillace	68	I	4
Esquiros	Skiros	2	GR	3
Estados, Isla de los	Staten Island	2	USA	4
Estados Unidos	United States	1	USA	1
Estambul	Istambul	8	TR	3
Estanovoi	Stanovoi	4	SU	4
Estefania	Stefania	7	(3)	2
Estinfalo	Stimfalis	7	GR	3
Estiria	Steiermark	3	A	1
Estocolmo	Stockholm	8	S	1
Estonia	Eesti	3	SU	1
Estrasburgo	Strasbourg	8	F	2
Estrofadas	Stofades	2	GR	2
Estruma		7	(1)	2
Etiopia	Ityopya	1	ETH	1
Eubea	Evvia	2	GR	2
Eufrates		7	(2)	1
Euganeos		4	(1)	1
Eupatoria	Yevpatoriya	8	SU	2
Europa		1	(1)	1
Eurotas	Evrotas	7	GR	2
Falero	Faleron	8	GR	2
Famagusta	Ammojostos	8	CY	1
Farsalia	Farsala	8	GR	3
Fénix	Phoenix	2	(6)	3
Feroe	Faer Øerne	2	DK	3
Fez	Fas	8	MA	1
Filadelfia	Philadelphia	8	USA	1
Filipopolis	Plovdiv	8	BG	2
Finisterre	Finistère	3	F	5
Finlandia	Suomi	1	SF	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Fionia	Fyn	2	DK	1
Fiume	Rijeka	8	YU	2
Flandes	Vlaanderen	3	B	1
Flesinga	Vlissingen	8	B	2
Florencia	Firenze	8	I	2
Fócida	Fokis	3	GR	2
Formosa	Taiwan	2	RC	3
Francfort	Frankfurt	8	D	2
Francia	France	1	F	1
Francisco José	Frantsa Iosifa	2	SU	2
Franco Condado	Franche-Comté	3	F	2
Franconia	Franken	3	D	1
Friburgo	Freiburg	8	D	1
Friburgo	Fribourg	8	CH	1
Frisia	Friesland	3	NL	1
Friul	Friuli	3	I	3
Ftiótida	Fziotis	3	GR	3
Galatz	Galati	8	R	3
Gales	Gymru	3	GB	1
Galilea	Hagalil	3	IL	1
Galitzia	Halicz	3	PL	1
Gallipoli	Gelibolu	8	TR	1
Gante	Gent	8	B	1
Garellano	Garigliano	7	I	2
Garona	Garonne	7	F	3
Gascuña	Gascogne	3	F	3
Gaza	Ghazza	8	(2)	3
Gelves	Djerba	2	TN	4
Genovesado		3	I	5
Georgia	Sakartvelo	3	SU	1
Geránicos		4	(1)	1
Gigantes. Montes		4	(1)	2
Ginebra	Genève	8	CH	1
Gironda	Gironde	7	F	3
Glaris	Glarus	3	CH	3
Gocia	Götaland	2	S	5
Golfo, Corriente del		5		1
Gomara	Ghomara	3	MA	2
Gorea	Gorée	8	(3)	3
Gotemburgo	Göteborg	8	S	3
Gotinga	Göttingen	8	D	3
Gotlandia	Götaland	2	S	4
Goyaz	Goiás	38	BR	3
Gozo	Gozzo	2	M	3
Graios		4	(1)	(2)
Grampianos. Montes	Grampian Hills	4	GB	3
Granada	Grenada	1	(5)	2
Granadinas	Grenadines	2	(5)	2
Gratz	Graz	8	A	3
Gravelinas	Gravelines	8	F	4
Grecia	Ellas	1	GR	1
Grisones	Graubünden	3	CH	2
Groenlandia	Grønland	2	(4)	1
Groninga	Groningen	38	NL	3
Guadalupe	Guadeloupe	2	(5)	3
Guardafui	Ras Assir	6	(2)	1
Guayana	Guyana	1	(5)	3
Guayana	Guyane	3	(5)	3
Güeldres	Gelderland	3	NL	2
Guernesey	Guernsey	2	GB	3
Guyena	Guyenne	3	F	3
Habsburgo	Habsburg	8	CH	3
Haifong	Haiphong	8	VN	2
Hamburgo	Hamburg	8	D	2
Hanóver	Hannover	38	D	3
Harlem	Haarlem	8	NL	4
Hawai	Hawaii	2	USA	3
Haya	S'Gravenhage	8	NL	1
Hébridas	Hebrides	2	GB	2
Helicón	Elikon	4	GR	3
Heligoland	Helgoland	2	D	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Helsinborg	Hälsinborg	8	S	3
Henao	Hainaut	3	F	5
Hendaya	Hendaye	8	F	2
Heraclión	Iraklion	8	GR	3
Hesse	Hessen	3	D	3
Hidra	Idra	2	GR	2
Himeto	Imittos	4	GR	2
Hofuf	Hufuf	8	(2)	3
Holanda	Holland	3	NL	1
Homs	Hims	8	SYR	1
Hondo	Honshu	2	J	2
Horn	Hoorn	8	NL	3
Hungría	Magyarország	1	H	1
Icaria	Ikaria	2	GR	2
Iguazú	Iguaçù	7	BR	2
Ilírico		2	YU	3
Imbros	Imroz	2	IR	3
Inaco	Inajos	7	GR	2
India	Bharat	1	IND	1
Indico		5		1
Indo		7	(2)	1
Indochina		3	(2)	2
Inglaterra	England	3	GB	1
Ingria		3	(1)	4
Irlanda	Eire	1	EIR	1
Isla de Francia	Île-de-France	3	F	3
Islandia	Island	1	IS	1
Janículo	Giannicolo	9	I	2
Japón	Nippon	1	J	1
Java	Djawa	2	RI	1
Jerusalén	Yerushalayim	8	IL	1
Johannesburgo	Johannesburg	8	ZA	3
Joló	Sulu	2	PI	3
Jónico	Ionion	5		1
Jordán		7	(2)	1
Jordania	Urdun	7	HKJ	1
Juan Mayen	Jan Mayen	2	(1)	3
Julianos		4	(1)	1
Jutlandia	Jylland	3	DK	1
Lacio	Lazio	3	I	1
Laconia	Lakonia	3	GR	2
Lagunas	Ellice	2	(6)	4
Landas	Landes	3	F	3
Laponia	Lapi	3	(1)	2
Laquedivas	Lakshadvip	2	IND	1
Larache	El Araich	8	MA	1
Lataquia	Ladhiqiya	8	SYR	3
Lauenburgo	Lauenburg	3	D	3
Lausana	Lausanne	8	CH	3
Lealtad	Loyalty	2	(6)	3
Lemosín	Limousin	3	F	3
Leningrado	Leningrad	8	SU	2
Leonesado	Lyonnais	3	F	5
Lepontinos		5	(1)	1
Lero	Leros	2	GR	3
Lesbos	Mitilini	2	GR	3
Letonia	Latvija	3	SU	2
Leucas	Lefkas	2	GR	3
Líbano	Lubnan	1	RL	1
Libia	Libiya	1	(3)	1
Liceo	Likeon	4	GR	2
Lieja	Liège	8	B	2
Lila	Lille	8	F	4
Limburgo	Limbourg	3	B	3
Limburgo	Limburg	3	NL	3
Lion	Lyon	8	F	4
Liorna	Livorno	8	I	3
Lituania	Lietuva	3	SU	1
Livonia		3	SU	2
Loanda	Luanda	8	(3)	3
Loira	Loire	7	F	3

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Londres	London	8	GB	2
Lorena	Lorraine	3	F	2
Lorenzo Márquez	Maputo	8	MOC	2
Lotaringia		3	(1)	1
Lovaina	Leuven	8	B	1
Luca	Lucca	8	I	3
Lucayas	Bahama	2	(5)	4
Lucerna	Luzern	8	CH	2
Luis Felipe	Louis Philippe	3	(7)	3
Luisiada	Louisiade	2	(6)	4
Luisiana	Louisiana	3	USA	2
Luisville	Luoisville	8	USA	4
Luneburgo	Lüneburg	8	D	4
Lusacia	Lausitz	3	D	3
Luxemburgo	Luxembourg	18	L	2
Luxor	El Uqsur	8	ET	2
Maestrich	Maastrich	8	NL	3
Macao	Macau	8	(2)	2
Macedonia		3	(1)	3
Maconés	Macònnais	3	F	5
Madera	Madeira	2	P	3
Magdeburgo	Magdeburg	8	D	3
Maguncia	Mainz	8	D	1
Malabar	Malbar	6	IND	2
Malaca	Malaka	3	(2)	1
Malasia	Malaysia	1	(2)	3
Malatia	Aspuzu	8	TR	3
Malaya	Melayu	3	(2)	2
Maldivas		1	(2)	2
Malinas	Mechelen	8	B	2
Maloya	Maloja	8	CH	4
Malvinas	Falkland	2	(5)	2
Manaos	Manaus	8	BR	3
Mancha	Manche	5	F	2
Manchuria		3	RC	3
Mangalore	Mangaluru	8	IND	2
Mantua	Mantova	8	I	3
Maratón	Marazon	8	GR	2
Marburgo	Marburg	8	D	3
Marburgo	Maribor	8	YU	3
Marcas	Marche	3	I	3
Marfil, Costa de	Côte d'Ivoire	1	(2)	1
Maria Galante	Marie Galante	3	(5)	2
Marianas	Mariana	3	(6)	2
Marienbad	Marianské-Lazné	8	CS	1
Maritza		7	(1)	2
Marquesas	Marquises	2	(6)	2
Marruecos	Maghreb	1	MA	1
Marruecos	Marrakech	8	MA	4
Marsella	Marseille	8	F	2
Martin, Rio	Martil	7	MA	2
Martinica	Martinique	2	(5)	2
Mascareñas		2	(3)	2
Mascate	Masqat	8	(2)	2
Masovia		3	PL	5
Masuria		3	PL	4
Matapán	Tenaron	6	GR	2
Mauricio	Mauritius	1	(3)	1
Mauritania	Mauritanie	1	(3)	1
Mayena	Mayenne	7	F	5
Mayota	Mayotte	3	(3)	5
Mazagán	El Djadida	8	MA	1
Mazalguivir	Mers el Kebir	8	DZ	2
Meandro	Menderes	7	TR	3
Meca	Makkah	8	(2)	1
Mecklemburgo	Mecklenburg	3	D	3
Mediterráneo		5		1
Melanesia		2	(6)	1
Melburne	Melbourne	8	AUS	4
Meno	Main	7	D	3
Mequinez	Meknes	8	MA	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Merseburgo	Merseburg	8	D	3
Mesenia	Missinia	3	GR	2
Mesina	Messina	8	I	3
Mesopotamia		3	IRQ	1
Metálicos, Montes		4		2
Micenas	Mikine	8	GR	2
Micronesia		2	(6)	1
Milán	Milano	8	I	2
Milanesado		3	I	2
Milo	Milos	3	GR	3
Misisipí	Mississippi	37	USA	2
Misnia	Meissen	3	D	2
Misuri	Missouri	37	USA	2
Mitilene	Mitilini	2	GR	3
Mogador	Essauira	8	MA	1
Moldavia	Moldova	3	R	1
Molucas	Maluku	3	RI	3
Mompeller	Montpellier	8	F	5
Mongolia	Mongol	1	(2)	1
Montalbán	Montauban	8	F	5
Montecarlo	Monte-Carlo	8	MC	2
Montenegro	Crnagora	3	YU	1
Montpeller	Montpellier	8	F	5
Moravia	Morava	3	CS	1
Morbeya	Rebia	7	MA	4
Morlaquia		3	YU	2
Mosa		7	(1)	2
Moscova	Moskva	7	SU	2
Moscovia		3	SU	3
Moscú	Moskva	8	SU	1
Mosela		7	(1)	2
Mozambique	Moçambique	1	MOC	1
Muerte, Valle de la	Death Valley	4	USA	2
Muerto, Mar		7	(2)	1
Muluya	Moulouya	7	MA	2
Munich	München	8	D	1
Muntenia		3	R	2
Nanquín	Nanjin	8	RC	2
Nápoles	Napoli	8	I	1
Narbona	Narbonne	8	F	3
Narenta	Neretva	7	YU	4
Naumburgo	Naumburg	8	D	3
Nauplia	Nafplion	8	GR	2
Navegantes	Samoa	2	(6)	4
Navidad	Christmas	2	(6)	4
Nazaret	Natsrat	8	IL	1
Neerlandia	Nederland	1	NL	5
Negra, Selva	Schwarzwald	4	D	2
Negro, Mar		5		1
Neoburgo	Neuburg	8	D	3
Neopatria		3	GR	5
Nevoso, Monte		4	YU	3
Nicaria	Ikaria	3	GR	3
Nicea	Iznik	8	TR	3
Nicomedia	Ismid	8	TR	5
Nicosia	Lefkosia	8	CY	2
Niemen	Neman	7	SU	2
Nieper	Dnepr	7	SU	5
Niester	Dnestr	7	SU	5
Nieves	Nevis	2	(5)	4
Nieves Eternas	Ewiger Schneeberg	4	A	4
Nilo		7	(3)	1
Nimega	Nijmegen	8	NL	3
Nivernesado	Nivernais	3	F	3
Niza	Nice	8	F	2
Noirmutier	Noirmoutier	5	F	5
Nóricos		4	(1)	1
Normandas	Channel Island	2	GB	3
Normandía	Normandia	3	F	3
Northumbria	Northumberland	3	GB	5
Noruega	Norge	1	N	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Noyonesado	Noyonnais	3	F	5
Nubia		3	(3)	1
Numea	Nouméa	8	(6)	3
Nuremberg	Nürnberg	8	D	1
Occitania	Occitanie	3	F	4
Oceania		1	(6)	1
Odesa	Odessa	8	SU	2
Oldemburgo	Oldenburg	38	D	3
Olimpo	Olimbos	4	GR	1
Oltenia		3	R	2
Oporto	Porto	8	P	2
Orán	Ouahran	8	DZ	1
Oranesado		3	DZ	3
Orcadas	Orkney	2	GB	2
Oremburgo	Orenburg	8	SU	3
Orleanesado	Orléannais	3	F	3
Oro, Costa de	Côte d'Or	3	F	4
Oro, Costa de	Gold Coast	6	(3)	3
Oro, Puerta de	Golden Gate	6	USA	4
Orontes	Assi	7	SYR	1
Osos, Isla de los	Bjornoya	2	(1)	3
Osos. Lago de los	Great Bear Lake	7	CDN	3
Ostende	Oostende	8	B	3
Pacifico		5		1
Padua	Padova	8	I	2
Paduano		3	I	5
Paises Bajos	Nederland	1	NL	3
Palaos	Palau	2	(6)	1
Palatinado	Pfalz	3	D	1
Palestina		3	(2)	1
Pantelaria	Pantelleria	2	I	2
Papuasia	Papua	1	(6)	3
Paragua	Palawan	2	PI	3
Parnaso	Parnassos	4	GR	2
Pasión	Clipperton	2		4
Patrás	Patre	8	GR	2
Pedro I	Peter I	2	(7)	3
Peipus	Peipsi	7	SU	2
Pelada	Pelée	4	(5)	2
Peloponeso	Peloponisos	3	GR	1
Peneo	Pinios	7	GR	2
Peninos		4	(1)	1
Pensilvania	Pennsylvania	3	USA	3
Pentelico	Pendelikon	4	GR	3
Pequin	Beijin	8	RC	2
Perim	Barim	2	(2)	2
Perla, Bahía de la	Pearl Harbour	6	USA	5
Perlas, Río de las	Pearl River	7	USA	4
Perlas, Río de las	Shiziyang	7	RC	3
Perpiñan	Perpignan	8	F	3
Perros	Dogs	2	GB	4
Persia	Iran	1	IR	4
Pescadores	Penghu	2	RC	3
Petersburgo	Leningrad	8	SU	5
Petrogrado	Leningrad	8	SU	5
Piamonte	Piemonte	3	I	2
Picardía	Picardie	3	F	3
Pilato	Pilatus	4	CH	2
Pilsen	Plzeň	8	CS	3
Pimienta, Costa de la	Grain Coast	6	(3)	2
Pindo	Pindos	4	GR	2
Piratas, Costa de los	Oman al Mutasali	36	(2)	3
Pireo	Pireefs	8	GR	1
Pistoya	Pistoia	8	I	3
Plasencia	Piacenza	8	I	3
Plevna	Pleven	8	BG	3
Podolia		3	SU	5
Pola	Pula	8	YU	3
Polesia		3	SU	5
Polinesia		2	(6)	1
Polonia	Polska	1	PL	1

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Pomerania	Pomorze	3	PL	2
Pomeralia		3	PL	2
Pomotú	Touamotou	2	(6)	4
Pompeya	Pompei	8	I	2
Pontinas	Pontine	7	I	2
Posnania	Poznanskie	3	PL	2
Praga	Praha	8	CS	1
Presburgo	Bratislava	8	CS	4
Principe Eduardo	Prince Edward	2	CDN	3
Provenza	Provence	3	F	2
Prusia	Preussen	3	D	2
Pulla	Puglia	3	I	3
Quilates	Kilates	6	MA	2
Quio	Jios	3	GR	2
Rabat	Ribat	8	MA	2
Ragusa	Dubrovnik	8	YU	4
Ratisbona	Regensburg	8	D	3
Ravena	Ravenna	8	I	2
Renania	Rheinland	3	D	2
Réticos		4	(1)	1
Rin		7	(1)	4
Rocosas	Rocky Mountains	4	USA	3
Rochela	Rochelle	8	F	3
Ródano	Rhône	7	(1)	2
Rodas	Rodos	2	GR	1
Rodesia	Rhodesia	1		3
Rodolfo	Rudolf	7		3
Ródope	Rodopi	3	GR	2
Ródope		4	(1)	2
Rojo, Mar				
Rojo, Río	Red River	7	USA	4
Rojo, Río		7	(2)	3
Romaña	Romagna	3	I	3
Rosellón	Roussillon	3	F	2
Roseta	Rashid	8	ET	1
Ruán	Rouen	8	F	3
Rumania	România	1	R	1
Rumelia		3	BG	3
Rusia	Rossiya	3	SU	1
Rutenia		3	SU	3
Saboya	Savoie	3	F	2
Sajonia	Sachsen	3	D	1
Salado, Gran Lago	Great Salt Lake	7	USA	3
Salamina	Salamis	3	GR	1
Salé	Sla	8	MA	3
Salomón	Solomon	2	(6)	2
Salónica	Zessaloniki	8	GR	2
Saluces	Saluzzo	8	I	3
Salvajes	Selvagem	2	P	3
Salzburgo	Salzburg	8	A	2
Samogicia		3	SU	4
Samotracia	Samozraki	2	GR	1
San Agustín	Saint Augustine	8	USA	3
San Andrés	Andros	2	(5)	4
San Antonio	Santo Antao	2	(2)	3
San Bartolomé	Saint Barthelemy	2	(5)	4
San Cristobal	Saint Christopher	2	(5)	4
San Deka	Agios Deka	8	GR	5
San Estéfano	Santo Stefano	8	TR	5
San Eustaquio	Sankt Eustatius	2	(5)	3
San Francisco	Sao Francisco	7	BR	3
San Gabriel	Frobisher	5	(4)	5
San Galo	Sankt Gallen	8	CH	5
San Gotardo	Sankt Gotthard	4	CH	2
San Jorge	Saint George	5	(1)	3
San Juan	Saint Jean	8	F	3
San Lorenzo	Saint Lawrence	7	(4)	2
San Luis	Saint Louis	8	(3)	3
San Martín	Saint Martin	2	(5)	3
San Martín	Sint Maarten	2	(5)	3

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
San Mauricio	Saint Maurice	8	CH	4
San Miguel	Sao Miguel	2	P	3
San Pablo	Saint Paul	2		3
San Pedro	Saint Pierre	2	(4)	4
San Petersburgo	Leningrad	8	SU	5
San Quintín	Saint-Quentin	8	F	2
San Rafael	Saint Raphael	8	F	3
San Tadeo	Fedeyev	2	SU	4
San Vicente	Saint Vicent	2	(5)	3
Santa Catalina	Santa Catarina	23	BR	3
Santa Elena	Saint Helena	2	(3)	3
Santa Irene	Zira	2	GR	5
Santa Isabel	Malabo	8	(2)	3
Santa Lucía	Saint Lucia	2	(5)	3
Santa Magdalena	Fatu Hiva	2	(6)	4
Santa María	Saint Mary	2	(3)	3
Santa Maura	Lefkas	3	GR	3
Santas	Saintes	2	(5)	3
Santo Tomás	Saint Thomas	2	(5)	4
Santo Tomé	Sao Thome	2	(3)	3
Santorín	Zira	2	GR	2
Saona	Saône	7	F	3
Sargazos		5		1
Save		7	(1)	2
Schaumburgo	Schaumburg	3	D	3
Schwarzburgo	Schwarzburg	3	D	3
Seeland	Sjælland	2	DK	2
Sena	Seine	7	F	3
Senigallia	Sinigaglia	8	I	4
Servia	Srbija	3	YU	2
Siam	Muang Thai	1	T	4
Siberia	Sibir	3	SU	1
Sidón	Saida	8	RL	2
Sigmaringa	Sigmaringen	8	D	3
Silesia	Slask	3	PL	2
Singapur	Singapura	1	(2)	2
Siria	Souriyah	1	SYR	1
Sirte	Surt	6	(3)	2
Sociedad	Société	2	(6)	3
Socotora	Suqutra	2		2
Soleura	Solothurn	3	CH	3
Sologna	Sologne	3	F	5
Soma	Somme	7	F	5
Somalia	Somaliya	1	SOM	1
Sorlingas	Scilly	2	GB	4
Sotavento	Leeward	2	(5)	2
Suabia	Schwaben	3	D	1
Sudetes		4	(1)	1
Suecia	Sverige	1	S	1
Suiza		1	CH	1
Sumatra	Sumatera	2	RI	2
Surabaya	Surabaja	8	RI	2
Tabago	Tobago	2	TT	4
Tafilete	Tafilalt	3	MA	2
Taigeto	Taigetos	4	GR	3
Támesis	Thames	7	GB	1
Tananarivo	Tananarive	8	RM	2
Tánger	Tandja	8	MA	1
Tarento	Taranto	8	I	2
Tarpeya	Tarpea	9	I	1
Tarso	Tursus	8	TR	2
Tatra		4	(1)	2
Tauro	Toros	4	TR	1
Tebas	Zive	8	GR	2
Teherán	Tehran	8	IR	2
Tejas	Texas	3	USA	3
Termópilas	Zermopile	4	GR	1
Terranova	Newfoundland	2	CDN	1
Tesalia	Zassalia	3	GR	2
Tetuán	Tittaouen	8	MA	1
Teutoburgo	Teutoburg	4	D	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Tiber	Tevere	7	I	1
Tibet		3	RC	1
Tigris	Dijla	7	(2)	1
Tilburgo	Tilburg	8	NL	3
Tirana	Tiranë	8	AL	2
Tirol	Tyrol	3	A	3
Tlemecén	Tilimsan	8	DZ	2
Tolón	Toulon	8	F	3
Tolosa	Toulouse	8	F	4
Tonquín		3	(2)	2
Tracia	Zraki	3	GR	2
Transilvania	Ardeal	3	R	1
Trebia	Trebbia	7	I	2
Trebisonda	Trabzon	8	TR	3
Tréveris	Trier	8	D	1
Trincomalí	Tirikunalamalaya	8	C	3
Trinidad	Trinity	27	USA	3
Trípoli	Trabulus	8	(3)	1
Tripolitania	Trabulus	3	(3)	1
Tristán de Acuña	Tristan da Cunha	2	(3)	3
Trivandrum	Tiruvanantapuram	8	IND	3
Tuamotú	Touamatou	2	(6)	2
Tubinga	Tübingen	8	D	3
Túnez	Tounis	18	TN	1
Turcas	Turks	2	(5)	3
Turena	Touraine	3	F	3
Turgovia	Thurgau	3	CH	3
Turín	Torino	8	I	3
Turingia	Thüringen	3	D	3
Turquía	Türkiye	1	TR	1
Turs	Tours	8	F	5
Ucrania	Ukraina	3	SU	2
Unión	Tokelau	2	(6)	4
Unión Soviética	Sovietskiy Soyus	1	SU	1
Urales	Ural	4	SU	1
Utrech	Utrecht	8	NL	3
Uxda	Oudja	8	MA	4
Valaquia		3	R	2
Valés	Valais	3	CH	5
Valeta	Valetta	8	M	3
Valtelina	Valtellina	3	I	2
Vandea	Vendée	3	F	4
Varsovia	Warszawa	8	PL	1
Veimar	Weimar	8	D	4
Venecia	Venezia	8	I	2
Venesino	Venaissin	3	F	5
Verde, Río	Green River	7	USA	4
Verdes, Montañas	Green Mountains	4	USA	4
Versalles	Versailles	8	F	1
Vestfalia	Westfalen	3	D	2
Vesubio	Vesuvio	4	I	2
Veteravia	Wetterau	3	D	3
Viena	Vienne	78	F	5
Viena	Wien	8	A	1
Vienesado	Viennois	3	F	5
Vilna	Vilnius	8	SU	2
Vírgenes	Virgin	2	(5)	2
Viseo	Vizeu	8	P	3
Vístula	Wisła	7	PL	1
Volinia	Volyn	3	SU	2
Volo	Volos	8	GR	3
Vosgos	Vosges	4	F	2
Wartburgo	Wartburg	8	D	3
Wurzburgo	Wurzburg	8	D	3
Xauen	Chechaouen	8	MA	3
Yakarta	Djakarta	8	RI	3
Yanina	Ioannina	8	GR	3
Yebala	Djebala	3	MA	2
Yemen	Yaman	1	(2)	1
Yibuti	Djibouti	8	(3)	3
Yona	Yonne	4	F	5

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Yugoslavia	Yugoslavija	1	YU	1
Zambeze	Zambesi	4	(3)	3
Zante	Dsakinzos	2	GR	3
Zelanda	Zeeland	3	NL	2
Zeluán	Selouan	8	MA	2
Zembla, Nueva	Novaya Zemlya	2	SU	2

Anexo II

LISTA DE GENTILICIOS

Abisinios
Abruzos
Afganos
Africanos
Albaneses
Albigenses
Alejandrinos
Alemanes
Alsacianos
Americanos
Anamitas
Anconitanos
Andorranos
Angoleños
Antuerpienses
Aquitanos
Arabes
Arameos
Arcadios
Aretinos
Argelinos
Argólicos
Arlesianos
Armenios
Artesianos
Ascalonitas
Asiáticos
Atenienses
Australianos
Austriacos
Auverneses
Aviñoneses
Bálticos
Bantúes
Basilienses
Basutos
Bávaros
Bayanos
Bayoneses
Bearneses
Bechuanas
Belgas
Bengalíes
Benineses
Beocios
Beréberes
Bergamascos
Berlineses
Berneses
Berrichones
Betlemitas
Biafreños
Bipontinos
Birmanos
Bohemos
Boloñeses
Bordeleses
Borgoñones
Bosnios
Brabanzones
Bracarenses
Brasileños
Bretones
Británicos
Bruselenses
Búlgaros
Burundeses
Butaneses
Cafres
Cairinos
Calabreses
Californios
Calmucos
Camboyanos
Cameruneses
Canadienses
Candiotas
Cantaurienses
Cariocas
Carolinos
Celandeses
Ceseneses
Cingaleses
Circasianos
Cirenaicos
Comoros
Congoleños
Conimbricenses
Constancienses
Constantinopolitanos
Corintios
Coreanos
Corsos
Cosacos
Cremoneses
Cretenses
Croatas
Crotoniatas
Curazoleños
Curdos
Curlandeses
Chadianos
Checos
Chinos
Chipriotas
Dahomeyanos
Dálmatas
Damascenos
Daneses
Delios
Egipcios
Epirotas
Eritreos
Escandinavos
Escoceses
Eslavos
Eslovacos
Eslovenos
Espartanos
Estadounidenses
Estonios
Etíopes
Etolios
Eubeos
Europeos
Ferrareses
Finlandeses
Fiyianos
Flamencos
Florentinos
Floridanos
Fluminenses
Focenses
Franceses
Frisones
Gaboneses
Gaetanos
Galeses
Galileos
Gambianos
Ganatas
Ganteses
Gascones
Genoveses
Georgianos
Ginebrinos
Gocianos
Gorcienses
Griegos
Grisones
Groenlandeses
Guayaneses
Güeldreses
Guineos
Guyaneses
Haitianos
Hamburgueses
Hanoverianos
Helenos
Hindúes
Holandeses
Hotentotes
Húngaros
Ilirios
Indios
Indochinos
Indonesios
Ingleses
Iranies
Iraquíes
Irlandeses
Islandeses
Israelíes
Israelitas
Italianos
Jamaicanos
Japoneses

Javaneses
Jerosolimitanos
Jordanos
Katangueños
Katarles
Keñatas
Koveitíes
Laconios
Laosianos
Lapones
Lemnios
Lemosines
Lesbios
Letones
Libaneses
Liberianos
Libios
Ligures
Lioneses
Lisboneses
Lituanos
Livonios
Lombardos
Londinenses
Loreneses
Lovanienses
Lugdunenses
Luqueses
Luxemburgueses
Macedonios
Magiares
Maguntinos
Malabares
Malasios
Malavianos
Malayos
Maldivos
Malgaches
Malienses
Malteses
Malucos
Manchúes
Marfileños
Marroquíes
Marselleses
Mauricianos
Mauritanos
Mecanos
Melanesios
Mesineses
Micronesios
Milaneses
Modeneses
Mogoles
Moldavos
Monegascos
Mongoles
Montenegrinos
Moravos
Morlacos
Moros
Moscovitas
Mozambiqueños
Muniqueses
Napolitanos
Narboneses
Nauruanos
Nazarenos
Neerlandeses
Neoyorquinos
Nepaleses
Nigerianos
Nigerinos
Nizardos
Normandos
Noruegos
Nubienses
Occitanos
Omaníes
Oraneses
Paduanos
Palermitanos
Palestinos
Pamúes
Papúes
Paquistaníes
Parisienses
Parmesanos
Pavianos
Peloponenses
Pensilvanos
Pequineses
Persas
Perusinos
Piamonteses
Picardos
Pisanos
Placentinos
Polacos
Polinesios
Pomeranos
Pompeyanos
Portugueses
Provenzales
Prusianos
Pulleses
Quirguises
Raguseos
Raveneses
Reatinos
Remenses
Renanos
Rifeños
Roaneses
Rocheleses
Rodesianos
Rodios
Romanos
Roselloneses
Ruadeses
Rumanos
Rumeliotas
Rusos
Rutenos
Saboyanos
Sajones
Salernitanos
Samios
Samoanos
Samotracios
Samoyedos
Sanmarinenses
Santomenses
Santoñeses
Sardos
Saudíes
Seichellanos
Senegaleses
Serbios
Serifios
Seychellanos
Siameses
Siberianos
Sicilianos
Sidonios
Sierraleoneses
Silesianos
Singapo-
renses
Sinopenses
Siracusanos
Sirios
Somalíes
Soviéticos
Suabos
Suazis
Sudaneses
Suecos
Suazos
Tailandeses
Tangerinos
Tanzanios
Tarentinos
Tártaros
Tasios
Tebanos
Tejanos
Tesalios
Tesaloni-
censes
Tesbitas
Tetuaníes
Tibetanos
Ticinenses
Timbreos
Tirios
Tiroleses
Togoleses
Toloneses
Tolosanos
Toscanos
Tracios
Transilvanos
Tridentinos
Tripolitanos
Tunecinos
Turanios
Turcomanos
Turcos
Turingios
Tusculanos
Ucranios
Ugandeses
Válacos
Valones
Vandeanos
Varsovianos
Vaticanos
Veimareses
Venecianos
Vénetos
Veroneses
Vestfalianos
Vienenses
Vieneses
Vietnamitas
Virginianos
Voltenses
Yemeníes
Yugoslavos
Zaireños
Zambianos
Zulúes

MATERIALS FOR DISCUSSION ON EXONYMS
Report presented by Poland*

The definition of an exonym has already twice been discussed within a forum of international co-operation: at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London 1972, and at the fifth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1973.

As a result we now have two definitions.

First, the Second United Nations Conference defines an exonym as:

> "A geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where that language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated."[1]

On the other hand, according to the definitions adopted by the United Nations Group of Experts:

> "*An exonym* is a written form of a geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where the language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated.
>
> "*A conventional name* is an exonym which is widely and currently used.
>
> "*A traditional name* is an exonym which is long established as well as being presently in use."

Neither of these definitions, however, accounts for the existence of various types of languages (isolating, agglutinative, inflexional, alternating) among which foreign geographical names are adopted. Inflexional languages especially, among them the Slavonic languages with their particularly rich inflexive (except Bulgarian and Macedonian) and derivational capacities, enforce the formation of a greater number of exonyms than in other language groups.

The point is less obvious in cartographic publications (maps, globes etc.), in which a geographical name is a written sign, which is not necessarily pronounced. In a text, however, whether scientific, popular or literary press or other mass medium, geographical names have to conform to the rules of a native language, i.e. they must undergo declension, serve as a basis for adjective formation and so on.

Let us consider several examples from Polish:

French "Le Havre" takes the form *Hawr* and is declined *Hawru* (genitive), *Hawrze* (locative).

German "Braunschweig" becomes the Polish *Brunszwik*, *Brunszwiku* (genitive), *Brunszwiku* (locative) and *brunszwicki* (adjective).

Dutch "Den Haag", in Polish, becomes *Haga*, *Hagi* (genitive), *Hadze* (locative), *haski* (adjective).

The proper name Liverpool in Polish is not an exonym, since this form is subject to declension: *Liverpoolu* (genitive), but the official name Liverpool Bay has to be changed to an exonym *Zatoka Liverpoolska*.

If one of the elements in a compound name is an exonym, then the second must also become an exonym. Let us consider Zillertaler Alpen; since there exist various names for mountains (*Alpen*, *Alpes*, *Alpi*) an exonym Alpy is justified in Polish. Thus, although the name "Zillertal" is not an exonym, this part of the Alps has been named with an exonym: *Alpy Zillertalskie*.

An additional number of exonyms is set up when geographical names are transcribed from non-Latin alphabets. Even if international principles for the romanization of these alphabets are agreed upon, the official Polish orthography, binding since 1936, has codified certain methods for their representation by means of letters from Polish alphabet; thus it seems impossible to introduce any radical changes in such representation.

Other difficulties are posed by those cases where both languages in question use the Latin alphabet, but they differ in the use of diacritical marks. Omission of diacritical marks or their substitution by letters or sequences of letters leads, from the formal point of view, to the formation of exonyms. However, we are of the opinion that such operations do not form exonyms. Thus the Polish *Calarasi* (instead of the Romanian "Călărasi") or *La Montania* (instead of the Spanish "La Montaña") are not exonyms. Similarly, *Lodz*, which is formed by omission of diacritical marks in the Polish proper name *łódź* is not an exonym.

The two types of exonyms differentiated in 1973 ("conventional names" and "traditional names") are worth being complemented by the third one—"historical names"—for exonyms used in the past and indispensable in historical maps and texts concerning history.

Here we should quote as typical cases the former Polish *Królewiec*, the exonym for the German "Königsberg", presently Kaliningrad in the USSR, or the former Polish *Raguza*, from the Italian "Ragusa", presently Dubrovnik in Yugoslavia.

Historical exonyms should be distinguished from historical names that were not exonyms in other languages, such as *Sredec* or *Serdika*, former names of the present Sofia, Bulgaria.

To sum up the argument, our claim is that the number of exonyms on maps can be reduced, but that in texts they are unavoidable and their reduction must be a long and gradual process. Such duality, however, entails certain inconveniences, e.g. the form of names used in geographical textbooks and in encyclopaedias would differ from those on maps.

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.121.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 49.

AGENDA ITEM 14—POINT 14 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 14 DEL PROGRAMA

PRATIQUES COURANTES DANS LE TRAITEMENT DE LA TOPONYMIE SOUS-MARINE
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

Canada, which has one of the longest coastlines in the world and has recently decided to extend its sovereignty over fisheries to 200 nautical miles from its shores, constantly needs to improve its knowledge of the adjacent ocean depths and to obtain a precise and accurate picture of the undersea features in those waters. Since 1967, a seven-member Consultative Committee has been giving advice on the appropriateness of the names of undersea features and has developed principles and practical methods for dealing with such names. The Committee maintains close contacts with the international bodies concerned with nomenclature for undersea features, and has contributed extensively to the formulation of definitions, principles and methods for use internationally.

Resumen

El Canadá, país con uno de los litorales más largos del mundo, ha declarado recientemente que extiende su jurisdicción en materia de pesca hasta 200 millas de sus costas, necesita cada vez más urgentemente mejorar su conocimiento de los fondos marinos e identificar con exactitud y precisión los accidentes submarinos. Desde 1967 un comité asesor de siete miembros ha prestado asesoramiento sobre la adecuación de los nombres geográficos de los accidentes submarinos y ha preparado principios y procedimientos prácticos para la utilización de esos nombres. Ese comité también ha mantenido vínculos estrechos con los órganos internacionales interesados en los nombres de los accidentes submarinos y ha contribuido sustancialmente a dar definiciones y formular principios y procedimientos para su empleo internacional.

*

* *

Le Canada possède un littoral qui est un des plus longs au monde. En raison de la récente déclaration qui a porté à 200 milles de nos côtes la juridiction du Canada dans le domaine des pêches, il est de plus en plus nécessaire d'accroître notre connaissance des fonds océaniques moyens, de faire progresser la cartographie bathymétrique des phénomènes sous-marins et d'identifier exactement et précisément les formes morphologiques découvertes.

Depuis 10 ans, le Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine a étudié et recommandé divers noms d'éléments sous-marins et il a favorisé l'établissement d'une terminologie qui pourrait être acceptée dans le monde entier. Le Comité, qui est composé de sept membres et qui représente un large éventail d'intérêts, notamment en ce qui concerne la défense, les pêches, l'océanographie, l'écologie marine, la géologie marine, la bathymétrie, les affaires du nord et la toponymie, a aussi participé à l'élaboration de principes et de règles qui seront appliqués dans les régions qui intéressent le Canada. Ces principes et règles ont été révisés en collaboration avec la Commission de toponymie des Etats-Unis d'Amérique afin que nos deux pays puissent mettre au point et utiliser des approches normalisées. Le texte intégral des principes et des règles proposés est présenté à la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques.

Voici, en résumé, les principes proposés pour l'appellation des éléments sous-marins voisins du Canada.

Les noms donnes par d'autres pays seront acceptés s'ils sont conformes aux principes suivants:

a) Les noms et la terminologie établis seront acceptés;

b) Les doubles emplois de noms doivent être évités;

c) L'orthographe des noms d'origine commune doit être uniforme; les désignations dans plus d'une langue seront acceptées si l'usage en est bien établi; les règles linguistiques concernant l'accentuation et l'orthographe seront acceptées;

d) Les noms de personnes doivent être utilisés rarement; le cas échéant, ces noms doivent rappeler une contribution marquante dans la région, dans l'histoire et l'avancement des sciences de la mer ou de la terre ou dans l'exploration;

e) On préfère d'abord les noms descriptifs et choisis par association d'idées, puis les noms dérivés de navires, d'institutions et de personnages historiques qui ont contribué à la découverte, à la vérification et à l'interprétation de phénomènes océaniques;

f) La terminologie doit refléter l'usage; elle peut être liée aux caractères génétiques ou physiques; il faut que les

* Le texte original de ce rapport préparé par M. Ewing, hydrographe fédéral du Canada, chef du Service hydrographique du Canada, directeur général de la Direction générale des levés marins, sciences océaniques et aquatiques du Ministère de l'environnement et des pêches, et président du Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine, du Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.17.

La version anglaise de ce rapport, publiée dans le numéro spécial de la revue *CANOMA*, vol. 3, n° 1, a été distribuée à la Conférence.

nouveaux termes soient approuvés avant leur publication.

En sa qualité de membre de l'Organisation hydrographique internationale, le Service hydrographique canadien est convenu de n'utiliser que les noms qui concordent exactement avec les désignations prescrites par la source la plus autorisée. Ainsi, chaque pays membre fournira une couverture toponymique complète qui sera utilisée par tous les autres bureaux hydrographiques nationaux qui publient des cartes et d'autres documents de navigation ayant trait à la même région. Par ailleurs, les cartes du Canada qui couvrent des régions étrangères indiquent des noms approuvés par les pays souverains dans ces régions. Ces ententes internationales doivent aider à atteindre l'objectif de normalisation des noms géographiques visé par les Nations Unies.

Le Comité d'étude de la carte générale bathymétrique des océans (CGBO) a été réorganisé en 1973 et transformé en un comité conjoint de la Commission océanographique intergouvernementale de l'UNESCO et de l'Organisation hydrographique internationale. L'Hydrographe fédéral du Canada préside le sous-comité de la toponymie et de la nomenclature des éléments des fonds océaniques.

Le Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine est convaincu que les discussions engagées à l'échelon international permettront d'aboutir à une entente sur la normalisation de la toponymie des fonds océaniques et que toutes les parties arriveront à un accord quant à la définition et à l'utilisation de la terminologie, des principes et des règles à adopter à l'égard de la nomenclature et de la terminologie. Notre principale tâche pour l'avenir consistera à communiquer aux spécialistes des sciences de la mer et aux rédacteurs de revues scientifiques les définitions, les principes et les règles qui sont approuvés.

PROBLEMS OF EXTRATERRESTRIAL TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE NOMENCLATURE

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The period between the Second and Third United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names has been characterized by intensive development of space research. Space research apparatus was used for investigation of the moon as well as Mars, Mercury, Venus and other planets of the solar system.

Successful execution of space programmes in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, the United States of America and other countries promoted a wide programme of moon surface mapping at scales 1 : 1,000,000, 1 : 500,000, 1 : 250,000 and larger; of Mars at scales 1 : 5,000,000, 1 : 1,000,000, and 1 : 250,000; and of Mercury at scale 1 : 5,000,000. These developments have created a demand, which keeps growing, for the naming of a considerable number of surface formations of different types and shapes on different celestial bodies. That is why it has become obviously necessary to revise the former views on naming of extraterrestrial topographic features based on the moon investigation with telescopes.

To solve the problem of naming of a much greater number of topographic features of diverse types and forms on the surfaces of different planets and their satellites it became necessary to apply a new toponymic approach.

Having started investigation of this problem, the Working Group on the Names of Extraterrestrial Topographic Features[1] has held five meetings in recent years, timed to coincide with the fourth (1972), fifth (1973) and sixth (1975) sessions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Between sessions, the work was conducted by correspondence.

First of all the Working Group communicated with the International Astronomic Union (IAU), the scientific-public organization that deals practically with the naming of extraterrestrial bodies and their surface formations. The first steps in this direction were not reassuring. We applied to the IAU President[2] and Secretary-General with an offer of co-operation, but received a negative-in-essence reply.[3] Afterwards, however, we managed to establish business relations with the IAU.

The IAU fifteenth General Assembly, held in Sidney in 1973, introduced amendments to the structure and procedure of preparation and examination of proposals on nomenclature of planets and their satellites. The Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature[4] was set up, as were a number of task groups on nomenclature of the moon, Mars, Mercury, Venus and outer planets of the solar system. The Chairmen of the Task Groups became members of the Working Group. The proposals prepared by each of the task groups are discussed at Working Group sessions and after approval by simple majority of votes are handed over to the IAU Executive Committee, which accepts them without consideration. Subsequently, also without consideration, the proposals are approved

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov (USSR), Chairman of the Working Group on the Names of Extraterrestrial Topographic Features of UNGEGN, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.18.

[1] Initially the following three experts were elected as members of the Working Group: A. M. Komkov, Chairman (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), M. F. Burrill (United States of America) and H. G. Lewis (United Kingdom). In 1973–1975 they were joined by S. Radó (Hungary), R. Randall (United States of America), D. Sharma (India) and D. Vayacacos (Greece).

[2] Letter to IAU President B. Stressberg and Secretary-General S. Jager, of 14 August 1973.

[3] Reply letter to Mr. Burrill, Chairman of the United Nations Group of Experts, of 21 August 1973.

[4] The IAU Working Group is composed of P. Millman, Chairman (Canada), B. Levin (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), D. Morrison (United States of America), A. Dollfus (France), C. Mayer (United States of America), T. Owen (United States of America), G. Pettengill (United States of America), B. Smith (United States of America), S. Runcorn (United Kingdom).

by the next IAU General Assembly. The updated structure permits broadening of the scale of activities (to extend naming to all planetary bodies) and an increase in its speed. At the same time it is necessary to mention that under the new structure the preparation and consideration of the proposals is conducted by a comparatively narrow group of specialists and that approval of proposals by the IAU Executive Committee and the IAU General Assembly is of a formal character.

Exchange of information was established between the United Nations and the IAU Working Groups. Mr. P. Millman, Chairman of the IAU Working Group (IAUWG) was invited to participate at the United Nations Working Group (UNWG) meeting held in New York on 14 March 1975. He delivered a report on the activities of the IAUWG and became acquainted with remarks and proposals of the UNWG members. A. Komkov, the UNWG Chairman, took part in the IAUWG session held in July 1976 in Moscow, where he delivered a paper entitled "Concerning the normalization of the nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features". On proposal of the IAUWG Chairman the Chairman of UNWG was included in the IAUWG as a consultant.

Thus, favourable conditions have been established, and continue at present, for business and fruitful co-operation between the two Working Groups.

The state of affairs in naming of extraterrestrial topographic features is now as follows: The IAUWG at its first session (1974) approved the previously elaborated "Basic principles for planetary system nomenclature" and compiled at list of Latin terms for different types of features and a list of over 20 possible name categories for use in nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features (without, however, indicating what name categories were recommended for certain types of topographic features on different planets). Along with commemorative names (after distinguished deceased men of science and engineering and workers in culture and art), the list incorporated such name categories as animals, birds, minerals, islands, lakes, rivers, mountains, deserts and so on, thus opening the way to a torrent of contradictory and unacceptable proposals.

As a result of subsequent scrutiny and selection of proposals, definite name categories already in use or recommended for different types of surface formations on different celestial bodies were determined at the IAUWG meetings in 1975 and 1976 (see table in annex).

Gradually, the outline of the general system of nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features was elaborated. The system stipulates that specified name categories be fixed for each group of topographic features on different celestial bodies. This allows more effective control of the name-assignment procedure, while avoiding duplication of names on different planets as had happened, for example, in 1973 when the fifteenth IAU General Assembly approved about 90 commemorative names for Martian craters, though these names had been already assigned to the lunar craters.

In order to escape possible duplication of names the IAUWG in 1974 passed the recommendation not to assign the names of outstanding workers in art and culture to the lunar craters, but to save this name category for Mercury craters only.

By now, in compliance with the name categories presented in the annex, lists of names of a large number of specific topographic features of the moon, Mars and Mercury are compiled and approved by the IAU. Lists of a certain number of spare names, forming a kind of "bank" of names to be used in case of emergency, are also prepared. Selection of names was made on an international basis. Considerable and complicated work has been carried out, but this does not mean that all the problems of extraterrestrial topographic feature nomenclature are already solved.

Foreseeing further development of space research and a growing demand for extraterrestrial feature names it is necessary to specify and concretize the existing system of naming in order to fix firmly for each group of surface formations on each planet a more definite and sufficiently productive category of names. From the toponymic point of view it seems questionable to use names of research spacecraft or observatories for valleys and precipices on Mercury's surface; these names better suit features of discrete rather than continuous character. We think also that such a category as names of large orographic features of the earth is fit for a wider application. Out of the great number of possible names of this kind, only 14 names have been used up to now, and these only for the lunar features.

We doubt the expediency of employing a large number of Latin terms for designation of different types of extraterrestrial topographic features. The terms now operative in geography and geomorphology for investigation of terrestrial features fully meet the requirements of science and practice. Translation of the terms into Latin by no means increases their scientific significance. The problem of Latin terms was discussed at the last meeting of our Working Group in 1975. It should be noted that almost all members of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names actively participated in this meeting. The majority of experts expressed the opinion that the generic terms designating different types of extraterrestrial topographic features should be selected from among the terrestrial terms and that the terms should be English in English publications, Russian in Russian publications and so on.

As a result of the above-mentioned Working Group meeting we came to the conclusion that at the present stage of the investigation of extraterrestrial topographic feature nomenclature the complicated legal aspects of the subject should not be touched. But questions of this kind remain. And now that the general system of planetary system nomenclature is outlined it is expedient to define on a broad international basis the procedure for introducing, considering and approving of proposals on names for extraterrestrial topographic features as well as that for informing all the world scientific circles concerned. Co-operation between the IAU and the United Nations will facilitate the effective solution of this problem.

Annex

EXTRATERRESTRIAL TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE NOMENCLATURE: CATEGORIES OF NAMES OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES BEING USED OR RECOMMENDED FOR APPLICATION

Topographic features \ *Celestial bodies*		*Moon*		*Mars*	*Mercury*	*Venus*
		Near side	*Far side*			
Albedo features		—	—	Names from antique world for marking map sheets at scale 1:5,000,000	—	—
Plains, plateaus, "seas", "bays", "swamps", mountains, valleys, canyons, faults, fissures and other features of non-crater formation		Symbolic names. Names transferred from orographic terrestrial features	Symbolic names. Commemorative names; names transferred from orographic terrestrial features	Names from antique world. Names of terrestrial rivers for valleys and dry riverbeds	Names from antique world for plains and mountains. Names of research spacecraft and observatories for valleys and precipices	Names of goddesses from antique world for vast plains, commemorative names (for specialists in the field of radioelectronics and automation) for other topographic features
Craters	Large	Commemorative names (for outstanding astronomers, mathematicians, physicists, biologists)	Commemorative names (for outstanding figures in science, art and culture)	Commemorative names (for outstanding astronomers, mathematicians, physicists and others) for craters with d > 100 km	Commemorative names (for outstanding writers, poets, composers, painters)	Mythological female names for craters with d > 100 km
	Small	Letter indexes attached to names of nearby craters (Mendler's system); male and female names on large scale maps	Designation system is not elaborated yet	Letter indexes connected with the layout of map sheets at scale 1:5,000,000; names of small towns and villages on maps of 1:1,000,000 and larger		Modern female names

COMMENTS ON THE PROGRAMME OF THE WORKING GROUP ON UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURES

Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Les résolutions 22, 23 et 26 de la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques[1] concernaient les problèmes relatifs à la nomenclature océanographique et aux noms des détails sous-marins. Le Groupe de travail chargé des noms des détails sous-marins et marins a choisi actuellement d'examiner la résolution 23. Dans cette résolution, la Conférence recommande que le Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques "élabore un modèle de texte sur le traitement des noms des détails sous-marins" et "mette au point des formules types pour la présentation des propositions concernant les noms . . . en s'inspirant des formules utilisées par le Board on Geographical Names des Etats-Unis (BGN) et par des organismes similaires dans d'autres pays". A la sixième session du Groupe d'experts, ces tâches ont été formulées de la manière suivante:

a) La détermination de politiques et de principes en vue d'attribuer un nom aux détails sous-marins et marins. (Le texte du BGN intitulé "Principes appliqués en ce qui concerne les noms de détails sous-marins"[2] a été cité comme modèle possible.)

b) La mise au point d'une formule pour les propositions de nouveaux noms. (La formule du BGN a été citée comme modèle.)

Le Groupe d'experts a indiqué dans l'annexe II de son rapport sur sa cinquième session qu'"il faudrait s'efforcer d'éviter les doubles emplois avec les travaux des autres organisations qui s'occupent du même domaine d'activité". C'est pourquoi il est proposé que les recommandations déjà faites par l'Organisation hydrographique internationale (OHI)—dont certaines sont mentionnées dans la circulaire No 28 de 1972 du Bureau hydrographique international—soient examinées en vue de leur adoption éventuelle. Nous estimons qu'il importe que le texte qui sera élaboré grâce aux efforts du Groupe de travail soit publié conjointement par l'Organisation des Nations Unies et l'OHI.

Le texte du BGN manque d'informations détaillées sur les termes génériques, qui ne sont mentionnés qu'au point 5 ("Les termes génériques en anglais sont acceptés . . . ; les termes génériques dans d'autres langues sont traduits"). Puisqu'il est proposé que le point 5 soit supprimé et étant donné que son libellé ne convient pas, il faut ajouter certains principes concernant l'utilisation des termes génériques. Le texte suivant est une solution possible: "Les termes génériques devraient figurer dans la langue utilisée par l'autorité nationale de normalisation compétente, sur la base d'une liste de termes génériques accompagnés de définitions établie en commun par l'Organisation des Nations Unies et l'OHI".

En ce qui concerne le deuxième point du programme du Groupe de travail, la formule intitulée "Proposition de nom pour un détail sous-marin" (en ajoutant "ou marin") convient mieux que la formule intitulée "Proposition de nom pour un détail situé dans l'Antarctique". Toutefois, une telle formule ne serait nécessaire que si l'on pouvait créer un service on un bureau au Secrétariat de l'Organisation des Nations Unies afin d'examiner les propositions de noms au niveau international et cela "causerait des heurts ou des doubles emplois avec les travaux qu'effectue actuellement le Comité GEBCO du BHI", comme l'a fait observer G. F. Delaney dans son document d'information. Il se peut que le Comité GEBCO puisse se servir de cette formule.

Resumen

En las resoluciones 22, 23 y 26 de la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos[3] se trató de los problemas relativos a la nomenclatura submarina y los nombres de los accidentes submarinos. El Grupo de Trabajo sobre los accidentes submarinos y marítimos ha decidido tratar en esta ocasión de la resolución 23. En esta resolución, se recomienda que el Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos "prepare un modelo o modelos de declaración sobre la forma de tratar los nombres de los accidentes submarinos" y además se recomienda que el Grupo "prepare . . . unos modelos de formulario para proponer nombres . . . inspirados en los que utilizan la Board on Geographical Names de los Estados Unidos y organismos similares de otros países". En el sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos, las tareas mencionadas fueron formuladas del modo siguiente:

a) El establecimiento de políticas y principios en virtud de los cuales los accidentes submarinos y marítimos puedan recibir una designación. (La declaración de la Board on Geographical Names "Undersea name policies" se identificó como un modelo posible.)

b) El establecimiento de una fórmula por la cual se puedan proponer nuevos nombres. (La fórmula de la Board on Geographical Names fue citada como modelo.)

En el anexo II al informe del Grupo de Expertos sobre su quinto período de sesiones, se declaró que "debe cuidarse de no duplicar la labor de otros organismos dedicados a la misma esfera de actividad". Por consiguiente, se sugiere que las recomendaciones existentes

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.28.

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Ibid*, vol. II, *Documents techniques* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.4), p. 228.

[3] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.74.I.2), cap. III.

de la Organización Hidrográfica Internacional (OHI) (algunas de las cuales se mencionan en la carta circular No. 28, 1972, de la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional) sean revisadas para su inclusión. Consideramos importante que la declaración resultante de los esfuerzos efectuados por el Grupo de Trabajo sea publicada conjuntamente por las Naciones Unidas y la OHI.

La declaración de la Board on Geographical Names carece de información detallada sobre términos genéricos, que se mencionan únicamente en el punto 5 ("*Generics in English . . . will be accepted, those in other languages will be translated.*") Puesto que se sugiere que sea suprimido el punto 5 y a causa de que la redacción es inadaptable, ha de añadirse algún principio sobre la utilización de términos genéricos. Una posible solución es la siguiente: "Los términos genéricos deben darse en el idioma de la respectiva autoridad nacional de normalización sobre la base de una lista conjunta de las Naciones Unidas-OHI de términos genéricos con definiciones".

Con respecto al segundo tema acerca del programa del Grupo de Trabajo, la "*Undersea feature name proposal*" (propuesta de nombres de accidentes submarinos) (con "*and maritime*" (y marítimos) añadido) es más adecuada que la fórmula "*Antarctic name proposal*" (propuesta de nombres antárticos). Sin embargo, solamente es necesaria tal fórmula si se puede crear una dependencia u oficina de personal de las Naciones Unidas para ocuparse de las propuestas de nombres en un nivel internacional, y esto "estaría en conflicto con las tareas que actualmente lleva a cabo el Comité del GEBCO – Mapa Batimétrico General de los Océnos – de la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional (OHI) o las duplicaría", como señaló G. F. Delaney en su documento de información. Tal vez el Comité del GEBCO pueda hacer uso de esta fórmula.

*

* *

Resolutions 22, 23 and 26 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names[4] dealt with problems relating to undersea nomenclature and the names of undersea features. The Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features has chosen to deal with resolution 23 at this time. This resolution recommends that the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names "work on a model statement or statements on the treatment of undersea feature names" and further recommends that the Group "develop model forms for proposing names . . . patterned after those used by the United States Board on Geographical Names [BGN] and by similar organizations in other countries". At the sixth session of the Group of Experts the above tasks were formulated as follows:

(*a*) The establishment of policies and principles by which undersea and maritime features could be named (the BGN statement "Undersea name policies"[5] was identified as a possible model); and

(*b*) The development of a form by which new names could be proposed (the BGN form was again cited as a model).

In giving our comments we assume that policies and principles at the present stage are intended for use by national standardization authorities. This means that the points of view of international standardization (such as methods of stabilization, the question of possible uniformity or equivalence, the avoiding of the translation of descriptive terms etc.) are excluded. The international aspect can only be achieved if names coinciding with policies and principles laid down in a United Nations statement are included in a joint United Nations–International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) gazetteer. The procedure for such an activity was examined in detail by G. F. Delaney in information paper No. 6, "Guidelines for name applications",[6] submitted to the Group of Experts at its third session. If the Working Group had any intention of including questions of international standardization now, that information paper should have been taken as a basis for discussion too.

The BGN statement is essentially a document aimed at national standardization in a specific country; some points will therefore have to be left out. We suggest the deletion of points 1, 2, 4 and 5. This means that the remaining items will be "Identification and location" (point 3), "Guidelines for selection of specific terms" (point 6) and "Names to be excepted" (point 7).

The following amendments to point 6 are considered necessary:

(*a*) The reference to BGN should be omitted under point 6 (*a*);

(*b*) The words "and maritime" should be added in paragraph 1 of point 6 (*b*);

(*c*) In point 6 (*f*) ("Names considered inappropriate"), a fifth category should be included: "Names of living persons not associated with the discovery of a feature" (see point 4 of the above-mentioned information paper submitted by G. F. Delaney); and

(*d*) Examples of maritime names should be added where possible, since the policies do not refer only to undersea features.

It was stated in annex II to the report of the Group of Experts on its fifth session that "care should be taken to avoid overlapping the work of other agencies engaged in the same area of activity". It is therefore suggested that the existing recommendations of IHO (some of which are mentioned in circular letter No. 28, 1972, of the International Hydrographic Bureau) should be reviewed for inclusion. We think it is important that the statement

[4] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London, 10–31 May 1972*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[5] *Ibid.*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 214.

[6] Copies of the paper may be obtained from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

resulting from the Working Group's efforts should be issued jointly by the United Nations and IHO.

The BGN statement lacks detailed information on generic terms, which are mentioned only under point 5 ("Generics in English . . . will be accepted; those in other languages will be translated."). Since it is suggested that point 5 should be deleted, and because the wording is unsuitable, some principle on the use of generic terms has to be added. The following is a possible solution: "Generic terms should be given in the language of the respective national standardization authority, based on a joint United Nations–IHO list of generic terms with definitions".

With regard to the second item on the programme of the Working Group, the "Undersea feature name proposal" (with "and maritime" added) is more suitable than the "Antarctic name proposal" form. However, such a form is needed only if a United Nations staff unit or bureau can be created to deal with name proposals on an international level, and this "would conflict with or overlap the tasks now carried out by the GEBCO Committee of IHB", as noted by G. F. Delaney in his information paper. Perhaps the GEBCO Committee could make use of this form.

LIST OF SUBMARINE NAMES ON THE WORLD MAP 1:2,500,000

Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Une liste comprenant 727 noms de détails sous-marins portés sur la carte du monde au 1:2 500 000 a été établie. Une comparaison est faite avec les détails topographiques sous-marins mentionnés dans la nomenclature du Board of Geographical Names (BGN) des Etats-Unis. La comparaison montre qu'un tiers des noms portés sur la carte du monde ne figurent pas dans la nomenclature du BGN et aussi qu'un tiers des noms figurent sous une forme différente dans cette nomenclature. On cite des exemples de divergence concernant aussi bien les noms que des détails de dimension différente. On souligne la nécessité d'une normalisation internationale.

Resumen

Se da una lista de 727 nombres submarinos del mapa mundial a escala 1:2.500.000. Se hace una comparación con el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos: accidentes submarinos. La comparación demuestra que una tercera parte de los nombres del Mapa Mundial no está incluida, y también que una tercera parte de los nombres aparece en diferente forma en el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos. Se aducen ejemplos de divergencias, tanto de nombres diferentes como de accidentes de diferente extensión. Se hace hincapié en la necesidad de una normalización internacional en la aplicación de esos métodos.

*

* *

The attached list was prepared for the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1975. The list contains submarine names to be found on the sheets of the World Map 1:2,500,000. This World Map series is the result of the combined cartographic efforts of Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, the German Democratic Republic, Hungary, Poland, Romania and the Soviet Union. In the following, we compare this list in some respects with the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features*, second edition (Washington, D.C., 1971).

Divergences between World Map 1:2,500,000 and the BGN *Gazetteer*

Our list contains 727 names, the BGN *Gazetteer* about 2,800. In spite of this difference, a considerable number of the names in our list are missing from the BGN *Gazetteer*; according to a rough estimate, one third of the names of the World Map are not contained in the BGN *Gazetteer*. One reason for this could be that names of deeps have been intentionally omitted.

A few comparisons are given below as examples of the different treatment of names in the two materials:

World Map	*BGN* Gazetteer
Admiral Zenker Seamount	Zenker Seamount
Afanasij Nikitin Seamount	Nikitin Seamount
African-Antarctic Basin	Atlantic-Indian Basin
African Antarctic Ridge	Atlantic-Indian Ridge
Akademii Nauk SSSR Height	AN Rise
Alexander Bank	Alexandra Bank
Alfred Merz Seamount	Merz Seamount
Alicia, Banco	Alice Shoal
Alida Bank	Alida Reef

About one third of the names in our list appear in different form in the BGN *Gazetteer*.

It is to be observed that apart from such differences in name forms, there are also divergences in the position and extent of the features. For example, the North Atlantic Ridge and South Atlantic Ridge of the World Map are joined, in the BGN *Gazetteer*, as the "Mid-Atlantic Ridge".

The divergences shown here clearly indicate the necessity for international standardization of submarine feature names. After suitable principles have been formulated, comparisons of this kind should be made, followed by the minimizing of divergences. As a result, lists of equivalent names could be compiled in the different languages.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.29

(Generics are added in brackets (a) *if they do not form part of the name and* (b) *for names in languages other than English)*

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Abrolhos Bank	150	18 33 S	38 50 W
Adelaide Bank	136	06 20 S	57 05 E
Admiral Zenker Seamount	192	40 52 S	06 00 W
Adventure Bank	53	37 20 N	12 10 E
Afanasij Nikitin Seamount	137	03 00 S	83 00 E
African-Antarctic Basin	211, 212, 222 223, 224	61 30 S	18 00 E
African Antarctic Ridge	194, 210, 211	53 00 S	20 00 E
Africana Seamount	194	37 10 S	29 10 E
Agulhas Bank	174, 194	35 50 S	21 00 E
Agulhas Basin	193, 194	47 00 S	27 00 E
Agulhas Plateau	194	40 00 S	26 00 E
Akademii Nauk SSSR Height	41	47 35 N	150 00 E
Alacrán, Arrecife [reef]	88	22 26 N	89 38 W
Alargado, Arrecife [reef]	88	15 05 N	82 23 W
Albatross Bank	29	56 40 N	152 35 W
Albatross Bank	88	17 40 N	75 42 W
Albatross Depth	138	11 18 S	90 10 E
Albert Meyer Reef	143	20 50 S	172 20 W
Aleutian Trench	28, 29, 42	51 00 N	171 30 W
Aleutian Trough	28, 42	57 00 N	180 00
Alexa Bank	142	11 35 S	175 10 E
Alexander Bank	119	08 02 N	110 37 E
Alfred Merz Seamount	210	48 35 S	05 30 E
Alicia, Banco [bank]	88	16 05 N	79 22 W
Alida Bank	118	00 59 N	107 50 E
Almirante Saldenha Bank	150	22 20 S	37 35 W
Alm Plateau	42	54 50 N	176 35 E
Alpha Rise	1	85 20 N	94 00 W
Altair Seamount	51	44 36 N	33 50 W
Amazon Canyon	110	04 00 N	48 00 W
American Scout Seamount	50	46 25 N	37 35 W
Amirante Basin	136	08 10 S	55 00 E
Ampère Bank	72	35 05 N	12 48 W
Amundsen Basin	1, 7	87 30 N	99 00 E
Andromache Shoal	136	03 50 S	54 50 E
Angola Basin	133, 152, 153	14 00 S	01 00 W
Angria Bank	97	16 25 N	72 05 E
Antiope Reef	143	18 13 S	168 20 W
Arabian Basin	96, 116	12 00 N	64 00 E
Arabian-Indian Ridge	116, 136	04 00 N	64 00 E
Arakane Reef	100	15 40 N	142 45 E
Argentina Seamount	194	37 35 S	18 10 E
Argentine Basin	190, 191	44 00 S	43 00 W
Argo Deep	162	12 28 S	165 50 E
Arguello Canyon	66	34 20 N	121 10 W
Astoria Canyon	46	46 10 N	124 50 W
Atlantis Seamount	71	34 35 N	30 38 W
Aurora Bank	120	00 45 N	129 32 E
Australian-Antarctic Basin	214, 215, 216, 225, 226	58 00 S	115 00 E
Australian-Antarctic Rise	197, 198, 199, 214, 215, 216	50 00 S	117 00 E
Aves Ridge	89	13 40 N	63 20 W
Azores-Cape Saint Vincent Ridge	51, 52	37 10 N	16 00 W
Azores Plateau	51	39 00 N	29 00 W
Baffin Basin	3, 11	72 00 N	66 00 W
Baffin Greenland Rise	11	66 00 N	58 00 W
Bahama Basin	68	28 05 N	76 25 W
Bajo Blanco [bank]	87	20 52 N	90 47 W
Baleine Bank	159	16 45 S	121 52 E
Bali Trough	138, 139	09 30 S	112 00 E
Baltimore Canyon	48	38 05 N	73 48 W
Banda Trench	140	06 00 S	130 40 E
Banquereau [bank]	49	44 32 N	58 45 W
Banzare Seamounts	213	59 22 S	76 50 E

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Barbados Ridge	89	12 55 N	59 40 W
Bartholomew Deep	149	23 28 S	71 23 W
Barth Seamount	221	62 55 S	41 30 W
Bartlett Deep	88	19 05 N	80 20 W
Bassas de Pedro Bank	97	12 40 N	72 30 E
Bayonnaise Bank	143	12 07 S	179 36 W
Bean Ridge	29	52 30 N	148 20 W
Beata Ridge	88, 89	16 30 N	72 00 W
Belgica Bank	4	78 35 N	13 20 W
Bellingshausen Basin	206, 218, 219, 220	65 20 S	130 00 W
Bellona Gap	202	39 00 S	166 00 E
Benares Shoal	136	05 15 S	71 42 E
Bermuda Rise	69	32 30 N	64 50 W
Bill Baileys Bank	12	60 30 N	10 30 W
Blackwood Shoal	140	09 50 S	159 27 E
Blake Plateau	68	30 00 N	78 30 W
Block Canyon	49	39 45 N	71 20 W
Bogorova Rise	60	42 30 N	136 12 E
Bonaire, Trinchera de [basin]	109	11 30 N	67 30 W
Bonin Trench, see Izu-Oga-sawara [Bonin] Trench			
Bougainville Trench	141	06 55 S	154 30 E
Bounty Trough	202	46 00 S	178 00 E
Bowers Ridge	28, 42	55 00 N	177 30 W
Bowie Seamount	29	53 20 N	135 30 W
Brazilian Basin	131, 151	12 00 S	26 00 W
Broken Ridge	178	31 10 S	96 00 E
Brooks Banks	63	24 10 N	166 55 W
Brougham Shoal	142	09 30 S	165 30 E
Brown Bank	88	21 30 N	74 43 W
Brown Bank	119	10 38 N	117 30 E
Brownes Bank	194	36 20 S	21 15 E
Brown's Bank	49	42 40 N	66 05 W
Brown Seamount	29	54 50 N	138 30 W
Bruce Rise	225	63 30 S	101 00 E
Buchan Deep	35	57 40 N	01 15 W
Buffon Reef	143	20 40 S	170 00 W
Buldir Reef	42	52 10 N	176 30 E
Burdwood Bank	207, 203	54 20 S	59 00 W
Burgeo Bank	49	47 05 N	57 50 W
Bushnell Seamount	84	19 04 N	153 53 W
Cable Bank	75	26 45 N	52 35 E
Cabo Falso, Bancos del [banks]	88	15 32 N	83 10 W
Caicos Bank	88, 89	21 40 N	72 15 W
California Seamount	86	17 45 N	124 00 W
Callou Bank	118	09 20 N	107 34 E
Campbell Trough	103	04 25 N	167 45 W
Campeche, Banco de	87, 88	21 30 N	90 30 W
Canada Basin	2	77 00 N	142 00 W
Canary Basin	70, 71, 90, 91	28 00 N	27 00 W
Canso Bank	49	45 08 N	60 20 W
Cape Basin	173, 193	34 00 N	05 00 E
Cape Johnson Depth	120	10 25 N	126 37 E
Cape Johnson Seamount	83	17 05 N	177 10 W
Cape Rise	193	41 00 S	12 30 E
Cape Verde Basin	90, 91, 110, 111	13 00 N	34 00 W
Cape Verde Plateau	91	18 00 N	22 00 W
Capricorn Seamount	143	18 44 S	172 15 W
Cariaco, Fosa de [basin]	109	10 35 N	65 10 W
Carnatic Shoal	119	10 09 N	117 30 E
Carnegie Ridge	128	01 15 S	85 00 W
Carondelet Reef	123	05 38 S	173 53 W
Castor, Banc du [bank]	155	12 50 S	47 45 E
Cayman Ridge	88	19 45 N	81 13 W
Cayman Trough	88	19 05 N	80 00 W
Cay Sal Bank	88	23 45 N	80 05 W
Cedros Trench	66	27 45 N	115 50 W
Central American Trench	87	15 30 N	98 00 W
Central Basin	5, 14	73 30 N	43 00 E

Names	Sheet No.	Latitude	Longitude
Central Indian Basin	137, 157	12 00 S	81 00 E
Central Indian Ridge	176, 177, 197	30 00 S	76 00 E
Central Seamount	5	75 00 N	36 00 E
Centurion Bank	136	07 40 S	70 52 E
Ceryn Seamount	49	36 43 N	67 55 W
Chagos Trench	137	06 50 S	73 40 E
Challenger Plateau	202	40 00 S	170 00 E
Charlie Gap	2	78 40 N	170 40 W
Charlotte Bank	118	07 10 N	107 35 E
Charlotte Bank	142	11 45 S	173 15 E
Chatham Rise	183, 202	43 00 S	180 00
Chaucer Seamount	51	42 57 N	29 05 W
Chinook Trough	43	43 30 N	174 00 W
Chirikof Seamount	29	54 43 N	152 50 W
Chukchi Plain	2	76 35 N	173 20 W
Chukchi Plateau	2	78 00 N	166 00 W
Chukchi Rise	2	76 00 N	167 00 W
Clarion Bank	88	20 48 N	74 00 W
Clarion Fracture Zone	84, 85, 86	17 30 N	131 00 W
Clark Bank	125	08 01 S	139 35 W
Clipperton Fracture Zone	104, 105, 106	08 00 N	128 00 W
Cochinos Banks	88	22 15 N	76 25 W
Cocos Basin	138	08 00 S	95 00 E
Cocos Ridge	108	05 00 N	86 25 W
Colahan Seamount	82	30 55 N	175 55 E
Colombia Basin	88	14 00 N	75 00 W
Colombus Bank	88	22 00 N	75 30 W
Colorado Seamount	70	33 08 N	37 20 W
Columbia Bank	151	20 40 S	31 55 W
Colville-Lau Ridge	143, 163, 182	26 00 S	179 00 W
Combe Bank	143	12 32 S	177 30 W
Commander Basin	42	57 00 N	167 00 E
Concepcion Bank	72	29 55 N	12 45 W
Condor Bank	121	07 30 N	148 07 E
Condor Reef	121	08 06 N	147 45 E
Conway Reef	162	21 45 S	174 37 E
Coral, Bancos de [banks]	88	15 53 N	83 45 W
Cormoran Reef	120	07 47 N	134 30 E
Corona Bank	159	12 25 S	118 39 E
Cortes Bank	66	32 30 N	119 15 W
Cowie Seamount	29	54 10 N	149 30 W
Crest Seamount	66	24 30 N	117 01 W
Crozet Basin	176, 196	38 00 S	64 00 E
Crozet Plateau	195	45 30 S	46 00 E
Cruiser Tablemount	71	32 18 N	27 40 W
Dacia Bank	72	31 08 N	13 40 W
Danas Banke [bank]	11	62 45 N	51 10 W
D'Arguin, Banc [bank]	92	20 10 N	16 45 W
D'Artagnan Sh[oal]	159	13 15 S	120 38 E
Davidson Seamount	66	35 50 N	122 40 W
Davie Seamount	194	36 33 S	23 35 E
Davis Bank	151	20 35 S	34 45 W
Denson Seamount	29	54 10 N	137 30 W
Derickson Seamount	28	52 47 N	161 05 W
Der'ugina Gap	41	53 00 N	146 00 E
Derwent Hunter Mount	181	30 55 S	156 15 E
Diamantina Deep	178	34 58 S	102 35 E
Diamantina Fracture Zone	178, 198, 199	37 50 S	110 00 E
Diamantina Trench	178	35 05 S	102 50 E
Dickins Seamount	29	54 35 N	136 55 W
Dido Bank	99	16 48 N	113 00 E
Discovery Seamount	193	42 00 S	01 10 E
Djems Bank	119	03 55 N	112 20 E
Dogger Bank	35	54 25 N	02 40 E
Dupont Shoal	136	04 12 S	54 25 E
Durgin Seamount	29	55 45 N	141 45 W
Earl Dalhousie Bank	121	08 08 N	144 55 E
East Caroline Basin	121	04 00 N	149 00 E
Eastern Pacific Rise	126, 146, 166, 186, 205	31 00 S	111 00 W

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
East Indian Ridge, see Ninety East Ridge			
East Mariana Basin	101	18 00 N	154 00 E
Eauripik Rise	120	03 30 N	141 45 E
Ebeling Bank	118	00 27 N	107 22 E
Ebrill, Récif [reef]	145	22 40 S	133 33 W
Eickelberg Seamount	29	48 30 N	133 10 W
Elikalpeni Bank	117	11 10 N	73 50 E
Emerald Bank	49	43 10 N	63 15 W
Emperor Seamount Chain	42, 62, 82	41 00 N	170 30 E
Erben Tablemount	65	32 52 N	132 28 W
Ernest Legouvé Reef	164	35 13 S	150 42W
Esmeralda Bank	101	14 57 N	145 12 E
Evans Shoal	140	09 50 S	129 33 E
Fabert Bank	146	24 06 S	158 32 W
Faeroe Bank	12	61 00 N	09 00 W
Faeroe Plateau	34	55 40 N	16 15 W
Fairweather Ground	29	58 30 N	139 00 W
Faraday Seamount Group	34	49 50 N	28 20 W
Faris Seamount	29	54 28 N	147 15 W
Farne Deep	35	55 30 N	00 40 W
Fieberling Seamount	65	32 20 N	127 46 W
Field Bank	143	12 18 S	174 45 W
Filippo Reef	124	05 30 S	151 48 W
Fiskenæs Banke [bank]	11	63 20 N	52 10 W
Flemish Cap [bank]	50	47 00 N	44 50 W
Fletcher Plain	1	87 00 N	164 00 W
Flinders Bank	156	20 37 S	57 08 E
Flinders Shoal	140	09 54 S	129 20 E
Formigas Bank	88	18 30 N	75 45 W
Forrest Reef	142	10 15 S	165 45 E
Fortune Bank	136	07 15 S	56 57 E
Foss Bank	143	14 28 S	176 00 W
Four Ladies Bank	225	67 35 S	77 40 E
Fram Bank	224	67 15 S	70 00 E
Franc Victorija Trench	5	80 00 N	42 00 E
Fredrikshåbs Banke [bank]	11	62 15 N	50 50 W
French Frigate Shoals	83	23 50 N	166 15 W
Friendship Shoal	119	05 58 N	112 34 E
Fyllas Banke [bank]	11	63 55 N	52 40 W
Gagarin Seamount	104	01 20 N	154 10 W
Gakkel Ridge	1, 6	86 00 N	84 00 E
Galathea Depth	120	10 23 N	126 40 E
Galves Bank	101	13 13 N	144 25 E
Gambia Shoal	63	28 10 N	176 35 W
Gamen Reef	121	07 25 N	144 35 E
Ganges Bank	136	07 20 S	71 05 E
Garnet Bank	170	33 02 S	49 20 W
George Bligh Bank	34	58 50 N	13 50 W
Georges Bank	49	41 30 N	67 00 W
George Seamount	69	34 24 N	60 40 W
Gettysburg Bank	52	36 40 N	11 30 W
Gayser Banc du [reef]	155	12 25 S	46 25 E
Giacomini Seamount	29	56 25 N	146 20 W
Gibbs Seamount	89	16 35 N	63 50 W
Gifford Seamount	188	38 10 S	75 50 W
Gilberte Shoal	136	05 05 S	55 37 E
Gilbert Seamount	29	52 50 N	150 00 W
Gleaner Reef	143	22 50 S	173 55 W
Golden Gate Bank	86	23 04 N	110 18 W
Goldfinch Shoal	142	10 15 S	166 55 E
Goodrich Bank	140	10 44 S	130 18 E
Gorda Banco [bank]	88	15 40 N	82 13 W
Gorda Escarpment	45, 46	40 20 N	126 15 W
Graham Bank	53	37 10 N	13 05 E
Grand Cocal Shoal	142	06 00 S	176 15 E
Grand Newfoundland Banks	50	45 30 N	51 00 W
Grappier Bank	88	18 22 N	76 00 W
Gray Feather Bank	121	08 00 N	148 46 E
Grays Canyon	46	46 10 N	124 52 W
Great Bahama Bank	78, 88	24 10 N	78 30 W

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Great Chagos Bank	136. 137	06 10 S	72 00 E
Great Meteor Tablemount	71	29 50 N	28 22 W
Great Pearl Bank	75. 76	25 20 N	53 30 E
Great Sole Bank	35	49 45 N	10 00 W
Greenland Basin	4, 5	74 30 N	00 00
Greenland Iceland Ridge	12	67 00 N	26 00 W
Greig Bank	139	01 04 S	108 28 E
Grenada Trough	89	13 35 N	62 00 W
Grenouille, Banc de la [bank]	155	15 40 S	44 35 E
Groll Bank	151	14 25 S	32 25 W
Guardian Bank	108	09 25 N	87 30 W
Guatemala Basin	87, 107	11 30 N	96 00 W
Guiana Basin	110	08 30 N	47 00 W
Guide Seamount	46	36 55 N	123 20 W
Guinea Basin	112. 132	00 00	06 00 W
Guinea Ridge	132. 133	04 20 S	03 00 W
Gully. The [canyon]	49	44 00 N	59 00 W
Gunnerus Bank	223	67 00 S	32 20 E
Haeckle Deep	168	34 20 S	73 28 W
Hallie Jackson Bank	142	09 55 S	166 37 E
Hancock Seamount	82	30 25 N	178 10 E
Harans Reef	143	21 32 S	168 55 W
Hazel Holme Bank	162	12 45 S	174 00 E
Heceta Bank	46	44 06 N	124 30 W
Heckford Bank	118	10 20 N	97 13 E
Helene Shoal	121	05 32 N	149 08 E
Helen Reef	120	02 53 N	131 48 E
Helen Seamount	146	14 10 N	114 25 W
Henderson Seamount	66	25 20 N	119 27 W
Hera Bank	143	12 10 S	179 15 W
Herdman Seamount	193	45 24 S	00 30 E
Hermes Bank	136	04 33 S	54 20 E
Hess Tablemount	83	17 50 N	173 15 W
Hikurangi Trench	202	41 00 S	178 00 E
Hitchfield Bank	121	07 44 N	149 40 E
Hoburg Bank	36	56 44 N	18 35 E
Hodgkins Ridge	29	53 20 N	136 30 W
Holothuria Banks	159	13 20 S	125 40 E
Home Seamount	143	12 55 S	175 37 W
Hook Ridge	29	49 48 N	144 00 W
Horizon Tablemount	83	19 20 N	168 50 W
Hotspur Bank	150, 151	17 55 S	35 55 W
Hudson Canyon	48	39 40 N	72 40 W
Hunter Bank	120	10 00 N	138 15 E
Hunter Ridge	162	21 50 S	175 00 E
Hurricane Flats	88	23 30 N	78 28 W
Hydrographer Canyon	49	40 00 N	68 50 W
Hydrographers Valley	1	87 00 N	60 00 E
Ianthe Shoal	121	05 55 N	145 20 E
Iberian Basin	51, 52	41 00 N	15 30 W
Iceland-Faeroe Ridge	12	63 30 N	10 00 W
Ingleses, Bancos [banks]	87	21 48 N	91 55 W
Instituta Okeanologii Height	41	52 05 N	149 30 E
Isakov Seamount	81	33 40 N	151 20 E
Iselin Bank	218	70 43 S	178 10 W
Izu-Ogasawara [Bonin] Trench	80	30 00 N	142 30 E
Japan Trench	60, 61, 80	37 30 N	144 00 E
Jaseur Bank	150, 151	20 25 S	35 50 W
Jasper Seamount	66	30 30 N	122 50 W
Java Trench, see Sunda [Java] Trench			
Jermak Plateau	5	81 00 N	06 00 E
Jimmu Seamount	62	46 00 N	168 55 E
Jingu Seamount	62	38 50 N	171 40 E
Jones Bank	35	49 50 N	08 00 W
Josephine Bank	52	36 50 N	14 00 W
Kanmu Seamount	82	31 05 N	177 45 E
Kapingamarangi Rise	121, 141	00 00	156 30 E
Kapitan Spieß Seamount	210	54 45 S	00 10 E
Karin Seamount	83	18 00 N	168 50 W
Kaševarov Bank	41	55 35 N	146 00 E

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Kejpel Bank	181	25 12 S	159 35 E
Kelso Bank	181	24 15 S	159 25 E
Kelvin Seamount	49	38 50 N	64 00 W
Kerguelen Ridge	196, 213, 225	54 00 S	75 00 E
Kermadec Trench	163, 183	31 00 S	176 50 W
Kermit Roosevelt Seamount	44	39 40 N	145 55 W
Kinmei Seamount	82	34 30 N	171 40 E
Klinte Bank	36	57 28 N	19 40 E
Knipovič Ridge	5	77 00 N	06 00 E
Kodiak Seamount	29	56 47 N	149 20 W
Kosciuszko Bank	142	10 28 S	179 35 E
Kossol Reef	120	07 54 N	134 44 E
Krümmel Trench	148, 149	19 00 S	72 00 W
Kurchatov Seamount	136	05 26 S	68 34 E
Kuril Basin	41, 61	47 20 N	149 00 E
Kuril-Kamchatka Trench	42, 61	47 00 N	155 00 E
Kyūshū-Palau Ridge	80, 100, 120	20 00 N	136 20 E
Kyūshū Trench	80	32 00 N	134 30 E
Labadie Bank	35	50 35 N	08 15 W
Labrador Basin	33	55 30 N	47 00 W
Lady Elgin Bank	121	06 18 N	149 28 E
La Have Bank	49	43 12 N	64 00 W
La Junon Bank	136	05 14 S	57 02 E
Lancester Reef see Neilson [Lancaster] Reef			
Landsortsdjupet [deep]	36	58 43 N	18 30 E
Lawson Bank	125	08 43 S	140 45 W
Learmonth Bank	29	54 30 N	133 05 W
Le Constant Bank	136	06 15 S	56 20 E
Lena Seamount	212	53 00 S	44 25 E
Lena Trough	4	80 45 N	02 20 W
Leven, Banc du [bank]	155	12 30 S	47 45 E
Lille Hellefiskebanke [bank]	11	64 55 N	53 40 W
Lilly Bank	68	27 20 N	78 45 W
Litke Gap	5	82 45 N	21 00 E
Little Bahama Bank	68	26 40 N	78 00 W
Little Halibut Bank	35	58 20 N	00 40 W
Lomonosov Ridge	1, 7	85 00 N	150 00 E
Long Forties [bank]	35	57 15 N	00 30 W
Lord Howe Rise	161, 181, 182, 202	30 00 S	162 55 E
Los Roques Trench	89	12 30 N	67 35 W
Louisa Bank	142	11 44 S	175 56 E
Lugmes Ridge	139, 140	04 35 S	126 40 E
Lusitania Bank	86	23 35 N	111 42 W
Lynedoch Bank	140	10 02 S	130 48 E
Macaw Bank	123	10 40 S	179 15 W
Macclesfield Bank	99	15 50 N	114 20 E
Macquarie Ridge	217	54 00 S	159 00 E
Madagascar Basin	175, 176	27 00 S	53 00 E
Madagascar Ridge	175	31 00 S	45 00 E
Madingley Rise	136	04 25 S	61 00 E
Magallanes Bank	88	22 00 N	76 08 W
Makarov Basin	1	88 00 N	144 00 W
Makarov Seamount	81	29 30 N	153 30 E
Mallory Seamount	194	36 55 S	22 17 E
Manila Reef	121	06 55 N	149 13 E
Marcus-Necker Seamounts	81, 83, 101, 102	21 00 N	160 00 E
Mariana Trench	101, 120, 121	15 00 N	147 30 E
Maria Theresa Reef	184	37 00 S	151 15 W
Marie Louise Bank	119	11 50 N	116 50 E
Marie Shoal	140	10 53 S	130 08 E
Maro Reef	63	25 25 N	170 35 W
Marsala Seamount	71	33 53 N	34 17 W
Marvin Gap	1	87 40 N	96 00 W
Mascarene Basin	155, 156	16 00 S	55 00 E
Mascarene Ridge	136, 156	12 00 S	61 30 E
Mathematician Seamount Range	86	15 40 N	110 55 W
Matsuye Bank	121	08 01 N	148 01 E
Maud Bank	223	65 00 S	02 20 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Maud Seamount	223	65 20 S	02 30 E
Mauritius Fracture Zone	156	21 40 S	57 15 E
McCall Seamount	84	18 45 N	157 05 W
McLaughlin Bank	121	09 10 N	148 10 E
Melanesia Basin	122, 142	00 00	167 00 E
Mellish Seamount	82	34 00 N	178 20 E
Mendelejev Ridge	1	85 20 N	132 00 W
Mendocino Escarpment	44, 45	40 15 N	146 30 W
Mernoo Bank	202	43 15 S	175 15 E
Meteor Seamount	193	47 55 S	09 00 E
Meurthe, Roches de la [reef]	195	46 18 S	50 30 E
Mid-Atlantic Ridge, Southern, see South Atlantic Ridge			
Middle Ground	88	22 50 N	76 20 W
Middle Kara Rise	6	79 00 N	80 00 E
Middle Reef	42	52 00 N	176 00 E
Mid-Ocean Canyon	33, 50	48 30 N	40 50 W
Mid-Pacific Basin	103, 122	07 00 N	179 00 W
Miller Seamount	29	53 30 N	144 20 W
Mill Ridge	201, 216	47 30 S	148 00 E
Milne Edwards Trench	128	10 00 S	79 40 W
Milwaukee Bank	82	32 15 N	172 15 E
Misaine Bank	49	47 17 N	59 10 W
Misteriosa Bank	88	18 50 N	83 50 W
Moçambique Terrace	174	32 30 S	32 00 E
Mogami Bank	121	08 30 N	148 45 E
Mohns Ridge	4, 5, 12	72 30 N	01 00 E
Montague Bank	150	20 22 S	36 40 W
Moonless Seamount Range	65	30 25 N	139 00 W
Morgan Bank	86	23 23 N	111 05 W
Morton Bank	142	11 45 S	176 17 E
Morton Seamount	29	50 20 N	142 40 W
Mouchoir Bank	89	21 00 N	70 40 W
Mozambique Basin	174, 175, 195	33 30 S	38 00 E
Muir Seamount	69	33 35 N	62 30 W
Murray Escarpment	64, 65	31 15 N	145 30 W
Murray Ridge	96	20 00 N	61 00 E
Murray Seamount	29	53 48 N	148 25 W
Nansei [Ryūkyū] Trench	80, 100	25 20 N	128 30 E
Nansen Basin	1, 6	84 40 N	74 00 E
Nansen Basin	4, 5	83 00 N	00 00
Nansen Rise	4, 5	81 20 N	00 00
Nasca Ridge	148	20 00 S	80 30 W
Nashville Seamount	69	34 34 N	57 00 W
Natal Bank	195	46 48 S	38 00 E
Natal Seamount	194	37 23 S	22 12 E
Navidad Bank	89	20 00 N	68 50 W
Nazareth Bank	156	14 30 S	60 45 E
Necker Ridge	83	21 40 N	168 00 W
Nee Reef	88	14 33 N	82 33 W
Neilson [Lancaster] Reef	164	27 01 S	146 02 W
Nelson, Banco [bank]	88	19 55 N	74 15 W
Nero Bank	63	28 00 N	178 00 W
Nero Depth	101	13 00 N	146 10 E
Neva Bank	63	26 00 N	174 00 W
New Britain Trench	141	06 40 S	151 00 E
New Caledonia Basin	162, 182	28 30 S	166 15 E
Newfoundland Basin	50	41 30 N	43 00 W
New Guinea Trench	120, 140	00 10 N	135 40 E
New Hebrides Trench	162	20 35 S	168 35 E
New Zealand Plateau	217	50 45 S	172 00 E
Ninety East Ridge [East Indian Ridge]	117, 118, 137, 157, 177	12 00 S	88 30 E
Nintoku Seamount	62	40 50 N	171 00 E
Nolso Bank	12	62 05 N	04 25 W
Norfolk Canyon	48	37 05 N	74 30 W
Norfolk Ridge	182	30 00 S	168 00 E
North American Basin	69, 70	31 00 N	63 00 W
Northampton Banks	63	25 20 N	172 04 W
North Atlantic Ridge [Northern Atlantic Ridge]	34, 51, 70, 71, 90, 110, 111	26 00 N	45 40 W

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
North Australian Basin	159	14 00 S	116 00 E
Northern Atlantic Ridge, see North Atlantic Ridge			
Northern Holiday Seamount, see Scripps Seamount			
North Fiji Basin	162	17 00 S	173 00 E
North Hawaiian Seamount Range	63, 64	31 30 N	160 00 W
North Luconia Shoals	119	05 40 N	112 30 E
Northwind Ridge	2	76 45 N	156 00 W
Norwegian Basin	12	67 00 N	02 00 W
Novaja Zeml'a, Basin of	5, 6, 14	73 20 N	59 00 E
Nuevo, Banco [bank]	87	20 32 N	91 48 W
Nymphe Bank	35	51 25 N	07 10 W
Ob Bank	4	80 50 N	10 00 W
Obruchev Rise	42	52 00 N	166 00 E
Ob' Seamount	212	52 15 S	41 25 E
Ob' Trench	178	32 50 S	98 30 E
Ojin Seamount	62	38 20 N	170 10 E
Oman Basin	96	20 00 N	60 00 E
Ontong Java Rise	141	05 30 S	160 00 E
Oraitilipu Bank	121	08 08 N	147 15 E
Oriente Deep	88	19 36 N	76 50 W
Ormsby Bank	120	00 40 N	129 58 E
Orne Seamount	146	27 40 S	157 45 W
Outer Bailey Bank	12	60 25 N	12 25 W
Owen Shoal	119	08 09 N	111 58 E
Pactolus Bank	207	56 40 S	74 15 W
Pamplona Searidge	29	59 35 N	142 30 W
Papanin Seamount	62	46 10 N	169 35 E
Parker Seamount	29	52 35 N	151 15 W
Parry Shoal	140	11 13 S	129 46 E
Pasco Bank	143	13 05 S	174 25 W
Pathfinder Reef	100	16 31 N	143 08 E
Pathfinder Seamount	29	50 50 N	143 10 W
Patton Seamount	29	54 25 N	150 20 W
Patton Seamount Group	29	54 20 N	149 00 W
Paul Seamount	83	23 45 N	172 35 W
Pavlovskiy Seamount	42	50 34 N	162 05 E
Pearl and Hermes Reef	63	27 55 N	175 50 W
Pedro Bank	88	17 05 N	78 35 W
Penguin Bank	142	11 26 S	175 30 E
Pennell Bank	228	74 30 S	179 59 E
Pensacola Seamount	84	18 15 N	157 18 W
Pera, Banco [bank]	87	20 45 N	91 48 W
Persej Seamount	5	78 00 N	35 00 E
Peru-Chile Trench	128, 148, 149, 168, 169	19 00 S	72 00 W
Petrel Bank	28, 42	52 10 N	180 00
Philippine Basin	100	17 00 N	130 00 E
Philippine Trench	99, 100, 120	09 15 N	127 00 E
Pioneer Bank	63	26 00 N	173 26 W
Pioneer Escarpment	44, 45	38 20 N	144 30 W
Pioneer Seamount	46	37 26 N	123 23 W
Pitt Bank	136	07 07 S	71 22 E
Plato Seamount	71	33 15 N	28 55 W
Platt Bank	49	43 05 N	69 37 W
Poe Bank	118	10 00 N	96 30 E
Porcupine Seamount	34	53 25 N	13 50 W
Portland Reef	145	23 40 S	134 23 W
Portlock Bank	29	58 22 N	150 15 W
Poydenot Shoal	136	09 48 S	64 22 E
Pratea Seamount	194	36 47 S	18 13 E
Pratt Seamount	29	56 15 N	142 30 W
President Thiers Reef	164	24 39 S	145 51 W
Princesse Alice Bank	51	38 00 N	29 15 W
Puerto Rico Trench	89	19 50 N	65 00 W
Queensland Plateau	161	17 00 S	150 00 E
Quinn Seamount	29	56 15 N	145 15 W
Raita Bank	63	25 30 N	169 15 W
Ramapo Bank	81	27 15 N	145 15 E
Ranger Bank	66	28 30 N	115 50 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Reed Bank	119	11 27 N	116 54 E
Rehoboth Seamount	49	38 55 N	59 52 W
Rene Reef	102	16 40 N	179 00 E
Rennell Rise	141	11 10 S	158 20 E
Reykjanes Ridge	12, 34	60 00 N	29 00 W
Rhine Bank	208	55 30 S	53 20 W
Richards Deep	169	25 05 S	71 26 W
Richards Trench	149, 169	24 30 S	71 25 W
Rifleman Bank	119	07 45 N	111 38 E
Rio Grande Plateau	170, 171	30 45 S	35 30 W
Rio Grande Trench	170	30 30 S	39 00 W
Rional Reef	102	17 15 N	177 20 E
Robbie Bank	123	11 00 S	176 50 W
Rochambeau Bank	143	15 07 S	176 38 E
Rockall Bank	34	57 15 N	14 00 W
Rockaway Seamount	70	35 50 N	52 30 W
Rodgers Bank	150	16 50 S	36 55 W
Rodriguez Fracture Zone	156	20 30 S	67 20 E
Romanche Trench	131, 132	00 10 S	18 15 W
Rønne Bank	36	54 52 N	14 25 E
Rosa Bank	66	26 16 N	114 50 W
Rosalind Bank	88	16 26 N	80 33 W
Rosario Bank	88	18 30 N	84 05 W
Rosemary Bank	35	59 10 N	10 15 W
Roseway Bank	49	43 10 N	64 45 W
Rotumah Shoal	143	13 23 S	179 20 W
Royal Caharlotte, Bank	150	16 00 S	38 20 W
Royalist Bank	118	08 11 N	105 11 E
Ryūkyū Trench, see Nansei [Ryūkyū] Trench			
Saba Bank	89	17 30 N	63 30 W
Sable Island	49	43 48 N	60 20 W
Sahul Bank	139	11 15 S	125 20 E
Saint Anna Trench	6	80 00 N	70 00 E
Saint-Pierre Bank	49	46 20 N	56 30 W
Saint Rogatien Bank	63	24 20 N	167 08 W
Sala y Gomez Ridge	167	25 00 S	97 00 W
Salmedina, Bancos [banks]	88	16 08 N	87 00 W
Salmon Bank	63	26 50 N	176 25 W
Sando Bank	12	61 45 N	05 00 W
San Juan Seamount	66	33 05 N	120 55 W
San Pablo Seamount	49	38 55 N	60 30 W
Santa Lucia Seamount	66	35 02 N	121 45 W
Santa Rosa Reef	101	12 50 N	144 25 E
S[ão] Lazaro, Banco de [bank]	155	12 10 S	41 30 E
Sars Seamount	207	59 35 S	69 05 W
Saya de Malha Bank	136	10 40 S	61 10 E
Scawfell Bank	118	07 25 N	107 00 E
Scerbakov Seamount	138	10 50 S	104 45 E
Schmidt Ott Seamount	193	39 00 S	13 45 W
Schoppe Ridge	29	51 10 N	139 30 W
Scotia Ridge	208, 209, 221, 222	54 40 S	35 00 W
Scott Island Bank	218	67 45 S	179 20 W
Scott Seamount	29	50 12 N	142 00 W
Scripps Seamount [Northern Holiday Seamount]	64	29 35 N	147 10 W
Seahorse Shoal	119	05 32 N	112 33 E
Sedov Gap	1	87 00 N	41 00 E
Sedov Valley	1	84 40 N	08 00 E
Seine Bank	72	33 42 N	14 20 W
Serranilla, Banco de [bank]	88	15 55 N	79 53 W
Shackleton Seamount	194	37 00 S	22 47 E
Shah 'Alam [bank]	75	26 25 N	52 30 E
Shatsky Rise	61, 62, 81	36 00 N	161 30 E
Sherard Osborn Shoal	136	04 43 S	54 33 E
Shikoku Basin	80	28 00 N	137 00
Shin Matsuye Bank	121	07 55 N	148 10 E
Shirshov Ridge	42	57 00 N	170 30 E
Sierra Leone Basin	111, 112	04 30 S	16 00 W
Sierra Leone Ridge	111	08 20 N	23 10 W
Silver Bank	89	20 30 N	69 45 W

Names	*Sheet No*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Sirius Seamount	28	52 00 N	160 50 W
Sixtymile Bank	66	32 05 N	118 15 W
Skerki Bank	53	37 50 N	10 35 E
Slupska Bank	36	54 57 N	16 35 E
Södra Midsjö Bank	36	55 40 N	17 25 E
Somali Basin	115, 116, 135, 136	00 00	54 00
Sophie Kristensen Seamount	184	41 25 S	148 25 W
Soudan Bank	156	18 35 S	58 40 E
South Atlantic Ridge [Southern Mid-Atlantic Ridge]	132, 152, 172, 192, 210	28 00 S	13 30 W
South Australian Basin	199, 200	38 00 S	125 00 E
South Cape Seamount	84	18 32 N	157 25 W
South-Eastern Pacific Basin [Peruvian Basin]	147, 148	18 00 S	94 00 W
Southeast Newfoundland Ridge	50	40 20 N	47 25 W
Southern Cape Trench	5	76 00 N	17 00 E
Southern Jan Mayen Ridge	12	68 30 N	08 30 W
Southern Mid-Atlantic Ridge, see South Atlantic Ridge			
South Fiji Basin	162, 182	27 00 S	176 00 E
South Georgia Rise	209	51 40 S	32 00 W
South Luconia Shoals	119	05 04 N	112 38 E
South Pacific Rise	204, 205, 218, 227	63 00 S	160 00 W
South Sandwich Trench	209, 222	58 30 S	23 50 W
Speakers Bank	137	04 58 S	72 22 E
Spitsbergen Bank	5	75 30 N	21 00 E
Stiffle Bank	75	26 25 N	53 08 E
Stingray Shoal	100	20 30 N	142 22 E
Stirni Seamount	29	49 08 N	132 18 W
Stocsa Bank	151	12 20 S	32 00 W
Stonewall Bank	46	44 30 N	124 40 W
Store Hellefiskebanke [bank]	11	67 20 N	55 00 W
Strakhov Seamount	102	12 15 N	173 10 E
Strathmore Shoal	142	11 10 S	170 40 E
"S-21" Depth	88	19 35 N	76 51 W
Submariners Basin	7	81 30 N	166 00 E
Suiko Seamount	62	44 45 N	170 25 E
Sulphur Bank	150	16 55 S	37 35 W
Sunda [Java] Trench	118, 138, 139	07 00 S	102 00 E
Supply Reef	101	20 15 N	145 06 E
Surveyor Seamount	29	55 55 N	144 20 W
Swan Shoal	136	03 58 S	54 35 E
Swordfish Seamount	84	18 22 N	158 25 W
Sydero Bank	12	61 30 N	05 20 W
Sylvania Tablemount	102	12 12 N	166 15 E
Sylvia Bank	150	20 05 S	37 30 W
Tahoma Reef	42	51 45 N	175 45 E
Taiwan Fracture Zone	100	16 20 N	130 00 E
Talbot Bank	53	37 30 N	11 40 E
Tanner Bank	66	32 30 N	119 10 W
Tarang Bank	121	08 23 N	145 15 E
Tarang Reef	121	07 45 N	147 36 E
Tasman Basin	201, 202	44 00 S	158 00 E
Taupo Mount	181	33 10 S	156 05 E
Taviuni Bank	143	12 10 S	174 37 W
Tehuantepec Ridge	87	13 30 N	96 30 W
Tempter Bank	119	11 05 N	117 25 E
Tenchi Seamount	42	49 00 N	169 10 E
Thunder Knoll Bank	88	16 28 N	81 25 W
Timor Trough	139, 140	09 40 S	126 40 E
Tinro Gap	41	56 30 N	153 00 E
Titov Seamount	123	00 23 S	176 10 W
Tobago Trough	89	12 40 N	60 30 W
Tonga Trench	143, 163	19 30 S	173 40 W
Tongue of the Ocean [deep]	68, 88	24 15 N	77 20 W
Topaze Bank	136	04 34 S	56 24 E
Trident Shoal	119	11 27 N	114 40 E
Troubadour Shoal	140	09 45 S	128 25 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Tucker Seamount	29	49 50 N	133 42 W
Turpie Bank	142	11 25 S	175 45 E
Tuscarora Bank	123	11 48 S	178 15 W
Ulloa Reef	121	07 20 N	144 12 E
Union Seamount	29	49 38 N	132 30 W
Uranie Bank	121	07 02 N	149 15 E
Valdivia Seamount	173	25 35 S	05 50 E
Veatch Canyon	49	39 45 N	69 25 W
Velasco Reef	120	08 20 N	134 37 E
Vema Deep	89	18 40 N	68 22 W
Vema Seamount	173	31 40 S	08 15 E
Vema Trench	136	09 00 S	67 20 E
Venezuelan Basin	89	15 15 N	68 00 W
Vesterisgrunnen [seamount]	4	73 32 N	09 10 W
Victoria Bank	150	20 42 S	37 40 W
Victory Bank	137	05 37 S	72 14 E
"Vima" 1958 [depth]	209	56 28 S	24 22 W
Vit'az' Rise	60	44 10 N	138 10 E
Vityaz Deep	120	11 20 N	142 12 E
Vityaz Deep	143	23 17 S	174 42 W
Vityaz Depth	137	05 45 S	73 46 E
Vityaz Ridge	41, 61	46 40 N	153 10 E
Vityaz Seamount	83	13 30 N	173 25 W
Vityaz Trench	136	05 45 S	68 30 E
Vityaz Trench	142	09 05 S	168 30 E
Volcano Trench	80, 100, 101	23 00 N	145 00 E
Voronin Trench	6	80 00 N	86 00 E
Wachusett Reef	164	32 20 S	151 05 W
Walvis Ridge	153, 173	28 00 S	04 00 E
Wanganella Bank	182	32 30 S	167 30 E
Washington Canyon	48	38 22 N	74 18 W
Waterwitch Bank	143	12 32 S	176 40 W
Welker Seamount	29	55 10 N	140 20 W
West Australian Basin	158	18 00 S	99 00 E
West Caroline Basin	120	03 30 N	137 00 E
West Chile Rise	187, 188	42 00 S	88 00 W
Western Jan Mayen Ridge	12	71 20 N	14 00 W
Western Trench	5	73 30 N	23 00 E
West European Basin	34, 51, 52	45 30 N	16 00 W
West Indian Ridge	176, 195	38 30 S	50 00 E
West Mariana Basin	100	15 00 N	139 00 E
West Melanesia Trench	140, 141	01 20 S	148 00 E
Wight Bank	136	07 28 S	71 30 E
Wilder Seamount	103	08 15 N	173 25 W
Wilmington Canyon	48	38 21 N	73 31 W
Winslow Reef	123	01 36 S	174 57 W
Wüst Seamount	172	33 45 S	03 40 W
Wyandot Seamount	193	37 22 S	15 20 E
Yakutat Seamount	70	35 20 N	48 12 W
Yamato Rise	60	39 30 N	134 40 E
Yap Trench	120	09 00 N	138 10 E
Yermark Rise	4	81 45 N	00 00
Yucatán Basin	88	20 00 N	84 20 W
Yuryaku Seamount	82	33 20 N	171 35 E
Yusun Shoal	119	10 18 N	109 00 E
Zeelandia Bank	101	16 53 N	145 45 E
Zohhoiiyoru Bank	120	09 50 N	139 55 E
Zoroaster Shoal	136	05 00 S	56 43 E
Zubov Seamount	101	15 50 N	160 10 E

REPORT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA ON PROGRAMMES FOR NAMING EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURES*

Résumé

En 1974, le United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) a créé un Comité consultatif des noms des détails extra-terrestres (ACEF) chargé d'approuver les noms des détails extra-terrestres destinés à être utilisés dans les cartes et autres documents officiels des Etats-Unis. A la différence des autres comités consultatifs du BGN, l'ACEF ne choisit pas en toute indépendance les noms qui seront appliqués aux détails; il utilise à cet effet les éléments pertinents qui lui sont fournis par l'Union astronomique internationale (UAI). Des textes décrivant les objectifs généraux, la portée, les principes et les politiques de l'ACEF ont été joints au document.

Tout en se servant de l'UAI pour le choix des noms des détails, l'ACEF exerce d'autres fonctions: par exemple, il joue aux Etats-Unis le rôle de centre d'échange de renseignements concernant les noms des détails extra-terrestres; il répond aux demandes de renseignements présentées par les experts et le public au sujet de ces noms, et il met au point et tient des fichiers où sont classées les données de nomenclature nécessaires à l'exercice de ses fonctions. Son personnel élabore un procédé permettant de consigner les renseignements concernant ces noms sous une forme exploitable par ordinateur; le document contient un exemple de feuille de données relatives aux détails extra-terrestres que le personnel a l'intention d'utiliser.

Le Comité accepte les noms approuvés par l'UAI, et il approuve également les termes génériques anglais correspondant aux termes latins autorisés par l'UAI. Le but est de permettre aux utilisateurs officiels et au public des Etats-Unis d'employer, s'ils le désirent, des termes anglais en association avec les noms. Le Comité compile actuellement une liste de termes et de leur définition en anglais. Comme dans le cas des autres comités consultatifs du BGN, les membres de l'ACEF sont des experts.

Resumen

En 1974, la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos creó el Comité Asesor sobre Nombres de Accidentes Topográficos Extraterrestres a fin de que se encargara de aprobar nombres de accidentes topográficos extraterrestres para su aplicación en mapas, cartas y otros documentos oficiales de los Estados Unidos. En contraste con la función de otros comités asesores de la Junta, este Comité Asesor no selecciona nombres independientemente para aplicarlos a accidentes concretos, sino que más bien se basa en elementos adecuados de la Unión Astronómica Internacional para esta actividad. Se adjuntan a este documento descripciones de la finalidad general, el alcance, los principios y la política del Comité Asesor.

Además de la selección de nombres de accidentes, para la que se basa en la Unión Astronómica Internacional, el Comité Asesor también realiza otras funciones, tales como la de servir de centro para el intercambio de información en los Estados Unidos sobre nombres de accidentes extraterrestres, responder a preguntas de expertos y del público en general sobre nombres y establecer y mantener archivos de datos sobre nomenclatura necesarios para sus funciones. El personal del Comité Asesor está preparando actualmente materiales destinados a registrar información sobre nombres en un formato adecuado para su uso en relación con la elaboración automática de datos; en el documento adjunto se presenta una muestra de una hoja de datos sobre nombres extraterrestres que el personal proyecta utilizar.

Aunque el Comité aceptará nombres aprobados por la Unión Astronómica Internacional, aprobará nombres genéricos en inglés además de los términos en latín autorizados por la Unión. Esto tiene por objeto asegurar que los usuarios oficiales y el público en general de los Estados Unidos puedan emplear, si lo desean, términos en inglés asociados con los nombres. El Comité está compilando ahora una lista de términos y definiciones pertinentes en inglés. Al igual que en otros comités asesores de la Junta de Nombres Geográficos, los miembros son expertos en el tema.

*

* *

In 1974 the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) added to its responsibilities that of standardizing names of extraterrestrial features. This new responsibility will be carried out by the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names (ACEF). It is one of three BGN advisory committees, and has a membership of persons from various United States agencies who have expert knowledge about national and international programmes to explore and to map surfaces of extraterrestrial bodies.

The standardizing function of ACEF, in contrast to that of other BGN advisory committees, does not include the independent selection of new names for features, for the committee recognizes the role of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) for assigning names. Instead, ACEF was established as a vehicle to expedite the process of IAU action in selecting names, on the one hand, and the acquisition of names information by United States mapping agencies, on the other. In addition, there was a general feeling among BGN authorities that names appearing on American maps of planets should be approved by the duly constituted agency for geographic names in the United States. This opinion was based on the experience that the internal IAU mechanism for selecting names was not fast enough to satisfy requirements for names on maps being produced in response to new space programmes.

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 33.

As a result of the initial ACEF meetings, which were dedicated to setting forth principles, policies and procedures for processing names and to establishing relationships with IAU, the Committee approved a set of guidelines describing its name, purpose, scope, principles and policy. These guidelines are shown in annex I. With time, the Committee may change certain elements of the guidelines to meet developing conditions.

As a preface to describing the functions of BGN in regard to extraterrestrial names, the IAU mechanism should be defined briefly. In an attempt to normalize naming procedures, IAU developed a system for selecting names for the planets. (It should be stated that IAU and BGN are concerned only with names of features on the surfaces of the planets of the solar system. Stars, comets, asteroids and other celestial phenomena are excluded from their purview.) This system, which is described in detail in the literature elsewhere, sets up categories of names for the individual planets. Within each planet, distinctions are made between major and minor features. As currently established, the naming of features comes under the responsibility of the IAU Working Group on Planetary Systems Nomenclature, chaired by Dr. Peter Millman of Canada. Within the working group are task forces for the Moon, Mars, Venus, Mercury and the "outer planetary system". Each task force has responsibility for creating a bank of names, according to the principles approved by IAU, and for selecting names from the bank for application to a feature as required. The internal process for IAU to approve such names has often taken considerable time, since each name had to be endorsed first by the Working Group on Planetary Systems Nomenclature and later by the IAU Executive Committee. Currently, the procedure is being streamlined. Names selected by the task forces can be applied provisionally, with full approval being virtually guaranteed.

Since ACEF has members representing the United States agencies engaged in planetary programmes, it is in a good position to know first-hand the requirements for names. When it sees a need to name a feature, the Committee can communicate with the appropriate task force to request a name, or it can independently select a name from the IAU bank of names. Under certain circumstances, it is possible for ACEF to choose a non-IAU name, but regardless of the method of selection, IAU approval would be anticipated. In the meantime, such names would be designated as provisional.

In addition to acting as a channel to expedite IAU decisions about names, ACEF has retained certain independent functions. Although IAU calls for the use of only Latin terminology in nomenclature, ACEF approves English-language equivalents as well as Latin. The Committee foresees that most names used on American maps will carry Latin terms, but it believes it should also provide English translations for those cases where map users may require them. The Committee reasoned that few people outside the scientific community (which IAU publicly states it serves) would understand Latin, and that this situation would lead to the use of English (in the United States). A review of literature published by both official and non-official agencies in the United States shows that English terms are commonly employed. Further, English terms for given Latin terms often differ from publication to publication. In order to provide a standard set of English-language terms for users, the Committee agreed to produce a list of Latin-English terminology, with definitions to clarify why certain terms are used (e. g. why *Lacus* can be translated as "lake" even though no body of water is involved).

Another Committee service is to provide information about extraterrestrial nomenclature to official United States agencies and to the general public, a practice followed by other BGN committees. This service anticipates inquiries from various sources for background information about names, for verification of names and so on. Furnishing appropriate information to persons who may wish to name a feature is also anticipated. Although the system established by IAU largely precludes naming by individuals, with time the Committee sees growing public interest in wanting to name features. In such instances the ACEF could take action as appropriate; where name proposals seemed valid, they would be forwarded to IAU for further action.

To carry out its assignments, ACEF is creating procedures to manage names information. Working in cooperation with agencies producing maps of the planets (the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the United States Geological Survey and the Defense Mapping Agency), ACEF is building a file of names information that is designed for use in conjunction with automatic data processing equipment. Annex II shows a prototype sheet that would carry appropriate data, annex III explains the kinds of data to be entered and annex IV summarizes the IAU rules governing the selection of names for extraterrestrial features. Annex IV might be particularly useful for persons wanting to propose names.

The ACEF is composed of persons from United States agencies who are appointed by the Secretary of the Interior because of their individual expertise in space science or cartography. As of 1 June 1977, the Committee members were:

William E. Brunk, NASA (*Chairman*)
Cyril Barsky, Defense Mapping Agency Topographic Center
Stephen Dwornik, NASA
Farouk El-Baz, Smithsonian Institution
Harold Masursky, USGS

Action by ACEF to sanction names for official American use thus far has included approximately 1,400 names that were approved by IAU and published in various documents. The ACEF research staff, located at the Defense Mapping Agency Topographic Center in Washington, D.C., made necessary revisions to the names to correct typographical errors or other mistakes, such as inconsistent spelling. To ensure accuracy, the staff consulted other sources and the members of ACEF. These names will appear on a new map of the moon at scale 1:5,000,000, which will be called the *Lunar Pictorial Map*. This product shows the two "sides" of the moon, plus

north and south polar projections. An English-language glossary of Latin terms will accompany the map. It is scheduled for release in 1978.

Although ACEF has been developed to meet United States programme requirements, members believe that procedures developed by the Committee can be helpful to other countries active in mapping planetary bodies and to the IAU as well. The United States would be pleased to share its experiences with other nations so that methods of processing extraterrestrial names can be made as uniform as possible and so that the informational needs of users can be served as fully as possible.

Annex I

BGN ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURE NAMES: NAME, PURPOSE, SCOPE, PRINCIPLES AND POLICY

The United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN), conjointly with the Secretary of the Interior, created the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names in December 1974.

1. *Name* The name of this body is the BGN Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names. It can be referred to as ACEF.
2. *Purpose* The Committee shall operate as the vehicle to submit names of features on the surfaces of extraterrestrial bodies for approval by BGN.
3. *Scope* The work of the Committee shall be restricted to nomenclature of surface features that require specific identification on solid bodies of the solar system.
4. *Principles*

   a. Names approved by the International Astronomical Union shall constitute the primary source of nomenclature for BGN purposes.

   b. The Committee shall work closely and exchange information with international, governmental or private groups that have responsibility for or hold an interest in extraterrestrial nomenclature.

   c. A card file of toponymic information shall be created and maintained for each extraterrestrial body.

   d. Information from the card files shall be made available to United States Government agencies and other users on a continuing basis.

   e. Lists of extraterrestrial feature names may be prepared for distribution at intervals specified by the Committee.
5. *Policies*

   a. Names and designations shall be as concise and unambiguous as possible.

   b. Duplication of names on a given extraterrestrial body shall be avoided.

   c. Roman script only shall be used, including all appropriate diacritical marks.

   d. In addition to approving the IAU assigned name, the Committee may approve an English name when there is a Latin generic term.

   e. In addition to the approved IAU name, a name or name element derived from non-Roman script may be romanized by an approved BGN romanization system.

   f. The number of names selected shall be in accord with anticipated requirements.

Annex II

EXTRATERRESTRIAL NAMES DATA SHEET

EX: BODY	H	0	1													
IAU ACCEPTED	H	0	2													
BGN APPROVED	H	0	3													
IAU APPROVED	H	0	4													
DATE APPROVED BY BGN	H	0	5													
DATE APPROVED BY IAU	H	0	6													
DESIGNATION	H	0	7													
DIMENSION	H	0	8	LENGTH	BREADTH	DIAM.	DEPTH/HEIGTH									ACC
REGION NO.	H	0	9													
REGION NAME	H	1	0													
PROVINCE NO.	H	1	1													
PROVINCE NAME	H	1	2													
COORDINATES	H	1	3	DEG.	MIN.	SEC.	N/S	DEG.	MIN.	SEC.	E/W	OR EASTING 360° SYSTEM	DEG.	MIN.	SEC.	
NASA PHOTO NO.	H	1	4													
CONTROL NO.	H	1	5													

Annex II (*continued*)

SEE REFERENCE	⊓	1	6
PREPARED BY	⊓	1	7
PROPOSED NAME	⊓	1	8
NATIONALITY OF PROPOSED NAME	⊓	1	9
BIOGRAPHY OF PERSON NAMED	⊓	2	0
SOURCE	⊓	2	1
ADDRESS	⊓	2	2
ADDRESS			
NATIONALITY OF SOURCE	⊓	2	3

REMARKS	⊓	2	4

Annex III

INFORMATION ABOUT THE BGN EXTRATERRESTRIAL NAMES DATA SHEETS

General

The Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names (ACEF) of the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) has developed the Extraterrestrial Names Data Sheet (ENDS) for various uses related to the processing of names information. Intended for staff use, it is designed principally for recording official BGN information about extraterrestrial names, and can be employed in systems automatically processing data for reference or publishing purposes.

Definitions

ENDS provides space for 24 categories of information. Each category has a heading preceded by the symbol "⊓" and a two-digit number designed for reading by an Optical Character Reader. Definitions of the headings are given below. *Note that the name on line 18 is the designated name for the feature described in the ENDS unless another name is entered under line 16.* In all cases the name on line 18 is the first name to be entered on the ENDS by the researchers.

01 EX. BODY. The extraterrestrial body on which the feature named in item 18 is located.

02 IAU ACCEPTED. No name is entered here unless it has been included in an IAU bank of names which may be drawn upon for assignment to a feature.

03 BGN APPROVED. The name in item 18 has been approved by BGN. Such names may be "IAU Accepted" or "IAU Approved"; an English-language form also may be approved and shown on the second line.

04 IAU APPROVED. A name from the IAU bank of names that is approved by IAU for application to a specific feature.

05 DATE APPROVED BY BGN. Date when BGN approved the name shown in line 03. If a second date is shown, it is the date when an English equivalent was approved.

06 DATE APPROVED BY IAU. Date when IAU approved the name shown in line 04.

07 DESIGNATION. Type of feature to which the name is applied (the designation is in English and is approved by BGN).

08 DIMENSION. Indicates size of feature by kilometres (length and breadth or diameter) or metres (height/depth). Dimensions are given when feasible to determine.

09 REGION NO. The region number as approved by the IAU and as appropriate to a particular extraterrestrial body; the feature named in item 18 is located in this area.

10 REGION NAME. Region name as approved by the IAU and as appropriate to a particular extraterrestrial body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.

11 PROVINCE NO. The IAU-approved province number, as applicable to the particular extraterrestrial body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.

12 PROVINCE NAME. The IAU-approved province name, as applicable to the particular body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.

13 CO-ORDINATES. Co-ordinates of feature given for north/south and east/west systems or for the 360° system.

14 NASA PHOTO NO. Number of best NASA photograph for feature identification purposes.

15 CONTROL NO. Number assigned by ACEF for ENDS control purposes (numbering system not yet developed).

16 SEE REFERENCE. If a name is entered here, the reader should refer to the ENDS carrying that name under line 02 or 03. A name is entered under line 16 only if the name listed, under line 18 is "incorrect" or is not approved by IAU or BGN, or if another name has been approved by IAU and/or BGN for the feature named under line 18.

17 PREPARED BY. Initials of person entering information on ENDS.

18 PROPOSED NAME. The name that was originally proposed is entered here, regardless of whether it has been accepted by IAU or approved by IAU or BGN. The "proposed name" is the first item entered on the ENDS; it will be retained in this line even if it is an "incorrect" name—i.e., one that has been superseded.

19 NATIONALITY OF PROPOSED NAME. If the name com-

memorates a person, his or her nationality is entered here. A two-letter country code is used from United States Department of Commerce FIPS 10-2, *Countries, Dependencies, and Areas of Special Sovereignty*.

20 BIOGRAPHY OF PERSON NAMED. Brief biographic information on the person commemorated

21 SOURCE. The person or organization proposing the name in line 18.

22 ADDRESS. Address of line 21, if known

23 NATIONALITY OF SOURCE. Nationality of proposer (if a person). National coding cited in line 19 is used.

24 REMARKS. Additional data considered valuable to users of the file concerning the proposed name in 18. These may include: charts that show feature named; documentary sources of IAU approval, such as IAU Transaction Numbers; full name of the person for whom feature is named, including his dates of birth and death.

Annex IV

SUMMARY OF CRITERIA FOR NAMING EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURES*

	Type of feature		
	Craters		
Extraterrestrial body	*Major*	*Minor*	*Ranges, chains of craters, mountains, valleys, trenches, plains etc.*
Moon	Commemorative names for distinguished astronomers, mathematicians, physicists, biologists etc.	First names, male and female, of one or two syllables	Names borrowed from terrestrial orographic features
Mars	Commemorative names for distinguished scientists, astronomers, mathematicians, physicists etc.	Named for small towns and villages around the world	Names borrowed from terrestrial orographic features throughout the world
Mercury	Commemorative names for composers, poets, authors and artists		Albedo features named for ships of discovery and observatories; other features to be named for birds and large cities.
Venus	Named for feminine mythological figures	Named for feminine first names	Basins and plains to be given names of goddesses of ancient cultures; other features to be named for specialists in radio, electronics and automation

* Names of living persons, political, religious or military figures and modern philophosphers will *not* be used. The above rules have been adopted by the International Astronomical Union.

REPORT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA ON PROGRAMMES FOR NAMING UNDERSEA FEATURES*

Résumé

Le United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) a poursuivi ses travaux sur les programmes relatifs aux noms des détails sous-marins. Outre ses activités normales qui consistent à examiner les propositions de noms et à approuver les nouveaux noms, ce qui a représenté environ 340 nouveaux noms depuis 1972, il a entrepris, par l'intermédiaire de son Comité consultatif pour les détails sous-marins, un examen complet des principes, des politiques et des méthodes qu'il applique pour attribuer un nom aux détails sous-marins. Deux facteurs principaux l'ont incité à entreprendre cette tâche. En premier lieu, le programme du Groupe de travail des Nations Unies chargé d'étudier les détails sous-marins et marins, qui avait pour but de formuler des principes directeurs acceptables internationalement, a montré qu'un examen de ce genre serait fructueux. Deuxièmement, l'importance croissante de la recherche et de l'exploration sous-marines rendaient particulièrement nécessaire un réexamen des principes directeurs existants, afin de déterminer s'ils convenaient pour les activités actuelles. A la suite de cet examen, qui a été effectué en coopération étroite avec le Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques, certains termes et définitions ont été changés et un ensemble légèrement modifié de principes, de politiques et de méthodes a été adopté. Le BGN accorde également une attention particulière aux problèmes de définition et de nomenclature des détails qui se trouvent uniquement dans la zone du plateau continental. En dernier lieu, on a mis au point un programme afin de communiquer aux utilisateurs des renseignements sur les noms dès que ceux-ci ont été approuvés par le BGN.

Resumen

La Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos siguió trabajando en programas relacionados con los nombres de accidentes geográficos submarinos. Además de la labor normal de examinar las propuestas de nombres y aprobar nuevos nombres, que representó alrededor de 340 nuevos nombres desde 1972, la Junta, por conducto de su Comité Asesor sobre Accidentes Geográficos Submarinos, inició un minucioso estudio de sus principios, políticas y procedimientos para la designación de los accidentes geográficos submarinos. Dos

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.34.

factores principales estimularon a la Junta para realizar esa labor. En primer lugar, el programa del Grupo de Trabajo de las Naciones Unidas sobre Accidentes Submarinos y Marítimos, que procuraba elaborar directrices aceptables para su uso internacional, sugirió que un estudio sería beneficioso. En segundo lugar, el ámbito creciente de la investigación y la exploración submarinas exigía que se reexaminaran las directrices existentes para determinar la medida en que eran adecuadas a las operaciones modernas. Como resultado de este examen, que fue realizado en estrecha cooperación con el Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos del Canadá, se modificaron algunos términos y definiciones y se aprobó una declaración, ligeramente revisada, de principios, políticas y procedimientos. La Junta también está prestando especial atención a los problemas de definir y denominar accidentes geográficos que sólo se encuentran en zonas de las plataformas continentales. Finalmente, se ha elaborado un programa para difundir información sobre los nombres entre los usuarios, tan pronto como la Junta haya aprobado tales nombres.

*

* *

Since 1972, the United States has continued to be active in standardizing names of undersea features for official purposes through the Board on Geographic Names (BGN) Advisory Committee on Undersea Features (ACUF).

In keeping with the growth of undersea exploration programmes, much of which growth is related to efforts to locate natural resources, the Committee has dedicated considerable time to processing new names proposed by scientists, technicians and other persons involved with such efforts. Thanks to procedures developed by the Committee, names proposed for newly discovered features are nearly always described on BGN proposal forms in adequate detail. Occasionally, further correspondence with the proponent of a name has been required to obtain additional information. Although names are processed as expeditiously as possible, normally from one to three months are required, inasmuch as separate actions by BGN (meeting as a separate body) and by the Secretary of the Interior are necessary. Proposers who have an urgent need for names, however, are given provisional approval as soon as the Committee accepts a name.

During the period from 1972 to 1977, the Committee reviewed about 400 names, of which 340 were approved as new names, 35 were changed in terms of location or feature designation and the rest were not accepted or were deferred. These actions were accomplished in 36 sessions of ACUF.

To ensure timely distribution of information about new names to users, the Committee is designing an informal publication containing decisions about names, which will be issued after names have been fully approved. In the past, the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features* has been the main vehicle for publicizing new names, but budget restrictions have slowed publication programmes. Eventually, a complete gazetteer of undersea names will be issued, but meantime the planned publication should satisfy requirements for up-to-date information.

In addition to working on names, the Committee recently undertook a review of guidelines governing United States naming activities. This review, which was prompted in part by the requirement to develop standards useful for international programmes (as enunciated by the United Nations Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features), is now complete. The new statement of BGN principles and procedures is cited in full in the report submitted by the Convenor of the Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features. As stated in that report, representatives of the United States and Canada worked on the statement in an attempt to assure maximum adherence to previous statements adopted by those nations.

Another matter occupying the attention of the United States is that of terms and definitions of undersea features. The basic principle followed by BGN is that terms to describe features should be as simple as possible and should be related to form rather than genetic process. At the same time, the definitions also should be simple and descriptive of form. These principles have been followed by BGN for many years; they are fully elaborated in the text of the 1972 BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features*. The distinction between form *versus* genesis as the BGN basis for terms and definitions perhaps requires discussion. Surveys of undersea areas that result in the identification of physical features almost always deliver data that indicate location, form and size. When new features are thus "discovered", and when a name proposed, researchers are urged to submit appropriate information on the BGN names proposal form. The form, which also is recommended to the Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features for international use, asks for adequate information to assure proper identification of the features. In very few cases would such surveys also provide information about the genesis of features, and in view of the requirement to attach names to features for publication purposes, to wait for further geologic evidence would be counterproductive. For this reason, ACUF recently reaffirmed its position against including reference to genetic factors as part of feature identification.

The great amount of new bathymetric information available to scientists and cartographers does, however, require that present terms and definitions be reviewed to test their validity. Terms and definitions used by other nations, notably Canada, were studied as part of the review, and in many cases Canadian versions were adopted by ACUF. A few new or modified terms were also added to the existing BGN list; this list is included in the report of the Working Group identified earlier. Changes and additions were made to clarify terms or definitions and to improve their utility.

The United States is involved in yet another kind of review. The increasingly large scale of undersea survey-

ing, particularly on the United States continental shelf, has resulted in a corresponding increase in identification of new kinds of "micro-features". Although many of these features may resemble features found in deeper water, their occurrence in groups and their smaller sizes require that they be viewed as a different category of features. Further, some micro-features appear to be different in nature from those in deep water. The Committee is examining the evidence to determine whether a new set of terms and definitions is required.

With growth foreseeable in the number of terms and definitions, the Committee anticipates that persons either working on studies of features or proposing new names will have some difficulty in differentiating the various kinds of features. Already, ambiguity can arise where current definitions do not permit precise identification of feature types. The Committee is giving consideration to preparing graphic illustrations to provide clear characterizations of all feature types. Such illustrations would include perspective sketches and sets of bathymetric contours. The availability of such pictures would materially assist in the translation of terms and definitions into other languages.

RULES APPLICABLE IN THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC TO THE NAMES OF TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES COMMON TO TWO OR MORE COUNTRIES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

Geographers, cartographers and philologists in the German Democratic Republic have studied the problem of the correct spelling of geographical names of topographical objects common to two and more countries and have set up uniform rules, which safeguard the national interests of the German Democratic Republic as well as those of other nations.

The German Democratic Republic proceeds from the realization that names of topographical objects that cover the territory of two or more countries, or that concern two or more national spheres of influence, need clear regulations. These regulations should not only observe the principles of standardization but should consider just as well that the geographical names will remain within anybody's grasp.

On principle, the spelling of the names of these topographical objects should be based on the particular national forms; this means that the designations of the topographical objects are given in the two or more relevant languages. This applies, for instance, to the names of ocean areas, bays, lakes, rivers, mountain ranges and landscapes, particularly for use in scientific publications and for other, international purposes. However, in order for practical domestic reasons (e.g. because of lack of space on small-scale maps) to avoid any double designations, exceptional rules were established for such cases. These exceptional rules are based on the generally accepted principle that the names of geographical features covering the territory of more than one country and having more than one designation may be rendered in German spelling. The names of oceans and oceanic areas, which are international waters or which concern several national spheres of influence, are likewise rendered in German spelling. The same applies to the spelling of names of the submarine relief forms of international oceans and oceanic areas.

In the interest of achieving uniformity in the spelling of the names of these objects, their names were compiled in lists and published. A strict standard was applied in the selection of the names in order to give priority to the principle of spelling the names in their particular national forms.

Many years of practical work have proved that these regulations meet the requirements of, and have contributed to, the reduction of exonyms. Likewise, they are in line with resolution 25 adopted at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.[1]

As regards, for instance, the names of topographical features at the State frontiers between the German Democratic Republic on the one hand and Poland and Czechoslovakia on the other, their standardization was not feasible because the names concerned belong to different languages with differing letters and differing orthographies. Consequently, and in keeping with paragraph 2 of resolution 25 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, these topographical objects are rendered in their established German form on the territory of the German Democratic Republic and in their established Polish or Czech form on the territories of Poland or of Czechoslovakia. Westoder, for example, is rendered *Odra Zachodnia*; Neisse, *Nysa Łużicka*; Erzgebirge, *Krusné hory*; and Elbe, *Labe*. This means that both forms of the names are on an equal footing for international use.

The same regulations are applied in the German Democratic Republic for the designation of the topographical objects located at the frontiers of third countries.

Should several countries agree to use but one name for a topographical object which forms part of their several national spheres of influence, the German Democratic Republic is prepared to accept this new, standardized form and to apply it as the only form suited for

* The original text of this paper, prepared by J. R. Pustkowski, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.50.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

international and national use. Thus, Norway and Sweden having agreed on the Danish form of "Skagerrak" (replacing the Norwegian *Skagerak* and the Swedish *Skagerack* used formerly), the form "Skagerrak", which had been and is used in the German Democratic Republic, is no longer an exonym.

Those names of topographical features common to two or more countries which are to be used in the German Democratic Republic are covered by two publications:

(*a*) *Instruktion für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik (Instruction for the Spelling of Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic)*, sixth revised edition, Berlin 1977; and

(*b*) *Allgemeine Richtlinie für die Schreibweise sonstiger geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik (General Guidelines for the Spelling of Other Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic)*, first edition, Berlin 1975.

These regulations ensure that no geographical names will be used in the German Democratic Republic that are outdated in their historical and social aspects, and that, in this respect, no revanchist or colonialist ideas will be spread.

ANTARCTIC GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Au Japon, l'élaboration des toponymes concernant l'Antarctique s'opère comme suit : la Commission japonaise des toponymes de l'Antarctique, qui relève de l'Institut national de recherche polaire, établit les projets de toponymes concernant la zone d'observation japonaise dans l'Antarctique. Sur la base de ces projets, une réunion générale convoquée par le siège de l'Expédition de recherche japonaise dans l'Antarctique se prononce sur les noms officiels.

Resumen

La asignación de nombres a lugares de la Antártica se efectúa en el Japón como sigue: la Comisión de Topónimos Antárticos del Japón creada en el Instituto Nacional de Investigaciones Polares prepara los proyectos de topónimos dentro de la zona de observación antártica del Japón, sobre la base de los proyectos, los nombres oficiales se determinan en una reunión general convocada por la oficina central de la Expedición Japonesa de Investigación Antártica.

*

* *

The naming of places in the Antarctic is carried out in Japan according to the following principle and procedure. Since 1957, the names of 188 places have been drafted, and the formal names selected on the basis of these drafts.

Procedure

In cases where there is a need to prepare names for new places in the Antarctic—e.g. for the preparation of Antarctic maps or for Antarctic observation and survey—the director of the National Polar Research Institute (NPRI), after seeking counsel from the Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan (established within the Institute), prepares drafts of the names. On the basis of these drafts, the formal names are decided at a general convention at the headquarters of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition.

Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan

Established as part of NPRI, the Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan has a membership of not more than 20 persons, including men of learning and experience associated with Antarctic observations or Antarctic geographical names, and staff officials of the administrative agencies related to Antarctic observation (i.e., The Ministries of Education, Construction, Transport and Foreign Affairs).

Subjects for names

With the exception of those features for which names have already been selected by foreign countries and internationally announced or used, topographical features and important points that are situated south of latitude 60° S, and that have been discovered and surveyed by participants in Japan's Antarctic observations, are classified and named according to the following guidelines.

Classification

Class I features include the following:

(*a*) Area of land;
(*b*) Coast;
(*c*) Sea;
(*d*) Upland area;
(*e*) Large mountain range;
(*f*) Large undersea feature—trench, peak, plateau and rise;
(*g*) Ice shelf; and
(*h*) Large glacier.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 59.

Class II features include the following:

(*a*) Peninsula;
(*b*) Mountain range (excluding large mountain range);
(*c*) Large or conspicuous mountain;
(*d*) Glacier (excluding large glacier);
(*e*) Conspicuous cape;
(*f*) Chain of islands;
(*g*) Large gulf or bay;
(*h*) Strait or channel;
(*i*) Anchorage; and
(*j*) Large sunken rock, sandbank or shallow.

Class III features include the following:

(*a*) Small area of land or hill;
(*b*) Nunatak;
(*c*) Cliff;
(*d*) Rock;
(*e*) Small sea-coast feature;
(*f*) Point or cape;
(*g*) Glacier (excluding larger or more conspicuous glacier);
(*h*) Bay;
(*i*) Cove;
(*j*) Berth;
(*k*) Small sunken rock on the sea bed, sandbank or shallow;
(*l*) Camping area and supply storage area (artificial and not necessarily permanent); and
(*m*) Parts of these features.

General principles for assigning geographical names

The following general principles are applied in the assignment of names to Antarctic geographical features:

(*a*) Class I and III features shall not be named after persons.

(*b*) Class II features may be named only after persons of the following categories:

(i) Persons who have rendered extraordinary meritorious service to Japan's Antarctic observation programme, and who are therefore to be commended; or

(ii) Representatives of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition and crew members, such as the Chief of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition, Chief of the Winter Expedition or Captain of the Observation Ship. When a place is to be named after a person still living, it is necessary to obtain prior approval from the person.

(*c*) Names other than those commemorating persons may be of the following categories:

(i) Names giving a specific description of a given feature;
(ii) Names given to the feature spontaneously on the basis of a topographic feature, impression etc.;
(iii) Name of a ship or aircraft used at the time of a discovery; or
(iv) Other names as deemed appropriate.

(*d*) The following types of names, which international opinion considers inappropriate, shall be avoided:

(i) Names proposed with consideration given to a family relationship or to personal friendship;
(ii) Names of persons who have donated money, equipment or commodities and who are likely to take advantage of the naming in making commercial profits;
(iii) Names of products, sled dogs, pet animals and others;
(iv) Names that are already well known in other parts of the world. The re-use of such a name in the Antarctic is undesirable, even if it is preceded by such an adjective as *Sin* (New), *Minami* (South) or *Syō* (small).

(*e*) The following names shall be avoided:

(i) Names that are almost indistinguishable from already existing names;
(ii) Names that are equivocal; and
(iii) Duplicate names. That is, the practice is discouraged of using the name of one and the same person twice for one and the same kind of feature.

NAMES OF OCEANS AND UNDERSEA FEATURES LYING OUTSIDE TERRITORIAL WATERS

Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Les noms des mers et océans situés au-delà des eaux territoriales, qui sont adoptés par le Bureau hydrographique international, sont indiqués sur les cartes japonaises.

Quant aux noms des détails sous-marins, ceux qui sont approuvés par l'Association internationale d'océanographie physique (AIOP) sont utilisés sans modifications, et les autres font l'objet d'une décision prise par l'Assemblée des noms géographiques des océans constituée par le Département hydrographique.

Resumen

Los nombres de océanos y mares fuera de las aguas territoriales adoptados por la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional se indican en los mapas japoneses.

En cuanto a los accidentes submarinos, los aprobados por la Asociación Internacional de Oceanografía Física (IAPO) se usan sin modificaciones, y los demás nombres se deciden en una sesión de la Asamblea sobre Nombres Geográficos de Océanos que convoca el Departamento de Hidrografía.

*

* *

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.60.

Procedures for naming seas and undersea features beyond the territorial waters are as follows

The names of oceans and seas are indicated in accordance with the principles expressed by the International Hydrographic Bureau in IHO publication SP 23, *Limits of Oceans and Seas* (1953), which was prepared on the basis of international consensus.

As for the names of undersea features, those adopted by the GEBCO Sub-Committee on Geographical Names of Ocean Bottom Features as a result of international co-operative work and approved by IAPO are being used unconditionally. Names of other undersea features are studied by the Assembly on Geographical Names of Oceans as required for nautical and bathymetric charting, and certain names are then adopted as the standardized ones. The Assembly has adopted 46 such names since its second meeting.

The objective of this work is to classify undersea features lying beyond territorial waters into the following nomenclature categories, and either to give them geographical names or to standardize the names of such features:

(*a*) Primary features (major features):
- (i) Ridge;
- (ii) Seamount chain;
- (iii) Rise;
- (iv) Plateau;
- (v) Fracture zone;
- (vi) Trench; and
- (vii) Basin;

(*b*) Secondary features (minor features):
- (i) Seamount;
- (ii) Bank;
- (iii) Knoll;
- (iv) Spur;
- (v) Canyon;
- (vi) Deep;
- (vii) Caldron;
- (viii) Shelf channel;
- (ix) Trough;
- (x) Deep sea channel; and
- (xi) Deep sea fan

The general principle is that geographical names will be given to primary features (i. e. to features of large scale). In the case of a very extensive feature, the geographical names of the places located at both extremities of the feature will be indicated in the following manner:

(*a*) If the feature extends from a northerly to a southerly direction, the name of the northernmost place will be indicated first;

(*b*) If the feature extends from an easterly to a westerly direction, the name of the westernmost place will be indicated first. It is also desirable to give a ship's or person's name to either the deepest or the shallowest portion of a feature.

Geographical names should preferably be given to secondary features (i.e. to features of medium or small scale). If there is no suitable geographical name to be quoted, a ship's or person's name may be given.

In case of more than one feature of the same category having the same name, the features will be distinguished by numbers. The numbering sequence will be in accordance with the chronological order of discovery or survey. If the name is geographical, the number will be prefixed; if it is a ship's name, the number will be suffixed.

In cases where a traditional name or some priority in naming exists, due regard shall be paid to such a traditional name.

UNDERSEA FEATURE NAMES APPROVED BY THE UNITED STATES BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES

Report presented by the United States of America*

This bulletin contains names approved by the United States Board on Geographic Names since publication of the second edition of the *Undersea Features Gazetteer* in 1971, through 19 April 1977.

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Abra Canyon	Canyon	17°31′ N,	120°22′ E
Accomac Canyon	Canyon	37 46 N.	74 02 W
Adélie Valley	Valley	65 30 S,	136 00 E
Agassiz Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	38 15 S,	127 15 W
Agerholm Seamount	Seamount	34 25 N,	135 35 W
Aguja Canyon	Canyon	11 40 N,	74 10 W
Aja Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	56 00 N,	145 00 W
Alaminos Bank	Marine bank	28 01 N,	91 45 W
Alaminos Canyon	Canyon	26 30 N,	94 35 W
Albany Seamount	Seamount	38 35 N,	37 15 W
Albatross Knoll	Knoll	33 00 N,	119 57 W
Albatross Seamount	Seamount	17 38 N,	30 05 W
Alexander Agassiz Guyot	Guyot	17 54 N,	178 33 E
Allison Guyot	Guyot	18 31 N.	179 36 W

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 110

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Amazon Fan	Fan	5° 00′ N, 47° 30′ W
Amazon Ridge	Ridge	4 30 N, 43 30 W
Amlia Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	50 00 N, 173 00 W
Antialtair Seamount	Seamount	43 37 N, 22 27 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 43°50′ N, 22°00′ W)		
Antoine Bank	Marine bank	27 50 N, 92 18 W
Appelbaum Bank	Marine bank	27 51 N, 94 15 W
Arafura Shelf	Shelf	10 00 S, 137 00 E
Argo Plain	Plain	14 00 S, 117 00 E
Arroyo Seamount	Seamount	6 15 N, 22 40 W
Artimon Bank	Marine bank	45 10 N, 58 00 W
Aurora Reef	Reef	0 43 N, 129 32 E
Austral Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	20 00 S, 130 30 W
Avalon Knoll	Knoll	33 24 N, 118 13 W
Aves Apron	Archipelagic apron	15 00 N, 65 00 W
Ayu Trough	Trough	3 30 N, 132 30 E
Babylon Canyon	Canyon	39 30 N, 71 56 W
Baccaro Bank	Marine bank	43 00 N, 64 48 W
Balleny Basin	Basin	67 00 S, 170 00 E
Balleny Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	62 00 S, 156 00 E
Balleny Trough	Trough	66 00 S, 158 00 E
Barbados Trough	Trough	12 00 N, 59 23 W
Barracuda Plain	Plain	17 00 N, 56 30 W
Barrier Plateau	Plateau	35 40 S, 175 45 E
Bathymetrists Seamounts	Seamounts	7 30 N, 21 30 W
Bauer Basin	Basin	10 00 S, 101 45 W
Beachport Terrace	Terrace	38 00 S, 139 00 E
Beata Escarpment	Escarpment	16 10 N 72 50 W
Beata Plateau	Plateau	14 40 N, 71 00 W
Beata Spur	Spur	14 40 N, 71 40 W
Beaugé, Banc	Marine bank	49 45 N, 60 09 W
Beck Seamount	Seamount	35 35 N, 171 25 E
Belize Fan	Fan	18 00 N, 86 30 W
Bellingshausen Plain	Plain	64 00 S, 90 00 W
Bellona Valley	Valley	40 00 S, 165 45 E
Benham Plateau	Plateau	16 30 N, 124 45 E
Bering Strait Valley	Valley	65 45 N, 168 30 W
Berkner Bank	Marine bank	75 00 S, 48 00 W
Bethune Bank	Reef	19 35 S, 174 15 W
Beveridge Reef	Reef	20 02 S, 167 52 W
Bicentenary Seamount	Seamount	19 24 S, 175 28 W
Blake Knolls	Knolls	32 17 N, 118 15 W
Bonnécamps Canyon	Canyon	43 05 N, 60 25 W
Booshu Spur	Spur	63 34 N, 172 17 W
Bounty Seachannel	Seachannel	24 00 S, 176 30 E
Bouma Bank	Marine bank	28 03 N, 92 27 W
Bradelle Bank	Marine bank	47 25 N, 62 55 W
Britannia Tablemounts	Tablemounts	28 15 S, 155 30 E
Broughton Gap	Gap	42 39 S, 171 44 W
Bryant Bank	Marine bank	28 01 N, 92 28 W
Buccaneer Bank	Marine bank	21 25 N, 80 08 W
Bull Pen, The	Basin	44 15 N, 61 35 W
Burgeo Bank	Marine bank	47 10 N, 57 55 W
Cabo Creus Canyon	Canyon	42 21 N, 3 29 E
Cagayan Canyon	Canyon	18 25 N, 121 36 E
Camagüey Ridge	Ridge	20 00 N, 82 00 W
Campbell Island Shelf	Shelf	52 15 S, 169 30 E
Cap Ferret Canyon	Canyon	44 42 N, 2 30 W
Cape Johnson Trough	Trough	8 45 S, 165 15 E
Carlsbad Canyon	Canyon	33 06 N, 117 24 W
Carter Seamount	Seamount	8 58 N, 21 10 W
Caswell Spur	Spur	44 45 S, 166 40 E
Cavalli Canyons	Canyons	34 47 S, 174 05 E
Ceduna Terrace	Terrace	35 00 S, 132 00 E
Central Basin Trough	Trough	16 45 N, 130 00 E
Central Slope	Slope	27 10 N, 92 50 W
Ceram Trough	Trench	2 25 S, 129 30 E
Chain Knoll	Knoll	28 14 N, 68 26 W
Challenger Plateau	Plateau	40 00 S, 169 30 E
Chaplino Valley	Valley	64 10 N, 171 47 W
Chase Seamount	Seamount	42 04 N, 139 35 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Chebacco Canyon	Canyon	40° 12′ N, 67° 57′ W
Chirikof Basin	Basin	64 30 N. 169 00 W
Christian Canyon	Canyon	62 00 N, 39 00 W
Christmas Rise	Rise	13 00 S, 103 00 E
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 12°00′ S, 110°30′ E)		
Chūō-gotō Seachannels	Seachannels	33 15 N, 128 10 E
Cindy Seamount	Seamount	7 40 N, 21 25 W
Clipper Canyon	Canyon	40 00 N, 68 40 W
Cocos Plain	Plain	3 00 S, 93 30 E
Colvocoresses Reef	Reef	4 53 N, 72 37 E
Constantine Seamount	Seamount	20 30 S, 171 20 E
Cook Bank	Marine bank	50 56 N, 128 40 W
Cook Canyon	Canyon	43 17 S, 169 35 E
Cook Seachannel	Seachannel	43 30 S, 166 00 E
Coriolis Trough	Trough	19 30 S, 170 00 E
Correira Guyot	Tablemount	6 29 S, 57 11 E
Cow Pen, The	Basin	44 12 N, 61 25 W
Cramer Seamount	Seamount	24 06 N, 164 13 E
Crespi Knoll	Knoll	33 06 N, 117 52 W
Curaçao Ridge	Ridge	13 00 N, 68 00 W
Cuvier Plain	Plain	22 00 S, 111 00 E
Cuvier Plateau	Plateau	24 00 S, 108 00 E
Dai-go-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 11 N, 128 14 E
Dai-ichi-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 22 N, 128 44 E
Dai-ni-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 00 N, 128 26 E
Dai-roku-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 12 N, 128 08 E
Dai-san-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 00 N, 128 22 E
Dai-shi-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 08 N, 128 22 E
Daitō Ridge	Ridge	25 30 N, 133 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Daito Ridge)		
Dall Bank	Marine bank	32 52 N, 119 25 W
Dame Marie Ridge	Ridge	18 20 N, 75 30 W
Danas Valley	Valley	62 35 N, 51 05 W
Danells Valley	Valley	60 42 N, 42 15 W
Danielsen Canyon	Canyon	64 00 N, 34 00 W
Dantes Hole	Hole	8 17 N, 104 08 W
Darwin Guyot	Guyot	22 04 N, 171 35 E
Dawson Canyon	Canyon	43 00 N, 61 05 W
Dehlinger Seamount	Seamount	42 00 N, 137 19 W
Dibble Basin	Basin	65 20 S, 133 00 E
Discovery Ridge	Ridge	27 50 N, 68 02 W
Disney Reef	Reef	19 17 S, 174 06 W
Dogbody Canyon	Canyon	40 03 N, 68 47 W
Doldrums Trough	Trough	4 05 N, 27 30 W
Dolphin Spur	Spur	38 15 S, 165 00 E
Dowd Guyot	Tablemount	13 27 N, 119 39 W
East Aves Escarpment	Escarpment	13 00 N, 63 00 W
East Mexico Shelf	Shelf	24 00 N, 97 30 W
East Tasman Plateau	Plateau	43 30 S, 152 00 E
Eastern Bradelle Valley	Valley	47 50 N, 62 30 W
Eastward Knoll	Knoll	28 32 N, 69 09 W
Eauripik Rise	Rise	3 00 N, 142 00 E
Echizen Banks	Marine banks	36 15 N, 135 45 E
Eirik Ridge	Ridge	58 40 N, 44 00 W
Elbow, The	Ridge	27 41 N, 84 09 W
Emerald Basin	Basin	44 00 N, 62 45 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 43°45′ N, 63°00′ W)		
Emery Knoll	Knoll	33 02 N, 118 24 W
Emilia Seamount	Seamount	43 50 N, 131 54 W
Ewing Bank	Marine bank	28 06 N, 91 02 W
Eyre Terrace	Terrace	34 00 S, 127 00 E
Falcon Bank	Reef	19 19 S, 174 07 W
Faroe Bank	Seamount	60 55 N, 8 40 W
(name formerly approved as: Faeroe Bank)		
Faroe-Iceland Ridge	Ridge	64 00 N, 10 00 W
(name formerly approved as: Faeroe-Iceland Ridge)		
Feinga Seamount	Seamount	20 09 S, 175 09 W
Ferris Seamount	Seamount	29 00 S, 102 45 W
Filebottom Canyon	Canyon	40 11 N, 67 59 W
Flanagan Seamount	Seamount	8 22 N, 21 22 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Fonera Canyon	Canyon	41° 52′ N,	3° 27′ E
Freen Trough	Trough	42 41 N,	20 00 W
Fukue Bank	Marine bank	32 47 N,	128 27 E
Galapagos Rise	Rise	15 00 S,	97 00 W
Gambell Shoal	Shoal	64 00 N,	170 45 W
Gambier Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	57 00 S,	147 30 E
Garrett Ridge	Ridge	32 37 N,	119 32 W
Gascoyne Plain	Plain	16 00 S,	110 00 E
Geisha Guyots	Guyots	31 30 N,	150 00 E
Gentatsu Shoal	Shoal	36 14 N,	135 45 E
Georges Canyon	Canyon	41 16 N,	66 16 W
George V Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	53 30 S,	141 00 E
Gibbs Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	52 45 N,	35 30 W
Gilg Seamount	Seamount	6 52 N,	21 54 W
Gloria Ridge	Ridge	55 50 N,	45 00 W
Godthåb Valley	Valley	63 30 N,	52 30 W
Goose Island Bank	Marine bank	51 38 N,	129 00 W
Gordon Seamount	Seamount	46 50 N,	135 04 W
Gotô Banks	Marine banks	33 10 N,	128 25 E
Green Canyon	Canyon	27 03 N,	90 27 W
Green Knoll	Knoll	27 00 N,	90 18 W
Greenland Trough	Trough	69 00 N,	20 00 W
Grenada Plain	Plain	13 30 N,	62 00 W
Grijalva Ridge	Ridge	5 00 S,	85 00 W
Guacanayabo Trough	Trough	19 45 N,	81 40 W
Guinea Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	9 00 N,	27 00 W
Haast Canyon	Canyon	44 05 S,	168 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Haast Valley)			
Haldimand Canyon	Canyon	44 00 N,	57 58 W
Hancock Bank	Marine bank	32 34 N,	119 42 W
Hanna Shoal	Shoal	72 00 N,	162 00 W
Hatteras Ridge	Ridge	33 45 N,	72 50 W
Hauraki Canyon	Canyon	35 20 S,	175 35 E
Heaphy Valley	Valley	40 40 S,	171 31 E
Heel Tapper Canyon	Canyon	40 08 N,	68 15 W
Heezen Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	53 00 S,	135 00 W
Heezen Plateau	Plateau	38 23 N,	70 48 W
Helena Seamount	Seamount	29 39 N,	158 56 E
Hendrickson Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N,	72 31 W
Hess Escarpment	Escarpment	15 05 N,	75 50 W
Higashi-gotô Seachannels	Seachannels	33 20 N,	128 40 E
Hispaniola Basin	Basin	20 35 N,	72 15 W
Hjort Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	62 00 S,	163 00 E
Honopu Canyon	Canyon	22 11 N,	159 41 W
Hoopers Canyon	Canyon	46 06 S,	171 00 E
Hsin-i Canyon	Canyon	23 02 N,	121 22 E
Humboldt Plain	Plain	54 00 S,	86 00 W
Iizuka Seamount	Seamount	42 21 N,	131 56 W
Ikitsuki Bank	Marine bank	33 36 N,	129 04 E
Imarssuak Seachannel	Seachannel	57 15 N,	44 00 W
Independence Knolls	Knolls	28 25 N,	69 42 W
Indian Ocean Cordillera	Cordillera	10 00 S,	66 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Indian Cordillera)			
Investigator Ridge	Ridge	11 30 S,	98 10 E
Iwabuchi Seamount	Seamount	42 04 N,	132 44 W
Iwo Jima Ridge	Ridge	30 00 N,	139 30 E
Jamaican Plain	Plain	15 30 N,	79 00 W
Jan Mayen Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	71 12 N,	8 00 W
Jan Mayen Ridge	Ridge	69 00 N,	8 00 W
(name formerly approved as: South Jan Mayen Ridge)			
Jones Seamount	Seamount	43 33 N,	132 35 W
Josephine Seamount	Seamount	36 40 N,	14 15 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 36°52′ N, 14°20′ W)			
Justus Seamount	Seamount	34 24 N,	52 30 W
Julianehåb Valley	Valley	60 20 N,	46 55 W
Kagami Seamount	Seamount	45 29 N,	140 37 W
Kailiu Canyon	Canyon	22 15 N,	159 37 W
Kami Reef	Reef	32 50 N,	128 40 E
Kane Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	23 30 N,	45 00 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Kane Seamount	Seamount	21° 08′ N,	28° 02′ W
Kangerdlugussuaq Valley	Valley	67 20 N,	31 00 W
Kangermio Canyon	Canyon	64 00 N,	34 30 W
Kapuskasing Canyon	Canyon	43 11 N,	61 17 W
Karitane Canyon	Canyon	45 38 S,	171 10 E
Keathley Canyon	Canyon	26 25 N,	93 27 W
King Island Shoal	Shoal	65 00 N,	168 06 W
King Island Valley	Valley	64 45 N,	168 00 W
Kings Trough	Trough	43 48 N,	22 00 W
Knauss Knoll	Knoll	37 24 N,	70 52 W
Knights Terrace	Terrace	35 02 S,	175 10 E
Kolbeinsey Ridge	Ridge	69 00 N,	17 30 W
Kookoolik Valley	Valley	64 10 N,	169 55 W
Kōrai Reef	Reef	33 07 N,	128 43 E
Kuga Bank	Marine bank	32 55 N,	128 30 E
La Cruz Canyon	Canyon	35 43 N,	121 25 W
La Victoria Knoll	Knoll	32 05 N,	117 50 W
Lacaze-Duthiers Canyon	Canyon	42 28 N,	3 28 E
Lansdowne Bank	Marine bank	20 49 S,	161 24 E
Leonard Canyon	Canyon	37 46 N,	73 51 W
Lindenows Valley	Valley	60 20 N,	42 40 W
Llobregat Canyon	Canyon	41 16 N.	2 11 E
Logan Canyon	Canyon	43 15 N.	59 50 W
Lost River Shoal	Shoal	65 14 N.	167 10 W
Louis Agassiz Guyot	Guyot	17 52 N,	178 12 E
Louisiade Plateau	Plateau	12 30 S,	158 00 E
Loyalty Basin	Basin	17 00 S,	165 00 E
Lyra Basin	Basin	2 30 N,	151 30 E
Lyra Trough	Trough	1 20 S,	152 05 E
Mackenzie Spot	Marine bank	43 58 N,	62 25 W
Macnab Seamount	Seamount	45 11 N,	135 42 W
Maeno Bank	Marine bank	37 13 N,	136 20 E
Magellan Rise	Rise	7 20 N,	177 00 W
Mameyes Canyon	Canyon	18 27 N.	65 43 W
Manus Basin	Basin	3 35 S,	150 00 E
Mariana Basin	Basin	17 30 N,	145 00 E
Marchant Seamount	Seamount	7 15 N,	22 15 W
Marquesas Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	9 15 S,	128 30 W
Marseille Canyon	Canyon	43 00 N.	5 04 E
Matsu Bank	Marine bank	36 20 N,	135 56 E
McGowan Seamount	Seamount	8 24 N,	20 40 W
McKernan Seamount	Seamount	42 20 N,	141 06 W
McKinley Seamount	Seamount	29 30 N,	137 15 W
McManus Seamount	Seamount	42 12 N,	139 08 W
Melmoore Seamount	Seamount	6 06 N,	24 52 W
Menard Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	50 00 S,	120 00 W
Menard Seamount	Seamount	42 12 N,	134 15 W
Mendaña Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	16 00 S,	91 00 W
Mentawai Basin	Basin	4 30 S,	102 00 E
Mentawai Ridge	Ridge	0 30 S,	99 00 E
Mentawai Trough	Trough	2 00 S,	100 00 E
Mergui Terrace	Terrace	9 00 N,	96 45 E
Mertz-Ninnis Valley	Valley	67 25 S,	146 00 E
Mey Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N,	72 26 W
Middle Bank	Marine bank	44 30 N,	60 35 W
Mid-Indian Ocean Ridge (name formerly approved as: Mid-Indian Ridge)	Ridge	30 00 S,	75 00 E
Mill Creek Canyon	Canyon	35 58 N,	121 35 W
Milne Seamount	Seamount	43 46 N.	38 37 W
Misaine Bank	Marine bank	45 15 N,	58 40 W
Mississippi-Alabama Shelf	Shelf	29 40 N,	88 10 W
Mississippi Slope	Slope	27 45 N,	89 50 W
Molloy Seamount	Seamount	83 58 N,	105 10 E
Mono Rise	Rise	12 00 N,	80 00 W
Morant Trough	Trough	18 05 N,	75 30 W
Moresby Valley	Valley	10 45 S,	146 45 E
Motagua Fan	Fan	17 30 N,	85 30 W
Murchison Seamount	Seamount	7 54 N,	21 00 W
Mussau Ridge	Ridge	1 15 N,	149 10 E
Nagahira Bank	Marine bank	37 20 N,	136 20 E
Nakano Bank	Marine bank	37 34 N,	136 28 E

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Nakwe Seachannel	Seachannel	37° 00′ N, 149° 30′ E
Nanortalik Bank	Marine bank	60 14 N, 46 20 W
Necker Ridge	Ridge	22 00 N, 167 15 W
Nichols Seamount	Seamount	42 50 N, 133 13 W
Nidever Bank	Marine bank	33 15 N, 119 49 W
Nierenberg Seamount	Seamount	44 19 N, 142 07 W
Nil Canyon	Canyon	36 54 N, 5 58 E
Nishi Reef	Reef	32 50 N, 128 38 E
Nishi-gotō Seachannels	Seachannels	32 45 N, 128 00 E
Nishinotoro Banks	Marine banks	37 25 N, 136 25 E
North Bank	Marine bank	52 00 N, 129 55 W
North Makassar Basin	Basin	1 00 S, 118 30 E
North New Hebrides Trench	Trench	13 00 S, 166 00 E
North Solomon Trough	Trough	7 00 S, 159 30 E
Northeast Cape Shoal	Shoal	63 20 N, 168 30 W
Northwest Slope	Slope	26 45 N, 95 40 W
Northwind Escarpment	Escarpment	76 30 N, 155 00 W
Norton Plain	Plain	63 54 N, 168 00 W
Nova Trough	Trough	2 30 S, 173 00 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 1°20′ S, 168°40′ W)		
Ō Bank	Bank	36 24 N, 136 00 E
Ogasawara Plateau	Plateau	26 00 N, 144 00 E
Oki-Daitō Ridge	Ridge	23 50 N, 133 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Oki-Daito Ridge)		
Okino Bank	Marine bank	37 16 N, 136 18 E
Orphelin, Banc de l'	Marine bank	48 18 N, 63 11 W
Osborn Plateau	Plateau	14 45 S, 87 00 E
Palmer Ridge	Ridge	42 51 N, 20 00 W
Panama Plain	Plain	11 00 N, 79 00 W
Papanui Canyon	Canyon	45 53 S, 171 05 E
Papua Plateau	Plateau	11 00 S, 148 15 E
(name formerly approved as: Papua Terrace)		
Parker Bank	Marine bank	27 58 N, 92 02 W
Patch, The	Marine bank	44 15 N, 62 20 W
Peake Trough	Trough	43 03 N, 20 12 W
Pedro Bank	Marine bank	17 05 N, 78 20 W
Pedro Escarpment	Escarpment	15 45 N, 78 40 W
Pelorus Reef	Reef	22 50 S, 176 28 W
Penrhyn Basin	Basin	7 30 S, 156 15 W
Perth Plain	Plain	28 30 S, 110 00 E
Phleger Bank	Marine bank	27 50 N, 91 54 W
Phoenix Canyon	Canyon	37 50 N, 73 44 W
Pickersgill Seamount	Seamount	46 43 S, 161 44 E
Pilgrim Banks	Marine banks	33 44 N, 119 10 W
Pining Canyon	Canyon	61 40 N, 40 00 W
Piñones Canyon	Canyon	18 28 N, 65 57 W
Porpoise Basin	Basin	66 10 S, 128 30 E
Port Clarence Valley	Valley	65 23 N, 167 30 W
Portlock Bank	Marine bank	58 20 N, 150 30 W
Pothorst Canyon	Canyon	60 00 N, 40 30 W
Prince of Wales Shoal	Shoal	65 54 N, 168 00 W
Pulley Ridge	Ridge	25 52 N, 83 36 W
Queirós Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	22 30 S, 95 00 W
(name formerly approved as: Quirós Fracture Zone)		
Raff Seamounts	Seamounts	44 09 N, 141 48 W
Raitt Seamount	Seamount	42 39 N, 143 03 W
Rancheria Basin	Basin	12 45 N, 73 05 W
Rangiauria Spur	Spur	45 25 S, 175 20 W
Rapano Ridge	Ridge	26 40 N, 159 00 W
Rat Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	49 00 N, 178 00 E
Rebman Seamount	Seamount	7 17 N, 21 24 W
Redondo Knoll	Knoll	33 41 N, 118 34 W
Reedjones Seamount	Seamount	7 34 N, 21 05 W
Rennell Island Ridge	Ridge	12 15 S, 160 00 E
Rennell Trough	Trough	12 00 S, 159 15 E
Researcher Seamount	Seamount	27 56 N, 68 14 W
Resolution Ridge	Ridge	46 10 S, 165 00 E
Revelle Seamount	Seamount	42 21 N, 139 30 W
Rezak Bank	Marine bank	27 58 N, 92 22 W
Richards Seamount	Seamount	42 50 N, 136 27 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Robbie Ridge	Ridge	10° 15′ S, 175° 00′ W
Rochambeau Bank	Seamount	15 09 S, 176 42 W
Rock Knoll	Knoll	30 19 N, 129 23 E
Roia Canyon	Canyon	43 45 N, 7 39 E
Roo Rise	Rise	12 00 S, 111 00 E
Rose Blanche Bank	Marine bank	47 25 N, 58 50 W
Rowley Shelf	Shelf	20 00 S, 117 00 E
Royal Trough	Trough	16 10 N, 49 00 W
Rune Seamount	Seamount	57 10 N, 45 10 W
Sackett Bank	Marine bank	28 38 N, 89 33 W
Sahul Shelf	Shelf	12 30 S, 125 00 E
Saint Helena Shoal	Shoal	32 25 N, 80 21 W
Saint Lawrence Trough	Trough	63 10 N, 168 23 W
Saint Lawrence Valley	Valley	62 50 N, 168 40 W
Saint Paul Seamount	Seamount	27 36 N. 165 48 E
Saint Vincent Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	55 00 S, 144 00 E
Saglek Bank	Marine bank	59 00 N. 61 40 W
Samoa Basin	Basin	16 00 S, 166 00 W
San Andrés Ridge	Ridge	13 30 N, 81 20 W
San Andrés Trough	Trough	13 10 N, 81 35 W
San Clemente Ridge	Ridge	33 00 N, 118 34 W
San Miguel Gap	Gap	33 54 N, 121 00 W
San Salvador Knoll	Knoll	32 18 N, 117 54 W
Santa Canyon	Canyon	17 29 N, 120 25 E
Santa Cruz-Catalina Ridge	Ridge	33 33 N, 118 45 W
Santa Lucia Bank	Marine bank	43 36 N, 9 29 E
Santo Antão Ridge	Ridge	18 50 N. 26 30 W
Santo Tomás Knoll	Knoll	32 30 N, 118 41 W
Sarera Basin	Basin	2 15 S, 135 30 E
Sarmiento Ridge	Ridge	7 00 S, 84 00 W
Saunders Canyon	Canyon	45 58 S, 171 00 E
Savage Seamount	Seamount	18 28 S, 169 14 W
Sayniq Canyon	Canyon	33 33 N, 35 20 E
Scatarie Bank	Marine bank	45 58 N, 59 15 W
Schaefer Seamount	Seamount	43 00 N, 132 26 W
Scoresby Valley	Valley	70 00 N, 21 30 W
Scotian Shelf	Shelf	44 00 N, 62 00 W
Scott Plateau	Plateau	13 20 S, 120 30 E
Sebaou Canyon	Canyon	37 05 N, 3 43 E
Sedna Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	47 30 N, 145 00 W
Sedna Ridges	Ridges	47 30 N, 143 16 W
Sefsaf Canyon	Canyon	36 49 N, 3 33 E
Sermilik Valley	Valley	64 30 N, 36 30 W
Sevuokuk Spur	Spur	63 46 N, 172 24 W
Shalowitz Seamount	Seamount	46 09 N, 135 12 W
Sharpshooter Canyon	Canyon	40 02 N, 68 35 W
Shediac Valley	Valley	47 20 N, 64 25 W
Shepard Knoll	Knoll	32 05 N, 118 29 W
Shichiriga Bank	Marine bank	33 56 N, 129 30 E
Shih-t'i Pi Canyon	Canyon	23 31 N, 121 30 E
Shin Reef	Reef	32 52 N, 128 40 E
Shor Seamount	Seamount	42 30 N, 133 05 W
Shortland Canyon	Canyon	43 50 N, 58 15 W
Shostakovich Seamount	Seamount	33 16 N, 164 53 W
Sidner Bank	Marine bank	27 55 N, 92 23 W
Sierra Seamount	Seamount	32 38 N, 150 09 E
Sila Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	51 30 N, 150 00 W
Silver Plain	Plain	22 30 N, 69 30 W
Sio Guyot	Guyot	18 18 N, 171 06 E
Skjoldungen Bank	Marine bank	62 35 N, 40 38 W
Skjoldungen Valley	Valley	62 52 N, 40 40 W
Skraelling Canyon	Canyon	62 30 N, 38 30 W
Snodgrass Seamount	Seamount	7 50 N, 20 44 W
Sorensen Seamount	Seamount	7 50 N, 21 50 W
Sorol Trough	Trough	7 05 N, 143 00 E
South Indian Ocean Plain	Plain	59 00 S, 125 00 E
South Makassar Basin	Basin	4 00 S, 118 30 E
South New Hebrides Trench	Trench	22 30 S, 170 00 E
South Tasman Rise	Rise	49 00 S, 148 00 E
Southeast Indian Ocean Ridge	Ridge	50 00 S, 110 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Southeast Indian Rise)		

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Southwest Indian Ocean Ridge	Ridge	43° 00′ S,	40° 00′ E
(name formerly approved as: Southwest Indian Ridge)			
Spilhaus Seamount	Seamount	42 40 N,	141 45 W
Spjaeldebod Canyon	Canyon	63 35 N,	35 40 W
Srivastava Seamount	Seamount	44 31 N,	136 07 W
Stanley Seamount	Seamount	43 08 N,	143 35 W
Stembel Knoll	Knoll	29 07 N,	136 33 W
Stickleback Seamount	Seamount	24 36 N,	177 54 W
Stone Fence, The	Escarpment	44 45 N,	57 25 W
Stravinsky Seamount	Seamount	31 29 N,	164 36 W
Sukkertoppen Bank	Marine bank	65 00 N,	53 35 W
Sukkertoppen Valley	Valley	64 20 N,	53 00 W
Sunda Shelf	Shelf	5 00 N,	107 00 E
Sverdrup Bank	Marine bank	33 08 N,	120 27 W
Swallow Knoll	Knoll	28 00 N,	68 32 W
Swan Trough	Trough	17 40 N,	83 10 W
Sweet Bank	Marine bank	27 51 N,	91 49 W
Taiaroa Canyon	Canyon	45 46 S,	171 10 E
Taieri Canyon	Canyon	46 15 S,	170 47 E
Tasman Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	58 30 S,	151 00 E
Tasman Plateau	Plateau	45 00 S,	147 00 E
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 48°00′ S, 148°00′ E)			
Tasmantid Seamounts	Seamounts	31 00 S,	156 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Tasman Seamounts)			
Tchaikovsky Seamount	Seamount	29 23 N,	162 05 W
Tema Reef	Reef	11 05 S,	165 35 W
Terry Seamount	Seamount	43 24 N,	139 52 W
Texas-Louisiana Shelf	Shelf	28 30 N,	93 00 W
Tharp Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	54 00 S,	135 00 W
Thomson Trough	Trough	45 00 S,	158 00 E
Three Points Spur	Spur	3 50 N,	2 30 W
Tin City Shoal	Shoal	65 08 N,	167 40 W
Tofua Ridge	Ridge	20 00 S,	175 10 W
Tofua Trough	Trough	19 30 S,	174 47 W
Toms Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N,	72 42 W
Torres Rise	Rise	13 40 S,	165 10 E
Trask Knoll	Knoll	33 37 N,	120 16 W
Tresslar Bank	Marine bank	27 53 N,	92 22 W
Trold Canyon	Canyon	62 40 N,	37 30 W
Tsushima Trough	Trough	34 49 N,	129 17 E
Tuamotu Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	12 30 S,	127 00 W
Tung-chiang Canyon	Canyon	22 24 N,	120 23 E
Udintsev Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	57 00 S,	145 00 W
Ukivok Shoal	Shoal	65 00 N,	168 06 W
Urashima Bank	Marine bank	35 58 N,	135 21 E
Vacquier Seamount	Seamount	42 30 N,	139 59 W
Vanguard Knoll	Knoll	28 10 N,	68 01 W
Venezuelan Plain	Plain	14 00 N,	67 00 W
Verde Canyon	Canyon	43 47 N,	7 54 E
Verrill Canyon	Canyon	42 50 N,	61 15 W
Viking Trough	Trough	65 05 N,	5 25 W
Villa Canyon	Canyon	35 48 N,	121 30 W
Viosca Knoll	Knoll	29 12 N,	88 34 W
Walker Ridge	Ridge	26 15 N,	91 20 W
Wallaby Plateau	Plateau	22 00 S,	104 00 E
Warr Canyon	Canyon	37 55 N,	73 34 W
Watertown Seamount	Seamount	10 32 N,	115 00 W
Webb Seamount	Seamount	7 00 N,	21 33 W
Wentworth Seamount	Seamount	28 54 N,	177 50 W
West Aves Escarpment	Escarpment	15 00 N,	64 00 W
West Caroline Rise	Rise	7 45 N,	140 00 E
West Caroline Trough	Trough	5 00 N,	137 30 E
West Florida Shelf	Shelf	27 00 N,	83 20 W
West Florida Slope	Slope	27 00 N,	84 40 W
West Mariana Ridge	Ridge	18 00 N,	143 00 E
West Thulean Rise	Rise	55 00 N,	46 10 W
Western Bradelle Valley	Valley	48 00 N,	62 50 W
White Island Canyon	Canyon	37 10 S,	177 31 E
White Marsh Seamount	Seamount	53 08 N,	143 29 W
Whitney Seamount	Seamount	8 29 N,	20 15 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Williams Seamount	Seamount	43° 57′ N, 38° 43′ W
Witter Bank	Marine bank	17 34 N, 77 56 W
Woodlark Basin	Basin	10 10 S, 153 20 E
Wu-shih Pi Canyon	Canyon	23 13 N, 121 25 E
York Shoal	Shoal	65 12 N, 167 30 W
Yucatan Escarpment	Escarpment	19 40 N, 86 30 W
Yucatan Plain	Plain	20 00 N, 85 00 W

Two names have been removed from the Undersea Features names file:

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Jason Seamount	Seamount	25° 10′ N, 161° 54′ W
(the BGN-approved name for this feature is now Mendelssohn Seamount, with co-ordinates 25°10′ N, 161°39′ W)		
Mississippi Seamount	Seamount	28°42′ N, 162°34′ W
(the BGN-approved name for this feature is now Paganini Seamount, with co-ordinates 28°41′ N, 162°40′ W)		

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
A	Aa, Die	2608	77	
	Aadebrunn		88	
	Accumer Ee	2210	87, 89	7e
	Accumersieler Balje	2310	87, 90	
	Adriansgörtel		88	
	Afgang		88	
	Altcappeler Tief		2, 138	
	Alte Ems		90	
	Alte Harle (Muschelbalje)	2212	2, 87, 89	
	Alte Hever		106	9d
	Alte Mellum s Mellum			
	Altenbruch-Reede		139	(10e)
	Altes Boesgatje	2306	90	
	Altes Schmaltief		106	
	Alte Südereider	1717	105	
	Alte Weser		2	8–9e
	Amrum [Insel]	1315, 1316	103	9c
	Amrumbank		103	8–9c
	Amrum-Odde		107	
	Amrumtief	1215, 1316	103, 107	
	Appelland s. Gröde-Appelland			
	Arngastsand	2515	7	
	Außenquage		106	
	Austerngrund		195	1–4c–e
B	Bakenloch		2, 138	
	Bakenplate	2212	87, 89	
	Baklegde (Neuharlingersieler Wattfahrwasser)	2212	87, 89	
	Baltrum [Insel]	2210	87, 90	7e
	Baltrumer Balje	2210	87, 89	
	Baltrumer Inselwatt	2210	87, 89	
	Baltrumer Wattfahrwasser	2210	87, 89	
	Bantsbalje	2408	90	6–7e
	Baumloch		139	
	Beensley	1418	61, 106, 107	
	Benners Rey		88	

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Ständiger Ausschuss für geographische Namen (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names) in collaboration with the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (German Hydrographical Institute), appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 125

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	*German Sea Chart No*	*Grid Square*
	Bielshövener Loch		105, 138	
	Bielshövensand	1818	105, 138	10d
	Bielshövensteert		105	
	Blaue Balje	2213	2	
	Blauort	1818	105	
	Blauortsand	1818	105	10d
	Blexer Plate	2417	4	
	Blidselbucht	0916	108	
	Blindes Randzelgat		90	
	Bockhorner Watt	2514	7	
	Bollensiel		2, 7	
	Bordumer Sand	2514	7, 8	
	Borkum [Insel]	2306, 2406	90	6e
	Borkumriff		87, 90	6e
	Borkumriffgrund		87	5–6d–e
	Branderplate	2308	89, 90	
	Brauerplaten	2306	87, 90	
	Breite Legde	2213	2, 89	
	Buchtloch	2017	138	
	Bullenloch	2019	139	
	Burhaver Plate	2416	4	
	Burnloch		138	
	Buschsand [Trischen]	1917	138	10d
	Buschsand-Fahrwasser		105, 138	
	Busetief	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Büsumer Watt	1818	105	
	Butterloch	1418	61, 106, 107	
	Buttersand		103, 108	
	Büttersrej		88	
C	Cancer		83	8–9b
	Carolinensieler Balje	2213	87, 89	
D	Dangaster Außentief s. Steinhauser Tief			
	Danskermannshörn		88	
	Das Hohe Ufer		49, 138	
	Das Neue Brack s. Neues Brack			
	Das Ridd		107	
	Der Hohe Weg (Hoher Weg)	2315	2, 7	9e
	Der Hund s. Hund			
	Der Strand	1318, 1418	103, 107	
	Die Aa	2608	77	
	Die Geise s. Geise			
	Diekmannsloch		138	
	Dieksander Priel		105, 138	
	Dithmarscher Gründe	1718	105	
	Dithmarscher Watt	1719	105	
	Dollart [bei Langeoog]	2211	87, 89	
	Dollart, der, [Emsmündung]	2608/09, 2709	77	7f
	Dorumer Tief		2, 38	
	Dove Fieffaden	1717	105	
	Dove Harle	2213	2, 87, 89	
	Doves Tief		89	
	Dovetief		87, 89	
	D-Steert		105, 138	
	Duhner Loch		49, 138	
	Duhner Watt		49, 138	
	Dukegat		77, 90	
	Düne, die		88	8d
	Dwarsgat		2, 7	
	Dwarsloch	1518	106	
E	Ehstersieler Fahrwasser[a]	1718	(105)	
	Ehstersieler Plate[a]	1718	105	
	Eider			10–11d
	Eidumtief	1116, 1215/16	103, 107	
	Eitzenbalje	2017	138	
	Ems		76, 77, 90	6–7f

[a] Die Schreibweise „Ehstensieler F. u. P." auf Top. Karte 1817 und Deutsche Seekarte 105 widerspricht der amtlichen Ortsnamenschreibweise Ehstersiel (Wohnplatzverz. Schleswig-Holstein 1958).

		1.25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	German Sea Chart No	Grid Square
	Emshörnfahrwasser		90	
	Emshörngat		90	
	Emshörnplate		90	
	Engelsand		106	
	Evermannsgat		90	
	Eversand	2213	87, 89	
	Eversandloch		2	
F	Falsches Tief	1917	105, 138	9–10d
	Fedderwarder Fahrwasser	2316	2	
	Fedderwarder Priel	2316, 2416	4, 7	
	Fiegenplate	1717/18[b]	105	
	Fischerbalje	2306	87, 90	
	Flacksellebrunn		88	
	Flackstrom	1818	105, 138	
	Flinthörn [Südwestende der Insel Langeoog]	2210	87, 89	
	Föhr [Insel]	1216, 1217 1316, 1317	107	9–10c
	Föhrer Ley	1217	107	
	Föhrer Schulter	1217	107	9–10c
	Franziusplate	2417	4	
	Franzosenloch	1718	(105), 61 S	
	Franzosensand	2019	138	
	Fuhle Schlot		103, 106	
G	Gat vom Wrack	2213	2, 87, 89	
	Geise, die	2608/09	77	7f
	Geisesteert	2608	77	
	Geise-Trennwerk [Leitwerk]	2608	77	
	Gelbsand	2017	138	10d–e
	Geldsackplate		87, 90	
	Geniusbank	2414	7, 8	
	Görtel s. Adriansgörtel			
	Greetsieler Außentief (Greetsieler Wattfahrwasser)	2408	90	
	Greetsieler Nacken	2408	90	
	Greetsieler Wattfahrwasser s Greetsieler Außentief			
	Griend			3f
	Gröde-Appelland [Insel]	1318	107	10c
	Gröninger Plate	2212	87, 89	
	Große Fliegenplate s. Fiegenplate			
	Große Plate	2316	4	
	Großer Knechtsand		2	9e
	Großer Vogelsand		138	9–10d–e
	Große Vollerwiekplate	(1718)	105	
	Großputengat		138	
H	Haak [Westende der Insel Juist]	2307	87, 90	
	Haaksgat	2307	87, 90	
	Habel [Insel]	1318	103, 107	
	Haken		138	
	Hakensand		138	10e
	Hamburger Hallig	1318	107	10c
	Hamburger Loch		88	
	Hamburger Sand	2408	87, 90	
	Harle	2212/2213	87, 89	8e
	Harleriff	2213	87, 89	
	Harlesieler Außentief	2212	87, 89	
	Harlesieler Wattfahrwasser	2212	87, 89	
	Hatzumer Sand	2610	76	
	Helgoland [Insel]	1813	3, 88	8d
	Helgoländer Bucht	1813	50	8–9d–e
	Helgoländer Loch			8d
	Helmsand [Insel]	1919	105	10d
	Helmsander Loch		105	8d
	Helmsandsteert	1919	50, 105	
	Heppenser Fahrwasser		7	
	Hestendragt	1017	103, 108	10c
	Heversteert	1517/18	103, 106	
	Heverstrom	1518/19	106	10d

[b] Hier: Große und kleine Fliegenplate

		1.25,000 Topographic Sheet No	*German Sea Chart No*	*Grid Square*
	Hitzsand	1617, 1717	105, 106	
	Hochsichtsand	1717/18	105	
	Hogstean		3, 88	
	Hohbrunn		88	
	Hohe Bank	2212	87, 89	
	Hohe Hörn, die		90	
	Hohenhörnsände (Hohenhörn)	2016	2, 138	
	Hohe Plate	2416	4	
	Hohe Plate	2308	89, 90	
	Hoher Rücken	2213	87, 89	
	Hoher Weg s Der Hohe Weg			
	Hohes Riff		87, 90	
	Hohes Riff	2309	87, 89	
	Hohe Ufer, das, s Das Hohe Ufer			
	Hohe Weg, Der	2315	7	9e
	Hohewegrinne		4, 7	
	Hohewegsbalje	2315/16	7	
	Holmer Fähre	1418	106	
	Holtknobs	1315	107	
	Hooge [Insel]	1417	107	10c
	Hoogeloch		107	
	Hooksielplate		7	
	Hopp	2306	90	
	Hornsbalje	2306	90	
	Hörnumloch	1215	103, 107	
	Hörnum-Odde	1215	103, 107	
	Hörnum-Reede		103, 107	
	Hörnumknobs	1215, 1315	103, 107	
	Hörnumtief	1116, 1215/16	103, 107	9c
	Horsbornplate		90	
	Horsbüllsteert	1117	103, 107	
	Hoyerkanal		103, 108	
	Hoyertief	0916	103, 108	
	Hubsand	1316	103, 107	
	Hullbalje	2211	87, 89	
	Hullplate	2213	87, 89	
	Hund, der		77	
	Hundebalje	2016	2, 38	
	Hundebalje	2315	7	
	Hungat	2311	87, 89	
	Hungatplate	2311	87, 89	
	Hunningensände	0916, 1016	103, 108	
	Husumer Au	1520	106	
I	Imsumplate	2416/17	4	
	Innenquage		106	
	Irrtief	0916	108	
	Isern Hinnerk	1717, 1817/18	105	
	Itzendorfplate	2308	87, 89, 90	
J	Jade, die			9e
	Jadebusen	2415, 2514/15	7	
	Jadeplate		2	
	Jadewatt	2515	(7)	
	Janssand	2211/12	87, 89	
	Jantjemoeplate	2308	89, 90	
	Jappensand	2415, 2515	7, 8	
	Japsand		106, 107	9c
	Juist [Insel]	2307/2308	87, 89, 90	6–7e
	Juister Balje (Juister Wattfahrwasser)	2307	87, 90	
	Juister Inselwatt	2307, 2308	87, 90	
	Juister Riff		87, 90	
	Juister Wattfahrwasser s Juister Balje			
	Jungnamenloch	1315	107	
	Jungnamensand	1316	103, 107	9c
K	Kachelotplate	2306	87, 90	
	Kaiserbalje		2, 7	
	Kalberdans		88	

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	German Sea Chart No	Grid Square
	Kalfamer [Ostende der Insel Juist]	2308	89, 90	
	Kalfamergat	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Kanalreede		139, 247	
	Karkhof		105, 138	
	Katinger Watt	1718/19	103, 105	
	Kinderbalje		138	
	Kleine Fliegenplate s Fiegenplate			
	Kleine Knechtsände		2	9e
	Kleine Robbenplate		2	
	Kleiner Vogelsand	2017	138	
	Kleine Vollerwiekplate	(1718)	105	
	Kleinwatt		2, 138	
	Klotzenloch		138, 139	10e
	Knechtsand s auch Großer K , Kleine Knechtsände			
	Kniepsand	1315	103, 107	9c
	Knockster Muhde	2608	77	
	Knockster Watt	2608	77	
	Knotentief s Knudedyb			
	Knudshörn	1416	106, 107	
	Kohlhof	1519	106	
	Kolumbusloch	1517	106	
	Königshafen	0916	108	
	Königsplate		87, 90	
	Kopersand	2307/08, 2408	87, 90	7e
	Kopersandpriel	2308	90	
	Korbbakensand	1518	106	
	Krabbenloch		138	
	Kratzsand		138, 139	
	Kronenloch	1819	105	
L	Landbalje	2212	87, 89	
	Landtief	0916	108	
	Landtief	1315	103, 107	
	Langeneß s. Nordmarsch-Langeneß			
	Langeoog [Insel]	2210/2211	87, 89	7–8e
	Langeooger Balje	2210/2211	87, 89	
	Langeooger Inselwatt	2211	87, 89	
	Langeooger Wattfahrwasser	2211	87, 89	
	Langer Jan	2213	87, 89	
	Langes Riff		2, 87, 89	
	Langlütjensand	2316, 2416	4	9–10e
	Legde (Legdedurchfahrt)	2308	89, 90	
	Leghörn		103	
	Ley		2, 87	
	Leybucht	2408	87, 90	7e
	Leysand	2408	90	
	Liinsand	1216	103, 107	
	Linnenplate	1718	105	
	Lister Ley	1016	103, 108	
	Lister Tief	0916	103, 108	9b
	Loreleybank		3, 88	
	Lorenzensplate	1517	106	
	Luechtergrund (Neuer)		138	
	Luechterloch		138	
	Lundenberger Sand	1519	106	
	Lütje Hörn [Insel]	2307	87. 90	6e
M	Maifeldsteert		7, 8	
	Manslagter Nacken	2508	90	
	Marientief	2414	8	
	Marner Plate	1917	138	10d
	Marschnack	1316/17	103, 107	
	Martensplate	2212	2, 87, 89	
	Medemgrund		139	
	Medeminsel s Medemsand-Insel			
	Medemsand	2118	139	10e
	Medemsand-Insel (Medeminsel)	2119	139	
	Meldorfer Bucht		49	10–11d
	Mellum (Alte Mellum)	2214	2, 7	9e
	Mellumbalje		2	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	*German Sea Chart No*	*Grid Square*
	Mellumplate		2	
	Mellumriffe	2214	2, 7	
	Memmert (Memmertsand) [Insel]	2307	87, 90	6e
	Memmertbalje	2307	87, 90	
	Memmertsand s. Memmert			
	Memmert-Wattfahrwasser		90	
	Mettgrund	1519/20	106	
	Meyers Legde		2	9e
	Midlumersand	2710	76	
	Minsener Balje	2213	2	
	Minsener Legde	2214	2	
	Minsener Oog	2213/14	2	
	Minsener Rinne		2	
	Minsener Sand		2	
	Misselwarder Tief		2, 4	
	Mitteleider	1717	(105)	
	Mittelgrund		105	
	Mittelgrund		138	
	Mittelhever	1517	106	9–10d
	Mittelloch		138	
	Mittellochsknob	1316	103, 107	
	Mittelplate		77	
	Mittelplate	2408	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	1917	138	
	Mittelplate		2	
	Mittelplate	2210	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	2211	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	1818	(105)	
	Mittelplaten	1517/18	106	
	Mittelpriel	2316	4	
	Mittelrinne		2	
	Mittelsand	2308	87, 90	
	Mittelsand	1116	103, 108	
	M-Loch		105	
	Modersloch		106, 107	
	Moorsteert	1419	106, 107	
	Morsumkliff	1116	103, 108	
	Morsum-Odde	1116	103	
	Möwensteert		87, 90	
	Munk		8a	
	Muschelbalje s. Alte Harle			
	Muschelbank	2213, 2214/2314	2, 89	
	Muschelloch		2, 49, 105	
N	Nathurn s. Nordhorn			
	Nathurnbrunn		88	
	Neiderplate	2210, 2310	87, 89	
	Neßmersieler Balje	2210	87, 89	
	Neucappeler Tief		2	
	Neue Plate	1017	103, 108	
	Neuer Luechtergrund		138	
	Neues Brack (Das Neue Brack)	2213	2, 87, 89	8–9e
	Neues Loch		87, 89, 90	7e
	Neue Weser		2	8–9e
	Neufahrwasser	1917	138	
	Neufelder Rinne		139	
	Neufelder Sand		139	
	Neufelder Watt	2019, 2119	139	10e
	Neuharlingersieler Außentief	2212	87, 89	
	Neuharlingersieler Wattfahrwasser s. Baklegde			
	Neumanns Loch	1818	105	
	Nouvortrapptief		103, 106	
	Neuwerk [Insel]	2016/2017	138	9–10e
	Neuwerker Fahrwasser		138	
	Neuwerker Loch	2016	2, 138	
	Neuwerker Watt	2016	2, 138	
	Norddeicher Wattfahrwasser	2308	90	
	Norderaue	1316	103, 107	9–10c

		1:25 000 Topographic Sheet No.	German Sea Chart No	Grid Square
	Norder Außentief (Norder Wattfahrwasser)	2408	90	
	Norderelbe		138	
	Nordergat		138	
	Nordergründe		2, 49	9e
	Nordergründe		87, 89	
	Nordergründe	2019	139	10e
	Norderhever	1418, 1517/18	106	10c–d
	Norderloch		105	
	Norderney [Insel]	2209	87, 89, 90	7e
	Norderneyer Inselwatt	2209	87, 89	
	Norderneyer Seegat		87, 89	
	Norderneyer Wattfahrwasser	1309	87, 89	
	Norderneygrund		89	6–7e
	Norderoog [Insel]	1417	103, 106	10c
	Norderoogsand	1416/17	103, 106	
	Norderpiep	1818	105	9d
	Norderplate	1419	103, 106, 107	
	Norderquage		106	
	Norderrinne		138	
	Nordertill	2016	2, 138	9e
	Norder Watt	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Norder Wattfahrwasser s Norder Außentief			
	Nordeversand		2	
	Nordhafenknoll		88	
	Nordhorn (Nathurn)		88	
	Nordland	2307	87, 90	
	Nordmands Dyb (Nordmannstief)		50	8a
	Nordmanns Grund	1316	103, 107	
	Nordmannstief s Nordmands Dyb			
	Nordmarsch-Langeneß (Langeneß) [Insel]	1317	103	10c
	Nord-Ostsee-Kanal	2120	49	
	Nordpriel	2316	4	
	Nordreede		3, 88	
	Nordschillgrund			2–3b
	Nordstrand	2209	89	
	Nordstrand [Insel]	1418, 1419 1518, 1519	103, 106	10c–d
	Nordstrander Watt	1518/19	103, 106	
	Nordstrandischmoor [Insel]	1518	106, 107	10c
	Nordwestgründe (Nordwestgrund)		87, 89	
O	Oberer Wittsand	2016	2	
	Obereversand		2	
	Ochsensand	1518	106	
	Ohlhövbrunn		88	
	Oldoogplate		2	
	Oldoogrinne		2	
	Ordinger Priel		106	
	Oss	2211	87, 89	
	Ossengoot		105	
	Ostbalje	2209, 2210	87, 89	
	Osterems	2307	87, 90	
	Osteriff		139	
	Osterley	1116/17	103	
	Osterriede	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Osterriff	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Ostertill		2, 138	
	Osterwehl		107	
	Osteversand		7	
	Ostfriesisches Gatje		77	
	Ostrinne		2	
	Othelloplate	2210	87, 89	
	Otzumer Balje	2211	87, 89	8e
P	Paapsandplate		77	
	Padingbütteler Tief		2	
	Pahlsknoll	1517, 1617	106	
	Pandertief	1016	103, 108	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	*German Sea Chart No*	*Grid Square*
	Peckbrunn		88	
	Pellworm [Insel]	1417, 1418	103, 106	10c–d
	Pellwormer Loch		106	
	Pellwormplate	1418	103, 106, 107	
	Pilsumer Watt	2408, 2508	87, 90	
	Pohnsbucht	1519	106	
	Porrenrünnel	1518	106	
	Purrenstrom	1718/19	103, 105	10d
	Puttschipploch		138	
Q	Quage s Innen-, Außen- und Norderquage			
R	Randzel	2306	87, 90	6e
	Randzelgat	2306	87, 90	6e
	Rantumbecken	1115	108	
	Rantumlohe	1115, 1215	103, 107	
	Raulingsand		103, 108	
	Repulsegrund		3, 88	
	Ridd, Das, s Das Ridd			
	Riffgat		90	
	Riffgat	2309	89	
	Risten	0916	103, 108	
	Robbenbrunn		3, 88	
	Robbennordsteert		2	
	Robbenplat	2315	(7)	
	Robbenplate	2016	2, 50	
	Robbenplate	2314	7	
	Robbenplate		4	
	Robbenplate	2316	2, 4	
	Robbenplate		77, 90	
	Robbenplate	2210	87, 89	
	Robbenplate		89, 90	
	Robbenplate	2210, 2211	87, 89	
	Robbenpriel	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Robbensand	1517	103, 106	
	Robbensände	1017	103, 108	
	Robinsbalje		2	
	Rocheleysand	1318	103, 107	
	Rochelsand	1617	103, 106	
	Rochelsteert	1617	105, 106	10d
	Roggsand	2211	87, 89	
	Roßhaken		(138)	
	Rote-Kliffbank			8–9b
	Roter Grund		2	
	Roter Sand		2	8–9c
	Rummelloch	1417/18, 1517	103, 106, 107	
	Rungholtsand	1418	103, 106, 107	
	Russenloch	1818	105	
	Rüstersieler Watt	2414	7, 8	
	Rute	2211	89	
	Ruteplate	2211	87, 89	8e
	Rütergat		106, 107	9d
	Rysumer Nacken	2608	77	
S	Sahlenburger Loch	2117	138	
	Salzsand	0916	103, 108	9b
	Sander Watt	2514	7	
	Sandhörn	1318	107	
	Sandloch		105	
	Sandshörn	1318, 1417	103, 106, 107	
	Schaafsand	2016	2, 138	
	Schapesand	2307	87, 90	
	Scharhörn [Insel]	2016	2, 138	9e
	Scharhörner Watt		2, 138	
	Scharhörnloch		2, 138	
	Scharhörnriff		2, 138	9e
	Schatzkammer		138	

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	German Sea Chart No.	Grid Square
	Scheels Plate		103, 106	
	Schellenlegde	2016/17	138	
	Schell-Legde	1818	105	
	Schillbalje	2212	87, 89	
	Schillhörn	2307	87, 89	
	Schillig-Reede		2	
	Schillplate	2307	87, 90	
	Schlauch		2	
	Schlickloch		138	
	Schluchter		87, 89	
	Schlütt	1318	107	
	Schmaltief		106	9d
	Schmarrener Loch		4	
	Scholl-Loch	1818	105	
	Schuitensand		87, 90	
	Schusterloch		105	
	Schwarze Gründe		2	
	Schweiburger Watt	2515	7	
	Schweinsrücken	1316	103, 107	
	Schweinsrücken	2408	90	
	Schweinsrücken	2514/15	7, 8	
	Seefelder Watt	2515	7	
	Seesand		106	
	Sellebrunn		3, 88	
	Sellebrunnknoll		3, 88	
	Sengwarder Balje	2315	7	
	Skittgatt		88	
	Solthörner Watt	2415	7, 8	
	Sommerkoogsteertloch	1919	105	
	Spaniergat		87, 89, 90	
	Spikaer Barre		2, 138	
	Spiekeroog [Insel]	2212	87, 89	8e
	Spiekerooger Wattfahrwasser	2212	87, 89	
	Spitzsand		139	
	Steenack	1116	103, 107	
	Steilsand	2017	138	
	Steingrund		3, 88	9d
	Steinhauser Tief (Dangaster Außentief)	2514	7	
	Steinloch	1517	106	
	Steinplate	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Steinplate	2210, 2310	87, 89	
	Stickers Gat		138	
	Stollhammer Watt	2415	7, 8	
	Störloch		138, 139	
	Strand, Der	1318, 1418	103, 107	
	Strandplate		2	
	Stüvers Plate	2211	87, 89	
	Süderaue	1416/17	103, 107	9–10c
	Süderhever	1517, 1617	103, 106	9d
	Süderoog [Insel]	1817	103, 106	10d
	Süderoogsand	1517	103, 106	9d
	Süderpiep		105	9d
	Süderpiepgrund		105	
	Süderriff	2211	87, 89	
	Südeversand		2	
	Südfahrwasser		105	
	Südfall [Insel]	1518	103, 106	10d
	Südliche Schlickbank			4–5b
	Südreede		3, 88	
	Südreede		139	
	Südwesthörn		105	
	Suezpriel	2416	4	
	Swinn	2212	87, 89	
	Swinnplate	2212	87, 89	
	Sylt [Insel]	0916, 1015 1016, 1115, 1116, 1215	61, 103	9b–c
	Sylt-Außenriff			7b
T	Tabaksplate		2, 87, 89	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No	*German Sea Chart No*	*Grid Square*
	Tegeler Plate		2	9e
	Tegeler Rinne		2	
	Telegraphenbalje	2213	2	
	Tertius (Tertiussand)	1818	105	10d
	Tertiussand		105	
	Tettenser Plate	2416/17	4	
	Theeknobs	1215	103, 107	9c
	Theeknobsrinne		103, 107	
	Tetenbüllspieker Loch		106	
	Tönninger Rack		105, 138	
	Trischen [Buschsand]	1917	138	10d
	Trischenflinge		138	
	Tümmlauer Bucht	1617/18	106	
	Tuschgründe		106	
	Tuschsände		106	
U	Unterer Wittsand	2016	2, 138	
	Untereversand		2	
	Uthörn	0916	108	
	Utlandshörner Wattfahrwasser	2408	90	
V	Vareler Tief	2515	7	
	Vareler Watt	2515	7	
	Verlorenhörn		105	
	Vollerwiekplate s Große V und Kleine V			
	Voorentief	2306	87, 90	
	Vortrapptief	1215, 1315	103, 107	9c
	Voslappwatt	2314, 2415	7, 8	
	Vyl		50	8b
W	Waddenser Balje		4	
	Waddenser Plate	2416	4	
	Wagengat	2309	87, 89	
	Wal		88	
	Wangerooge [Insel]	2213	2, 87, 89	8e
	Wangerooger Fahrwasser		87, 2	
	Wangerooger Plate		2	
	Warweroter Priel		105	
	Watumbucht		77	
	Wattfahrt		2	
	Weiße Bank			4–5c
	Weserfahrt		2, 49	
	Wesselburener Loch	1718, 1818	105	
	Wesselburener Watt	1718/19	105	
	Westerbalje		87, 90	
	Westerbrandung		103, 106, 107	
	Westerems	2306	87, 90	5e
	Westerheversand	1617	103, 106	
	Westerley	1016, 1116/17	103	
	Westerplate	1717	105	
	Westerriede	2308	89, 90	
	Westerriff	2210	87, 89	
	Westerriff	2211	87, 89	
	Westertill		2	
	Westerwehl		107	
	Westplate	2211	87, 89	
	Westrinne		2	
	Wichter Ee	2210	87, 89	
	Wittkliffbrunn		3, 88	
	Wittsandloch	2016	2, 138	
	Wöhrdener Loch		105	
	Wöhrdener Priel		105	
	Wremer Tief	2316	4	
	Würdeleher Sand	2515	7	
	Wurster Arm	2316	2	
	Wurster Watt	2316	2	9–10e
Z	Zehnerloch		138	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE BALTIC SEA COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

		1.25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*
A	Au-Haken		30, 32, 33
B	Breiter Barg		30, 31, 36, 43
	Breitling		38
	Brodersbyer Noor		41
	Buchhorst [Insel]	2031	37, 38
	Bukenoor	1425	41
	Burger See		30, 31, 36
D	Dassower See	2031	37, 38
E	Eckernförder Bucht		30, 32, 64
	Eitzgrund		30, 36, 43, 64
F	Fehmarn [Insel]	1532	30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Fehmarnbelt		30, 31, 36, 64
	Fehmarnsund	1532, 1632	30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Flensburger Förde	1123, 1124	14, 26, 30, 64
	Flüggesand		30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Frieshaken		26
G	Gabelsflach		30, 32, 43, 64
	Geltinger Bucht	1225/26	26, 30, 64, 100
	Geltinger Noor	1225/26	26, 100
	Gollendorfer Wiek	1532	43
	Große Breite	1424	41
	Große Holzwiek	2031	38
	Großenbroder Steinriff		31, 43
	Grödersbyer Noor	1325	
	Großer Binnensee	1629	43
	Grüner Grund		31
	Gunnebyer Noor	1424	41
H	Haddebyer Noor	1523	41
	Heikendorfer Bucht		32, 34
	Heikendorfer Reede		32, 34
	Helsenberg		41
	Hestholm [Insel]	1423	41
	Hoher Grund		31, 43
	Hölle, Die		38
	Holnishaken		26
	Holtenauer Reede		34
	Hörn, Die	1626	34
	Hohwachter Bucht	1630	30, 36, 43, 64
J	Jürgensschott	1225/26	26, 30, 100
K	Kalkgrund	1225/26	26, 30, 64, 100
	Kieholm [Insel]	1224	41
	Kieler Bucht	1326, 1426, 1527	30, 32, 43, 64
	Kieler Förde	1527	30, 32, 33, 64
	Kieler Hafen		30, 32, 34
	Kleine Breite	1423	26
	Klein Flintholm [Insel]	1325	41
	Kleine Holzwiek	2031	38
	Kleverberg		30, 32, 33
	Kringwerder		38
	Kolberger Heide	1527	30, 32, 43, 64
	Kunkel, Die		38
	Kupfermühlenbucht		26
L	Laboer Sand		32, 33
	Langballigbank		26
	Lemkenhafener Wiek	1532	31
	Lindauer Noor	1424	41
	Lindholm		41
	Lübecker Bucht	1930, 2031	36, 37, 38, 64
M	Madensand		33, 34
	Mecklenburger Bucht		31, 36, 37, 64

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE BALTIC SEA COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1.25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*
	Meierwiek		26
	Missunder Noor		41
	Mittelgrund		26, 30, 31, 32, 64
	Mövenberg [Insel]	1423	41
N	Neukirchengrund		26, 100
	Neustädter Bucht		35, 36, 37, 64
	Nißhaken		41
	Norderhaken		41
O	Ohrfeld [Ortsname]	1225/26	26
	Ohrfeldhaff [Ortsname]	1225/26	26
	Ohrfeld Haff (?)		26, 100
	Olpenitzer Noor	1325	32, 41
	Osbekgrund		26
	Orther Bucht		30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Orther Reede	1532	
Ö	Öjet		30, 31, 36, 64
P	Pötenitzer Wiek	2031	37, 38
	Presener Untiefe		31
	Puttgardenriff		30, 31, 36
S	Sagasbank		30, 31, 36, 64
	Schabernak		31, 43
	Scheerhafen	1626	34
	Schidenkind		26
	Schlei	1423, 1424	41
	Schleimünde	1326	
	Schleimünder Seegat		32, 41
	Schleisand		30, 32, 41
	Schlutuper Wiek	3120	38
	Schönhagener Grund		30, 32, 64
	Schwarzer Grund		31, 36, 64
	Schwentine	1627	34
	Schlendorfer Binnensee	1629, 1630	30, 43
	Siechenbucht		38
	Silk	2031	38
	Steinberg		35
	Steinriff		35, 36, 37
	Stexwiger Enge	1423	41
	Stickenhörn		34
	Stoller Grund		30, 32, 33, 64
	Stollergrundrinne (?)		30, 32, 33, 64
	Strander Bucht	1527	30, 32, 33
	Strander Grasberg		32, 33
	Stubberhaken		41
	Süderhaken		41
T	Teerhof Insel (?)		38
	Teerhofinsel (?)	2030	
	Teerhofsinsel (?)		
	Teschower Wiek	2031	38
	Tiipitzhafen	1626	34
	Torotterberg		34
	Trave	2030, 2031	37, 38, 64
	Travearm, Toter		38
V	Vinds Grav		31, 43
W	Wakenitz	2130	38
	Walkyriengrund		35, 36, 37, 64
	Warder [Insel]	1532	43
	Wardereck		43
	Warderhaken		31, 43
	Wesseker oder Dannauer See (?)	1630	30, 36, 43
	Winston Steine		14, 26, 30, 32, 100
	Wormshöfter Noor	1225/26, 1325	32, 41

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURES OF THE UNITED NATIONS GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES*

In the period after the 1975 meeting of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (UNGEGN), I sent communications to members asking for comments on the Working Group's programme. The objective was to develop statements on naming undersea and maritime features which reflected members' views and which could be presented to the Third United Nations Conference for possible adoption as international standards.

Specific attention was focused on the first two elements of the four-point programme:

(*a*) Establishment of policies and principles by which undersea and maritime features could be named; and

(*b*) Development of a form by which new names could be proposed.

Members will recall that United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) policies and principles and a BGN proposal form were offered as models.

As of 15 May 1977, only a few countries had expressed opinions regarding principles, a fact that could suggest that most of the members of the Working Group were satisfied with the BGN documents. Of those responding (Canada, the Federal Republic of Germany and the USSR), only Canada presented suggestions that seemed to call for any revision of the BGN material. Accordingly, representatives of the United States and Canada worked to prepare a statement that could meet the requirements both nations felt important. As a result, a new statement of principles and procedures was developed, the content of which varies only slightly from the original BGN text. The chief difference is one of format. At the same time, some minor changes were made in the BGN proposal form.

A recommendation submitted by the USSR was later added to the statement of principles and procedures. It recommends that specific elements of names of features not be translated from the form given by the nation providing the accepted name.

The new statement of principles and procedures, called "Proposed Guidelines for the Standardization of Undersea and Maritime Feature Names for International Use", is presented with this letter (see annex I). As Convenor of the Working Group, I recommend that it be supported by the UNGEGN for further recommendation to the United Nations Conference. I also recommend that the proposal form (annex II) be endorsed.

I would like to point out that the sections of the statement concerning principles and procedures make no distinction between undersea and maritime features. My review of existing literature shows that virtually all of the concern of the Working Group has been directed towards undersea features, and with good reason, for there is little requirement to name maritime features. For this reason, practically all of the guidance is oriented towards sea-bottom features, even though working definitions of the two categories of features are provided in the general part of the guidelines.

There is, nevertheless, a requirement of some magnitude for the Working Group to examine the problem of names of "international" maritime features that extend to areas of national sovereignty where they may have different names. Related to this is the problem of features common to two or more sovereign areas that have different names. Material sent to the Convenor by the Federal Republic of Germany made reference to such problems, and I recommend that the Working Group add this concern to its programme.

Finally, although generic terms were not the subject of the Working Group's concern during the past two years (but were part of the general work programme), I have taken the liberty of presenting, in annex III, a list of terms and their definitions recently worked out on a provisional basis by Canada and the United States. While not all of them necessarily represent official Canadian terms, they have been endorsed by the United States. I recommend the UNGEGN approve these terms and definitions and recommend them to the United Nations Conference for international use.

In summary, I submit for your review and endorsement:

(*a*) "Proposed Guidelines for the Standardization of Undersea and Maritime Feature Names for International Use" (annex I);

(*b*) Recommended Undersea or Maritime Feature Name Proposal Form (annex III); and

(*c*) A list of proposed Undersea Feature Terms and Definitions.

In the event that the basic documents cited here are adopted by the Conference, I recommend that members proceed with the fourth point of the original programme, namely, the translation of the documents into appropriate languages. I also recommend that the Committee add to its programme the matter of naming maritime features that include both national and international waters.

Annex I

PROPOSED GUIDELINES FOR THE STANDARDIZATION OF UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURE NAMES FOR INTERNATIONAL USE

GENERAL

(*a*) International concern for naming undersea and maritime features is limited to those features entirely or mainly (more than 50 per cent) outside waters under the jurisdiction of sovereign states;

(*b*) "Undersea feature" is a part of the ocean floor or sea-bed that has measurable relief or is delimited by relief "Maritime feature" is a

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Convenor, Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.24.

part of the surface of the ocean or sea that has distinguishable characteristics;

(*c*) Names used for many years may be accepted even though they do not conform to normal principles of nomenclature;

(*d*) Names approved by sovereign States in waters beyond national limits (i e , international waters) should be accepted by other States if the names have been applied in conformance with internationally accepted principles. Names applied by States within their sovereign limits should be recognized by other States;

(*e*) In the event of a conflict, the States most directly involved should resolve the matter. Where two names have been applied to the same feature, the older name should be accepted. Where a single name has been applied to two different features, the feature named first should retain the name;

(*f*) Names not in the writing system of the country applying the names on maps or other documents should be transliterated according to the system adopted by the national authority applying the names;

(*g*) Sovereign States may utilize their preferred versions of exonyms;

(*h*) Only those undersea features that can be delimited by isobaths should be named.

PRINCIPLES FOR NAMING FEATURES

Specific terms

(*a*) Short and simple terms (or names) are preferable;

(*b*) The first choice of a specific term, where feasible, should be one associated with a geographical feature; e.g., Aleutian Ridge, Aleutian Trench, Peru-Chile Trench, Barrow Canyon;

(*c*) Specific terms for other features can be used to commemorate ships or other vehicles, expeditions or scientific institutes involved in the discovery of the feature. Where a ship name is used, it should be that of the discovering ship, or if that has been previously used for a similar feature, it should be the name of the ship verifying the feature, e g , San Pablo Seamount, Atlantis II Seamounts;

(*d*) Names of living persons are permissible. Use of this type of name, however, should be limited to the following:

(i) Persons associated with the discovery or verification of the feature;

(ii) Persons involved in the interpretation of data leading to the recognition of the unique character of a feature; and

(iii) Persons who have made significant contributions to the knowledge of the oceans;

(*e*) Groups of like features may be named collectively for specific categories (historical persons, mythical figures, stars, constellations, fish, birds, animals, etc) Examples are as follows:

Musicians' seamounts	Bach Seamount, Brahms Seamount, Schubert Seamount
Electricians' seamounts	Volta Seamount, Ampere Seamount, Galvani Seamount
Ursa Minor Ridge and Trough Province	Suhail Ridge, Kochab Ridge, Polaris Trough;

(*f*) Descriptive names are acceptable, particularly when they refer to distinguishing characteristics (e.g., Hook Ridge, Horseshoe Seamounts);

(*g*) Names of well-known or large features that are applied to other features should have the same spelling

(*h*) Specific elements of names should not be translated from the language of the nation providing the accepted name.

Generic terms

(*a*) Generic terms should be selected and defined to reflect physical characteristics of features. Various theories of genesis may also be considered in naming or defining features when genetic information is essential to a comprehension of a feature's character;

(*b*) Generic terms should be in the language of the nation applying the name to a product;

(*c*) It should be recognized that as ocean mapping continues, features will be discovered for which existing terminology is not adequate. New terms required to describe these features should conform to the guidelines cited under point (*a*).

PROCEDURES FOR NAMING FEATURES

(*a*) Sovereign States applying names to unnamed features in international waters should adhere to internationally accepted principles and procedures;

(*b*) The attached form (annex II) is recommended as a model for new proposals;

(*c*) Prior to the naming of a feature, identification of its character, extent and position shall have been established sufficiently for identification Positions should be given in terms of geographic co-ordinates. It it is necessary to refer to a feature before such full identifiability has been established, it is suggested that the reference be by co-ordinates and generic term with the additions of "(PA)"—"Position Approximate"—after the co-ordinates if the position is not adequately established and "(?)" after the generic term if the nature of the feature is in some doubt;

(*d*) New names should be approved by the appropriate national authorities before being published;

(*e*) If a State has reason to change the name of a feature, information justifying the change should be circulated to other concerned States. If there is opposition to a name change, the involved States should communicate with each other to resolve the question;

(*f*) States actively engaged in naming undersea features should regularly publicize their names decisions;

(*g*) States naming features within their sovereign limits should conform to the principles and procedures stated above.

Annex II

UNDERSEA OR MARITIME FEATURE NAME PROPOSAL

Ocean or sea____ _____ Name proposed_____

Location of midpoint: Lat_____ (N) (S), Long_____ (E) (W);

_____ kilometres in_____ direction from _____

Description: Kind of feature_____

Identifying or categorizing characteristics (size, shape, dimensions, least depth, steepness etc —use additional co-ordinates for extremities of lineal features)_____

_____

_____

Associated features_____

_____

_____

Chart reference:

Shown and named on chart (map)_____

Shown but not named on chart (map)_____

Not shown but within area covered by_____

Reason for choice of name:

If for a person, state how associated with the feature to be named_____

Discovery facts: Date_____; by (individuals or ship) _____

By means of (equipment) _____

Navigation used _____

Estimated positional accuracy in nautical miles _____

Description of survey (track spacing, line crossings, grid network etc.) _____

Nature and repository of other survey activities (dredge samples, cores, magnetics, gravity, photographs etc.) _____

Supporting material: Enclose, if possible, a sketch map of the survey area, profiles of the feature etc. Reference to prior publication, if any

SUBMITTED BY _____

Date _____

Address _____

CONCURRED IN BY (if applicable)_____

Address _____

Annex III

PROPOSED UNDERSEA FEATURE TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Apron	A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface on the sea floor, particularly found around groups of islands or *seamounts*.
Bank	An elevation of the sea floor located on a *shelf* and over which the depth of water is relatively shallow but sufficient for safe surface navigation.
Basin	A depression more or less equidimensional in form and of variable extent.
Borderland	A region adjacent to a continent, normally occupied by or bordering a *shelf*, that is highly irregular with depths well in excess of those typical of a *shelf*.
Canyon	A relatively narrow, deep depression with steep sides, the bottom of which has a continuous slope.
Continental rise	A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface, rising toward the foot of the *slope*.
Cordillera	An entire mountain system, including all the subordinate *ranges*, interior *plateaus* and *basins*.
Escarpment	An elongated and comparatively steep slope separating flat or gently sloping areas (Also called a *scarp*.)
Fan	A relatively smooth feature normally sloping away from the lower termination of a *canyon*.
Fracture zone	An extensive linear zone of unusually irregular topography of the sea floor characterized by more than one kind of feature such as large *seamounts*, steep-sided or asymmetrical *ridges*, *troughs* or *escarpments*.
Gap	A narrow break in a *ridge* or *rise*.
Guyot	Alternate term for a *tablemount*.
Hill	An elevation rising generally less than 200 metres (100 fathoms).
Hole	A small depression of the sea floor.
Knoll	An elevation less than 1,000 metres (or 500 fathoms) and of limited extent across the summit.
Levee	An embankment bordering one or both sides of a *canyon*, *valley* or *seachannel*.
Moat	An annular depression that may not be continuous, located at the base of many *seamounts*, islands and other isolated elevations.
Mountains	A well-delineated subdivision of a large and complex positive feature.
Peak	A prominent individual pointed top on a *ridge* or a complex *seamount*.
Plain	A flat, gently sloping or nearly level region.
Plateau	A comparatively flat-topped elevation, of considerable extent across the summit and usually rising more than 200 metres (or 100 fathoms) on at least one side.
Province	A region identifiable by a group of similar physiographic features, whose characteristics are markedly in contrast with surrounding areas.

Range	A series of associated *ridges* or *seamounts*.
Reef	A consolidated rock hazard to navigation with a least depth of 30 metres (or 15 fathoms) or less.
Ridge	A long, narrow elevation with steep sides
Rise	A long, broad elevation that rises gently and generally smoothly.
Saddle	A low part, resembling in shape a saddle, in a *ridge* or between contiguous *seamounts*
Scarp	Alternate term for *escarpment*
Seachannel	A long, narrow, shallow, U-shaped or V-shaped depression of the sea floor, usually occurring on a gently sloping *plain* or *fan*
Seamount	An elevation rising 1,000 metres (or 500 fathoms) or more and of limited extent across the summit
Shelf	A zone adjacent to a continent or an island that extends from the low water line to a depth at which there is usually a marked increase of slope to greater depth
Shoal	A hazard to navigation with a least depth of 30 metres (or 15 fathoms) or less, composed of unconsolidated material
Sill	The low part of a *gap* or *saddle* separating *basins*
Slope	The descending slope seaward from the *shelf* edge to the beginning of a *rise* or to the point where there is a general reduction in slope.
Spur	A subordinate elevation, *ridge* or *rise* projecting outward from a larger feature
Tablemount	A *seamount* having a comparatively smooth flat top. (Also called *Guyot*.)
Terrace	A bench-like feature bordering an undersea feature.
Trench	A long, narrow, deep depression with relatively steep sides.
Trough	A long depression normally of less relief than a *trench*.
Valley	A relatively shallow, wide depression, the bottom of which usually has a continuous gradient. This term is generally not used for features that have canyon-like characteristics for a significant portion of their extent

COMPARISON OF THE LIMITS AND NAMES OF OCEANS AND SEAS AS RECOMMENDED BY THE INTERNATIONAL HYDROGRAPHIC ORGANIZATION (IHO) AND USED BY THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY, THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC AND THE NETHERLANDS

Report presented by the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division*

International Hydrographic Organization, Monte Carlo *Special Publication No. 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg* *Chart No. 2800* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst Rostock* *Publication No. 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM), Badhuisweg 's-Gravenhage* – –
Arctic Ocean	Nordpolarmeer	Arktischer Ozean	Noordelijke IJszee
The North-western Passages	Nordwestpassagen	Same	Noordwestelijke Doorvaart
Beaufort Sea	Beaufortsee	Same	Beaufort Zee
Chuckchi Sea	Tschuktschensee	Same, other limits	Tsjoektsjen Zee
—	Beringstraße, without limits	Same	Bering Straat
—	—	pr. de Longa, without limits	—
East Siberian Sea	Ostsibirische See	Ostsibirische See (Vostočno-Sibirskoje more), other limits	Oostsiberische Zee
—	Laptewstr., without limits	pr. Dmitrija Lapteva, without limits	Laptev Straat
Laptev Sea (or Nordenskjöld Sea)	Laptevsee oder Nordenskjöldsee	Laptevsee (More Laptevych), other limits	Laptev Zee; Nordenskjöld Zee
—	Wilkizkistraße, without limits	pr. Vilkickogo, without limits	Wilkitski Straat
Kara Sea	Karasee	Karasee (Karskoje more)	Kara Zee (Karische Zee)
—	Karastr., without limits	pr. Karskije Vorota, without limits	Karische Poort
—	Jugorstr., without limits	—	Joegor Straat (Straat Waigatsj)
North Atlantic Ocean	Nordatlantischer Ozean	Same	(Noord) Atlantische Oceaan
—	Petschorasee, without limits	Pečorskoje more, without limits	Petsjora Baai
White Sea	Weißes Meer	Weißes Meer (Beloje more)	Witte Zee
—	Matotschkinstr., without limits	pr. Matočkin Šar, without limits	Matotsjkin Straat
Barentsz Sea	Barentssee	Same	Barents Zee
—	Olgastraße, without limits	Olgastretet, without limits	Straat Olga
—	Hinlopenstr., without limits	Same	Straat Hinlopen
—	Europäisches Nordmeer	Same	—
Greenland Sea	Grönlandsee	Same	Groenland Zee
—	Dänemarkstraße, without limits	Same	Denemarken Straat
Norwegian Sea	Norwegische See	Same	Noorse Zee
North Sea	Nordsee	Same	Noordzee
—	Nördl. Nordsee	Same	—
—	Mittlere Nordsee	Same	—
—	Westl. Teil	Same	—
—	Östl. Teil	Same	—
—	Deutsche Bucht, without limits	—	Helgolander Bocht (Duitse Bocht)
—	Südl. Nordsee	Same	—
—	Hoofden, without limits	Same	De Hoofden
—	Str. v. Dover, without limits	Same	Straat Dover, Nauw van Calais
English Channel	Der Kanal	Kanal	Het Kanal

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF 69/L 101

International Hydrographic Organization. Monte Carlo *Special Publication No 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst Rostock* *Publication No 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM). Badhuisweg 's-Gravenhage*
Celtic Sea	Keltische See	—	Keltische Zee
Bristol Channel	Bristolkanal	Same	Kanaal van Bristol
Irish Sea	Irische See	Same	Ierse Zee
Inner Seas of the West Coast of Scotland	Schottische See	Same	—
Skagerrak	Skagerrak	Same	Skagerrak
Kattegat	Kattegat	Same, part of the Ostsee	Kattegat
Baltic Sea	Ostsee	Ostsee, otherwise divided in:	Oostzee
Sound and Belts	Belte u. Sund	Beltsee, Arkonasee and Bornholmsee (westl., östl.)	Sond, Grote Belt, Kleine Belt
—	Südliche Ostsee		—
—	Westl. Teil		—
—	Mittl. Teil		—
—	Nördliche Ostsee		—
Gulf of Riga	Rigaischer Meerbusen	Rigaischer Meerbusen (Rižskij zaliv) other limits	Golf van Riga
Gulf of Finland	Finnischer Meerbusen	Same	Finse Golf
—	Ålandsee, without limits	Alandsee, with limits	—
—	—	Schärenmeer, with limits	—
Gulf of Bothnia	Bottnischer Meerbusen	Same	Bothnische Golf
—	Bottensee	Same	—
—	Bottenwiek	Same	—
Bay of Biscay	Golf von Biskaya	Golf von Biscaya	Golf van Biscaye (Golf van Gascogne)
Strait of Gibraltar	Str. v. Gibraltar	Same	Straat van Gibraltar
Mediterranean Sea, Western Basin	Westl. Mittelmeer	Same	(West) Middellandse Zee
Alboran Sea	Alboranmeer	Same	Alboran Zee
Balearic (Iberian Sea)	Balearenmeer or Iberisches Meer	Same	Balearen Zee (Iberische Zee)
Ligurian Sea	Ligurisches Meer	Same	Ligurische Zee
Tyrrhenian Sea	Thyrrhenisches Meer	Same	Tyrrheense Zee
Mediterranean Sea, Eastern Basin	Östliches Mittelmeer	Same	(Oost) Middellandse Zee
Adriatic Sea	Adriatisches Meer	Same	Adriatische Zee
Ionian Sea	Ionisches Meer	Same	Ionische Zee
—	Libysches Meer	Same	—
—	Levantisches Meer	Same	—
Aegean Sea	Ägäisches Meer	Same	(A)egeische Zee
Sea of Marmara	Marmara Meer	Marmara Meer (Marmara Denizi)	Zee van Marmara
Black Sea	Schwarzes Meer	Same	Zwarte Zee
Sea of Azow	Asowsches Meer	Same	Zee van Asov
—	Kaspisches Meer	Same	Kaspische Zee
Gulf of Guinea	Golf von Guinea	Same	Golf van Guinee (Bocht van Guinee)
—	Irmingersee, without limits	Same	—
Baffin Bay	Baffinbai	Baffinbucht	Baffins Baai
Lincoln Sea	—	Lincolnsee	Lincoln Zee
Davis Strait	Davisstraße	Same	Straat Davis
Hudson Strait	Hudsonstraße	Same	Hudson Straat
—	Foxkanal, without limits	—	Fox Kanaal
Hudson Bay	Hudsonbai	Hudsonbucht (Hudson Bay)	Hudson Baai
Labrador Sea	Labradorsee	Same	Labrador Zee
Gulf of St. Lawrence	St.-Lorenz-Golf	Same	Sint Laurens Baai (Golf van Sint Lawrence)
Bay of Fundy	Fundybai	Fundybucht	Fundy Baai
—	Sargassosee, without limits	Same	Sargasso Zee
—	Bahamasee, without limits	Same	—
—	Floridastr., without limits	Same	Straat Florida
Gulf of Mexico	Golf von Mexiko	Same	Golf van Mexico
—	Yukatameer, without limits	Yucatanmeer, with limits	—
Caribbean Sea	Karibisches Meer	Same	Caraibische Zee
South Atlantic Ocean	Südatlantischer Ozean	Same	(Zuid) Atlantische Oceaan
Rio de La Plata	Rio-de-la-Plata-Bucht	Rio de la Plata	Rio de la Plata
—	Südpolarmeer, without limits	—	Zuidelijke IJszee
	—	Atlantisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	Drakestraße, without limits	Same	Straat Drake

International Hydrographic Organization Monte Carlo *Special Publication No 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst Rostock* *Publication No 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM) Badhuisweg s-Gravenhage*
—	Scotiameer (Südantillenmeer), without limits	Scotiameer or Südantillenmeer, with limits	—
—	Weddellmeer (Weddellsee), without limits	Weddellsee, with limits	Weddell Zee
—	—	Indisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	—	Davissee, without limits	Davis Zee
—	—	Pazifisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	Rossmeer (Ross-See), without limits	Ross-See, with limits	Ross Zee
—	—	Amundsensee, with limits	Amundsen Zee
—	Bellingshausensee, without limits	Same, with limits	Bellingshausen Zee
Indian Ocean	Indischer Ozean	Same	Indische Oceaan
Gulf of Suez	G v Sues	G v Suez	Golf van Suez
Gulf of Aqaba	G v Akaba	Same	Golf van Akaba
Red Sea	Rotes Meer	Same	Rode Zee
Gulf of Aden	Golf v Aden	Same	Golf van Aden
Mozambique Channel	Mosambikkanal	Str v Mocambique	Straat van Mozambique
Gulf of Iran (Persian Gulf)	Persischer Golf	Same	Perzische Golf
Gulf of Oman	G v Oman	Same	Golf van Oman
Arabian Sea	Arabisches Meer	Same	Arabische Zee
Laccadive Sea	Lakkadiven Meer	Same	—
—	Palkstr without limits	Same	—
Bay of Bengal	Bengalisches Meer (Golf von Bengalen)	Bengalisches Meer	Golf van Bengalen
Andaman or Burma Sea	Andamanensee	Andamanisches Meer	Andamanse Zee
Malacca Strait	Malakkastr	Str v Malakka	Straat Malakka
Great Australian Bight	Große Australische Bucht	Same	Grote Australische Golf (Bocht)
North Pacific Ocean	Nördlicher Pazifischer Ozean (Nördl Stiller Ozean)	Nordpazifischer Ozean	Noordelijke Stille (Grote) Oceaan
Gulf of California	Golf von Kalifornien	Same	Golf van Californië
The Coastal Waters of Southeast Alaska and British Columbia	—	Küstengewässer von Südostalaska und Westkanada, with limits	—
Gulf of Alaska	Golf von Alaska	Same	Golf van Alaska
Bering Sea	Beringmeer	Same	Bering Zee
Sea of Okhotsk	Ochotskisches Meer	Same	Zee van Ochotsk
Japan Sea	Japanisches Meer	Same	Japanse Zee
Inland Sea	Japanische Inlandsee	Innere Japanische See	Japanse Binnenzee
Yellow Sea	Gelbes Meer	Same	Gele Zee
Eastern China Sea	Ostchinesisches Meer	Same	Oostchinese Zee
Philippine Sea	Philippinenmeer	Same	Philippijnen Zee
South China Sea	Südchinesisches Meer	Same	Zuidchinese Zee
Singapore Strait	Singapurstr	Straße von Singapore	Straat Singapore
Sulu Sea	Sulusee	Same	Soeloe Zee (Mindoro Zee)
Celebes Sea	Sulawesisee (Celebessee)	Sulawesisee	Celebes Zee
South Pacific Ocean	Südlicher Pazifischer Ozean (Südl Stiller Ozean)	Südpazifischer Ozean	Zuidelijke Stille (Grote) Oceaan
Java Sea	Javasee	Djawasee (Laut Djawa)	Java Zee
Bali Sea	Balisee	Balisee (Laut Bali)	Bali Zee
Makassar Strait	Makassarstraße	Makassarstraße (Selat Makassar)	Straat Makassar
Flores Sea	Floressee	Floressee (Laut Flores)	Flores Zee
Savu Sea	Sawusee	Sawussee (Laut Sawu)	Sawoe Zee
Gulf of Boni	G v. Bone	G v. Bone (Teluk Bone)	Golf van Bone (Boni)
Banda Sea	Bandasee	Bandasee (Laut Banda)	Banda Zee
Molukka Sea	Malukusee (Molukkensee)	Malukusee (Laut Maluku)	Molukse Zee
Gulf of Tomini	G v Tomini	G v Tomini (Teluk Tomini)	Golf van Tomini (Gorontalo)
Halmahera Sea	Halmaherasee	Halmaherasee (Laut Halmahera)	Zee van Halmahera
Ceram Sea	Seramsee (Ceramsee)	Seramsee (Laut Seram)	Ceram Zee
Timor Sea	Timorsee	Same	Timor Zee
Arafura Sea	Arafurasee	Same	Arafoera Zee (Alfoeren Zee)
—	Golf v Carpentaria, without limits	Same, with limits	Golf van Carpentaria
—	Torresstr., without limits	Same	Torres Straat
Bismarck Sea	Bismarcksee	Same	Bismarck Zee (Bocht van goeden hoopen)
Solomon Sea	Salomonensee	Same	Solomon Zee

International Hydrographic Organization. Monte Carlo *Special Publication No. 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst Rostock* *Publication No. 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM) Badhuisweg 's-Gravenhage*
Coral Sea	Korallensee	Same	Karaalzee
—	—	Fidschisee, with limits	—
Tasman Sea	Tasmansee	Same	Tasman Zee
Bass Strait	Bass-Str	Same	Bass Straat
—	Magellanstr., without limits	Magalhaesstr. without limits	Straat Magellaan

UNDERSEA FEATURE TERMINOLOGY RECOMMENDED FOR USE IN GEBCO, FIFTH EDITION

Report presented by the International Hydrographic Organization (IHO)*

The Joint IHO/IOC Guiding Committee on the General Bathymetric Chart of the Oceans (GEBCO) in 1974 appointed a Sub-Committee on Geographical Names and Nomenclature of Ocean Bottom Features. The purpose of this Sub-Committee is to advise on the names and nomenclature to be used on the GEBCO 1:10,000 chart series.

This Sub-Committee has made an exhaustive study of the many lists of definitions of undersea feature terms presently found in or historically used by National Boards of Geographic Names, international and intergovernmental organizations, and the marine geoscience and hydrographic literature, including widely recognized glossaries of geological terms.

The list that follows comprises terms that are defined as closely as possible to correspond to their usage in the cited references, taken from the literature of ocean science, hydrography and exploration. In developing the definitions, it was recognized that modern investigations at sea have the advantage of using very advanced instrumentation and technology that enables a more precise description of certain features than was previously possible. There has also been an attempt to limit the usage of precise physical dimensions in the definition of features. In preference, words that indicate relative sizes such as extensive, large, limited and small have been used. In addition, the definitions are based almost exclusively on a geomorphological description of the features themselves rather than making use of their navigational connotation.

The Sub-Committee recognizes that as ocean mapping continues, features will be discovered that are not adequately defined in this list and that therefore new terms will have to be added. In the same sense, the Sub-Committee is aware that many named features, such as "cap", "deep" and "swell", have widely accepted historical usage. However, the Sub-Committee has not attempted to define them because the description of these particular features is included among the present definitions.

Le Comité directeur mixte OHI/COI de la Carte générale bathymétrique des océans (GEBCO) a constitué en 1974 un Sous-Comité des noms géographiques et de la nomenclature des formes du relief océanique. Le rôle de ce Sous-Comité est de donner des conseils en ce qui concerne les noms et la nomenclature à utiliser sur la série des cartes au 1:10,000 de la GEBCO.

Le Sous-Comité a effectué une étude exhaustive des nombreuses listes de définitions des termes de la morphologie sous-marine actuellement en usage ou qui ont été utilisés dans le passé par les comités nationaux des noms géographiques, par les organisations internationales et intergouvernementales, dans les ouvrages de géoscience marine et d'hydrographie et dans les glossaires de termes géologiques, largement reconnus.

La liste ci-après comprend des termes qui ont été définis pour correspondre aussi près que possible à leur usage dans les références citées provenant d'ouvrages de science océanique, d'hydrographie et d'exploration. En développant ces définitions, il est apparu que les recherches modernes à la mer ont la possibilité d'utiliser des équipements et des techniques très avancés qui permettent maintenant d'obtenir, pour certaines formes du relief, une description beaucoup plus précise qu'autrefois. On a aussi essayé de limiter l'usage de dimensions physiques précises dans la définition des formes. On a utilisé de préférence des qualificatifs qui indiquent des dimensions relatives, tels que étendu, grand, limité, faible. En outre, les définitions sont basées presque exclusivement sur une description géomorphologique des formes elles-mêmes plutôt que sur leur signification du point de vue de la navigation.

Le Sous-Comité reconnaît que la cartographie océanique est en évolution, qu'on découvrira des formes qui ne sont pas définies d'une façon appropriée dans la présente liste et que, par conséquent, de nouveaux termes devront y être ajoutés. Dans le même ordre d'idées, le Sous-Comité est convaincu que de nombreuses formes telles que *cap*, *deep* et *swell* ont un usage historique largement reconnu. Toutefois, le Sous-Comité ne les a pas définies parce que la description de ces formes particulières est déjà incluse parmi les diverses définitions.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.100.

Contained in the list of definitions, and marked by an asterisk, are a number of synonymous and descriptive terms commonly used in literature. The terms in italics are defined and suggested for depiction on maps. The Sub-Committee has also noted that many of the terms will appear on maps or charts prefixed by appropriate geographic names.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the examples given do not necessarily appear in the biographic references quoted.

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Abyssal plain

A flat, gently sloping or nearly level region at abyssal depths

e.g.: Biscay Abyssal Plain
Ref.: Heezen, Bruce C., and A. S. Laughton (1963). "Abyssal plains", in M. N. Hill, ed., *The Sea*, vol. 3, pp. 312–364

Apron
* Archipelagic Apron

A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface of the sea floor, particularly found around groups of islands and seamounts

e.g.: Marquesas Archipelagic Apron
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1956). "Archipelagic aprons", *Bull. Amer. Assoc. Petroleum Geol.*, vol. 40, pp. 2195–2210

Bank

An area of positive relief, over which the depth of water is relatively shallow but normally sufficient for safe surface navigation

e.g.: Georges Bank
Ref.: See *shoal*

Basin

A depression more or less equidimensional in plan and of variable extent

e.g.: Brazil Basin
Ref.: Maury, M. F. (1854). *Bathymetrical Map of the North Atlantic Basin*, with contour lines drawn in at 1,000, 2,000, 3,000 and 4,000 fathoms

This term (in French) appears in the first edition of GEBCO

Canyon
* Submarine Canyon

A relatively narrow, deep depression with steep sides, the bottom of which has a continuous slope

e.g.: Hudson Canyon

La liste de ces définitions contient, marqué d'un astérisque, un certain nombre de termes synonymes et descriptifs d'un usage courant dans les bibliographies. Les termes en italiques sont définis et suggérés pour être utilisés sur les cartes géographiques. Le Sous-Comité a également pris note que ces termes figureront sur les cartes géographiques et marines accompagnés des noms géographiques appropriés.

Il y a lieu d'attirer l'attention sur le fait que les exemples donnés ne figurent pas nécessairement dans les références bibliographiques indiquées.

TERMES ET DEFINITIONS

Plaine
Plaine abyssale

Région de grande profondeur où le fond est sensiblement plat, horizontal ou peu incliné

Glacis
* Glacis péri-insulaire

Déclivité de faible pente généralement unie, que l'on trouve particulièrement autour de groupements d'îles et de monts sous-marins

Banc

Elévation d'une certaine étendue audessus de laquelle la profondeur d'eau est relativement faible, mais ne présente pas de danger pour la navigation courante de surface

Bassin

Dépression de forme générale plus ou moins arrondie et d'étendue variable

Canyon
* Canyon sous-marin

Dépression relativement étroite, profonde et à flancs escarpés, dont le thalweg présente une pente continue

Ref.: Shepard, Francis P., and Robert F. Dill (1966). *Submarine Canyons and other Sea Valleys*. Rand-McNally, Chicago, 381 pp.

Channel
* Deep Sea Channel

A river valley-like, elongated depression in an ocean basin, commonly found in fans or cones

e.g.: Maury Channel
Ref.: Hurley, R. J. (1960), "The geomorphology of abyssal plains in the northeast Pacific Ocean", *Scripps Inst. Ocean. Ref.* 60–7, 105 pp. (unpublished manuscript)

Chenal
* Chenal sous-marin

Dépression allongée dans un bassin océanique, morphologiquement semblable à une vallée terrestre, souvent trouvée sur les cônes

Continental borderland
* Borderland

A region adjacent to a continent, normally occupied by or bordering a shelf, that is highly irregular with depths well in excess of those typical of a shelf

e.g.: Coastal region off California
Ref.: Shepard, F. P., and K. O. Emery (1941). "Submarine topography off the California coast: canyons and tectonic Interpretations", *Geol. Soc. America Spec. Paper* 31, 171 pp.

Bordure continentale

Région adjacente à un continent, constituant ou bordant d'ordinaire une plate-forme continentale, mais offrant un aspect très irrégulier et des profondeurs bien supérieures à celles d'une plate-forme typique

Continental margin

The zone, generally consisting of the shelf, slope and rise, separating the continent from the deep sea bottom

Marge continentale
Précontinent

Zone séparant le continent émergé des grands fonds océaniques, constituée généralement de la plate-forme continentale, de la pente et du glacis

Continental rise

A gentle slope rising from the oceanic depths towards the foot of the continental slope

Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959). "The floors of the oceans: 1, The North Atlantic", *Geol. Soc. Amer. Spec. Paper* 65, 113 pp.

Glacis continental
Glacis précontinental

Déclivité de faible pente s'élevant des profondeurs océaniques jusqu'au pied de la pente continentale

Continental shelf
Shelf
* Island shelf
* Insular shelf

A zone adjacent to a continent (or around an island) and extending from the low water line to a depth at which there is usually a marked increase of slope towards oceanic depths

e.g.: Scotian Shelf
Ref.: Murray, Sir John, and J. Hjort (1912). *The Depths of the Ocean*. MacMillan, London. Murray uses the term earlier than this, however. See Murray, Sir John (1899). "Present condition of the floor of the ocean; evolution of the continental and oceanic areas", *Rept. of Brit. Assoc. Advancement of Sci.*, 1899, pp. 789–802

Plate-forme continentale
Plate-forme
* Plateau continental
* Plate-forme insulaire

Zone adjacente à un continent (ou entourant une île) et s'étendant du niveau des basses mers jusqu'à la profondeur à laquelle on note habituellement une nette augmentation de la pente vers les grands fonds

Continental slope
* Slope
* Island slope

The slope seaward from the shelf edge to the beginning of a continental rise or to the point where there is a general reduction in slope

Ref: Same as for *continental shelf*.

Pente continentale
* Pente
* Pente insulaire

Déclivité limitée par le rebord de la plate-forme et le sommet du glacis continental, ou la ligne marquant une diminution générale de la pente vers les grands fonds

Abyssal hills

A tract of small elevations on the sea floor

Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964), *op. cit.*

Collines
* Collines sous-marines

Groupe d'élévations de faible hauteur

Escarpment
* Scarp

An elongated and comparatively steep slope separating flat or gently sloping areas

e.g.: Mendocino Escarpment
Ref.: Menard, Henry W., and Robert S. Dietz (1952). "Mendocino submarine escarpment", *Journ. Geol.*, vol. 60, pp. 266–278

Talus
Escarpement
* Talus sous-marin

Déclivité de forme allongée et relativement abrupte séparant des zones horizontales ou à faible pente

Fan
Cone
* Deep sea fan
* Deep sea cone
* Submarine fan
* Submarine cone

A relatively smooth feature normally sloping away from the lower termination of a canyon or canyon system

e.g.: Ganges Cone, Delgada Fan
Ref.: Ericson, D. B., Maurice Ewing and Bruce C. Heezen (1951). "Deep sea sands and submarine Canyons", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 62, pp. 961–966

Cône
* Cône sous-marin

Elément de forme générale conique, à faible pente, situé généralement au voisinage du débouché inférieur d'un canyon

Fracture zone

An extensive linear zone of irregular topography of the sea floor, characterized by steep-sided or asymmetrical ridges, troughs or escarpments

e.g.: Murray Fracture Zone
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964). *Marine Geology of the Pacific*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 271 pp.

Zone de fractures
* Ligne de fractures

Zone linéaire étendue, de morphologie irrégulière, caractérisée par des dorsales, des dépressions ou des talus escarpés ou dissymétriques

Gap
* Abyssal gap

A narrow break in a ridge or rise or separating two abyssal plains

e.g.: Theta Gap
Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959), *op. cit.*

Passage
* Goulet
* Passe

Brèche étroite dans une dorsale ou un massif, ou séparant deux plaines abyssales

Tablemount
* Guyot or tablemount

A seamount having a comparatively smooth, flat top

Ref.: Hess, H. H. (1946). "Drowned ancient islands of the Pacific Basin", *Amer. Journ. Sci.*, vol. 244, pp. 772–791

Guyot

Mont sous-marin à sommet relativement uni et horizontal

Knoll

A relatively small, isolated elevation of rounded shape

e.g.: Cantabria Knoll
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964). *Marine Geology of the Pacific*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 271 pp.

Dôme

Elévation isolée de dimensions relativement faibles et de forme arrondie

Levee

An embankment bordering a canyon, valley or channel

e.g.: Congo Canyon
Ref.: Buffington, Edwin C. (1952). "Submarine 'natural levees'", *Journ. Geol.*, vol. 60, pp. 473–479

Levée

Talus bordant une vallée, un canyon ou un chenal

Median valley
* Rift
* Rift valley

The axial depression of the mid-oceanic ridge system

Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959), "The floors of the oceans: 1, The North Atlantic", *Geol. Soc. Amer. Spec. Paper* 65, 113 pp.

Vallée axiale

Dépression occupant la partie axiale d'une dorsale océanique

Moat
* Sea Moat

An annular depression that may not be continuous, located at the base of many seamounts, islands and other isolated elevations

Ref.: Vening Meinesz, F. A. (1948). *Gravity Expeditions at Sea*, vol. 4, Netherlands Geodetic Commission, Delft.

Fossé
Douve

Dépression annulaire, continue ou non, située au pied d'une île, d'un mont sous-marin ou d'une élévation isolée d'un autre type

Peak

A prominent elevation, either pointed or of very limited extent across the summit

e.g.: Confederation Peak

Pic
* *Piton*
* Piton sous-marin
* Pic sous-marin

Elévation de dimensions importantes, à sommet pointu ou de très faible extension

Pingo

A more or less conical mound of fine unconsolidated material, characteristically containing an ice core

Ref.: Shearer, J. M., R. F. MacNab, B. R. Pelletier and T. B. Smith (1971). "Submarine pingos in the Beaufort Sea", *Science*, vol. 174, pp. 816–818.

Pingo

Tertre de forme plus ou moins conique formé de matériaux fins non consolidés et contenant un noyau de glace

Pinnacle

Any high tower or spire-shaped pillar of rock or coral, alone or cresting a summit

Plateau

A flat or nearly flat area of considerable extent, which is relatively shallow, dropping off abruptly on one or more sides

e.g.: Blake Plateau
Ref.: Agassiz, Alexander (1888). "Three cruises of the *Blake*", *Bull. Museum Comp. Zool.*, Harvard University, vols. 14 and 15. (Note, however, that what is now called the "Blake Plateau" was called the "Pourtales Plateau" by Agassiz.)

Province

A region identifiable by a group of similar physiographic features whose characteristics are markedly in contrast with surrounding areas

Ref.: Heezen, Ewing and Tharp (1959), *op. cit.*

Reef

Rocks lying at or near the sea surface

Ref.: Darwin, Charles (1842). *The Structure and Distribution of Coral Reefs*. Smith, Elder and Company, London.

Ridge
(The word "ridge" has several meanings)

(*a*) A long, narrow elevation with steep sides

e.g.: The Wyville Thompson Ridge (Robert, 1975)
Ref.: The term appears on the bathymetrical maps by Sir John Murray which accompany the *Challenger* Report. *Summary of Results, Part I*, published in 1895

(*b*) A long, narrow elevation, often separating ocean basins

e.g.: Walfish Ridge
Ref.: Schott, G. (1941). *Geography of the Atlantic Ocean*.

(*c*) The major oceanic mountain systems of global extent

Rise

(*a*) A broad elevation that rises gently and generally smoothly from the sea floor.

e.g.: Argentine Rise
Ref.: Maury (*op. cit.*) mapped the "Dolphin Rise", which later was found by the *Challenger* expedition to be the Mid-Atlantic Ridge.

Aiguille

Rocher ou bloc de corail effilé, en forme de colonne ou de pointe, isolé ou surmontant un sommet

Plateau

Zone relativement plate et horizontale de grande extension, relativement peu profonde et limitée par une pente abrupte, sur un ou plusieurs côtés

Province
Région
* Province physiographique

Région possédant un ensemble de caractères physiographiques semblables en contraste marqué avec ceux des zones avoisinantes

Récif

Roches affleurant ou situées à très faible profondeur

Dorsale

a) Elévation longue et étroite, à flancs escarpés

b) Elévation longue et étroite séparant souvent deux bassins océaniques

c) Système montagneux complet s'étendant à tout un océan

Massif

Vaste élévation offrant des pentes faibles et des formes généralement unies.

(*b*) A synonym for ridge, definition (*c*)

e.g.: East Pacific Rise
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1960). "East Pacific Rise", *Science*, vol. 132, pp. 1737–1746

Saddle

A low part, resembling a saddle in shape, in a ridge or between contiguous seamounts

e.g.: Hawke Saddle (Labrador Shelf)

Col

Partie basse en forme de selle entre deux hauteurs d'une dorsale ou entre deux monts sous-marins

Seamount

A large, isolated elevation, characteristically of conical form

Ref.: Murray, H. W. (1941). "Submarine mountains in the Gulf of Alaska", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 52, pp. 333–362.
Sir John Murray (*op. cit.*) makes reference to "numerous volcanic cones" on the sea floor

Mont
* Mont sous-marin

Elévation isolée de grandes dimensions, de forme générale conique

Seamount chain

Several seamounts in a line

e.g.: Kelvin Seamounts, Emperor Seamounts
Ref.: Northrop, John, and Robert A. Frosch (1954). "Seamounts in the North American Basin", *Deep Sea Research*, vol. 1, pp. 252–257.
Dietz, R. S. (1954). "Marine geology of the northwestern Pacific: Description of the Japanese bathymetric chart 6901", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 65, pp. 1199–1224

Chaîne de monts
Chaînon de monts

Série de monts sous-marins alignés

Shelf edge or *Shelf break*

A narrow zone at the outer margin of a shelf, along which there is a marked increase of slope

Ref.: Murray and Hjort, *op. cit.*

Rebord
* Rebord de la plate-forme

Ligne le long de laquelle se marque une nette augmentation de la pente à la limite extérieure d'une plate-forme

Shoal

An offshore hazard to surface navigation composed of unconsolidated material

e.g.: Georges Shoal
Ref.: "... that but this blow might be the be-all and the end-all here,
But here, upon this bank and shoal of time,
We'd jump the life to come."
Shakespeare, W. (1608).
Macbeth, I, vii, 4–7.

Basse
Haut-fond

Accident du fond constitué de matériau non consolidé représentant un danger pour la navigation de surface

Sill

The saddle of any submarine morphological feature that separates one basin from another

Seuil

Partie la plus basse d'une élévation de type quelconque séparant deux bassins océaniques

Terrace or *Bench*
* Deep sea terrace

A relatively flat horizontal or gently inclined surface, sometimes long and narrow, which is bounded by a steeper ascending slope on one side and by a steeper descending slope on the opposite side

e.g.: Meriadzek Terrace
Ref.: Day, Alan A. (1959). "The continental margin between Brittany and Ireland", *Deep Sea Research*, vol. 5, pp. 249–265

Terrasse

Zone relativement plate et horizontale ou faiblement inclinée, de forme quelquefois longue et étroite, bordée de chaque côté par des déclivités plus marquées, respectivement oscendante et descendante

Trench

A long, narrow, characteristically very deep and asymmetrical depression of the sea floor, with relatively steep sides

e.g.: Marianas Trench, Tonga Trench
Ref.: Fisher, R. L., and R. Revelle (1955). "Trenches of the Pacific", *Scientific American*, vol. 193, pp. 36–41.
Fisher, R. L. and H. H. Hess (1963) "Trenches", in M. N. Hill, ed., *The Sea*, vol. 3, pp. 411–436

Fosse

Dépression longue, étroite, très profonde, dissymétrique, à flancs relativement escarpés

Trough

A long depression of the sea floor, characteristically steep-sided and normally shallower than a trench

e.g.: Rockall Trough

Dépression
Cuvette

Dépression de forme allongée, à flancs escarpés, généralement moins profonde qu'une fosse

Valley
* Submarine valley

A relatively shallow, wide depression, the bottom of which usually has a continuous gradient. This term is generally not used for features that have canyon-like characteristics for a significant portion of their extent

e.g.: Natal Valley
Ref.: Shepard, Francis P., and Robert F. Dill (1966). *Submarine Canyons and other Sea Valleys*. Rand-McNally, Chicago, 381 pp.

Vallée

Dépression relativement large et peu profonde, dont le thalweg présente habituellement une pente continue. Ce terme n'est généralement pas utilisé pour des éléments ayant les caractéristiques d'un canyon sur une longueur importante de leur parcours